## Michael Swan • Catherine Walter

# Oxford English Grammar Course 

م

with answers
irlangunge

# Oxford English Grammar Course Basic 

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

## Michael Swan \& Catherine Walter

## Oxford English Grammar Course

## Basic <br> 

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

## With answers

اين مجموعه با لوگوى مرجــع زبـان ايـرانيـان

كيى بر دارى از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پییگيرد خواهد شد.

## OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

## contents

introduction ..... vi
words for talking about grammar ..... viii
list of units ..... $x$
units ..... 1
appendices ..... 299
answer key ..... 309
index ..... 355

## authors' acknowledgements

We owe a continuing debt to the many people whose advice and comments helped us with earlier versions of this material. The present book has benefited enormously from the hard work and professionalism of our editorial and design team at Oxford University Press. In particular, we would like to acknowledge the contributions of our remarkable editor, Sarah Parsons, and our equally remarkable designer, Phil Hargraves, who have made it possible for us to write the book that we wanted to, and whose input is evident on every page.

## introduction

## Who is this book for?

The Oxford English Grammar Course (Basic Level) is for all elementary and pre-intermediate learners who want to improve their knowledge of English grammar.

## What kind of English does the book teach?

This book teaches the grammar of spoken and written British English. But it can also be used by students of American, Australian or other kinds of English - the grammatical differences are very small and unimportant.

## How is the book organised?

There are 22 sections. A section covers one part of English grammar (for example: making questions and negatives; present tense verbs; problems with nouns). Each section contains:

- a presentation page which introduces the point of grammar
- several short units with explanations and exercises
- two 'More Practice' pages: these include 'Grammar in a text' exercises and internet exercises
- a short revision test.

(7) Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?
"too much fast" ..40,700
"everybody is"
"everything are"
"most people"
"too fast" ..10,900,000: Correct
"everybody are"
"everything is"
"most of people"


## Two levels

More basic units are marked 'Level 1'; more advanced units are marked 'Level 2'.

## One way of using the book: to study particular points

If you want to know more about a particular point (for example present tenses, the difference between should and must, or the position of adverbs), look in the index (pages 355-362) to find the right unit(s). Read the explanations and do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (pages 309-354).

## Another way of using the book: for systematic study

If you are working without a teacher, we suggest:
1 DON'T go right through the book from beginning to end - some parts will be unnecessary for you.
2 Decide which sections you most need to study. Section 1,'be and have', for example? Section 8,'questions and negatives'? Section 19, 'relative pronouns'? Or other sections?
3 Go to the pages that you need. Read the grammar explanations, do the exercises, and check your answers in the answer key (pages 309-354).
4 In some units there are 'Grammar and vocabulary' exercises for students who would like to learn more words. Try these as well if you want to.
5 Do some or all of the exercises in the 'More Practice' pages.
6 Go to the revision test at the end of the section, and try some or all of the questions.
7 Check your answers. If you still have problems, look at the explanations again.

## Website

On the website there are tests which will help you to decide what you need to study, or to find out how well you have learnt the different points of grammar. There are also extra exercises and games to give you more practice on some of the points.

## Pronunciation

The'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM will help you to pronounce structures fluently, with good rhythm and stress.

## Examinations



This book teaches all of the grammar (and more!) that is needed for Common European Framework Levels A 1 and A2, and is suitable for learners studying for Cambridge KET and PET.

## If you know everything in the book, will you speak perfect English?

No, sorry!
1 Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. (And not many people need to.) But this book will help you to speak and write much more correctly.
2 Books like this give short practical explanations. They cannot tell you the whole truth about English grammar, and they cannot give you enough practice to get all the difficult points right. If you follow the rules in this book, you will not make many mistakes. But you will probably need to practise using the structures in different situations. (The website material will help with this.) You will find more complete information about difficult points in the Intermediate Level of the Oxford English Grammar Course.
3 Grammar is not the only important thing in a language. You also need a wide vocabulary, and - very important - you need a lot of practice in listening and speaking, reading and writing. Remember: this is a grammar practice book, not a complete English course.

We hope that you will enjoy using our book.
With our best wishes for your progress in English.


## words for talking about grammar

active and passive: I see, she heard are active verbs; I am seen, she was heard are passive verbs.
adjectives: for example big, old, yellow, unhappy.
adverbs: for example quickly, completely, now, there.
affirmative sentences or statements are not questions or negatives - for example I arrived.
articles: $a / a n$ ('indefinite article'); the ('definite article').
auxiliary verbs are used before other verbs to make questions, tenses etc - for example do you think; I have finished,
she is working. See also modal auxiliary verbs.
clause: see sentence.
comparatives: for example older, better, more beautiful, more slowly.
conditional: a structure using the conjunction if.
conjunctions: for example and, but, because, while.
consonants: see vowels.
contractions: short forms like l'm, you're, he'll, don't.
conversational: see formal.
countable nouns: the names of things we can count - for example one chair, three cars; uncountable (or 'mass') nouns: the names of things we can't count, like oil, rice.
determiners: words like the, some, many, my, which go before (adjective +) noun.
double letters: pp, tt, ee etc.
formal, informal, conversational: We use formal language with strangers, in business letters etc: for example
'Good afternoon, Mr Parker. May I help you?' We use informal or conversational language with family and friends: for example 'Hi, John. Want some help?'
future verbs: for example I will go; Ann is going to write to us.
imperatives: forms like Go home, Come and sit down, Don't worry, which we use when we tell or ask people (not) to do things.
indirect speech: the grammar that we use to say what people say or think: for example John said that he was tired.
infinitives: (to) go, (to) sleep etc.
informal: see formal.
-ing forms: going, sleeping etc.
irregular: see regular.
leave out: If we say Seen John?, we are leaving out Have you.
modal verbs or modal auxiliary verbs: must, can, could, may, might, shall, should, ought to, will and would.
negative sentences are made with not. for example I have not seen her.
nouns: for example chair, oil, idea, sentence.
object: see subject.
opposite: hot is the opposite of cold; up is the opposite of down.
passive: see active.
past perfect tense: see perfect tenses.
past progressive tense: see past tenses.
past tenses: for example went, saw, stopped (simple past); was going, were eating (past progressive).
past participles: for example gone, seen, stopped.
perfect tenses: forms with have/has/had + past participle: for example I have forgotten (present perfect); It has
been raining (present perfect progressive); They had stopped (past perfect).
personal pronouns: for example $I$, you, us, them.
plural: see singular.
possessives: for example my, your, mine, yours; John's, my brothers'.
prepositions: for example at, in, on, between.
present participles: for example going, sleeping etc (also called -ing forms).
present perfect tenses: see perfect tenses.
present tenses: for example He goes (simple present); She is walking (present progressive).
progressive (or 'continuous'): for example lam thinking (present progressive); They were talking (past progressive).
pronouns: for example l, you, anybody, themselves.
question tags: for example isn't it?, doesn't she?
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc.
regular: plurals like cats, buses; past tenses like sturted, stopped; irregular: plurals like teeth, men, children; past tenses like broke, went, saw.
relative clauses: clauses that begin with relative pronouns: for example the man who bought my car. relative pronouns: who, which and that when they join clauses to nouns: for example the man who bought my car. sentence, clause: $A$ sentence begins with a capital letter ( $A, B$ etc) and ends with a full stop (.), like this one. A sentence may have more than one clause, often joined by a conjunction. For example: I'll come and see you when I'm in London.
simple past tense: see past tenses.
simple present tense: see present tenses.
singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.
spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.
subject and object: In She took the money - everybody saw her, the subjects are she and everybody; the objects are the money and her.
superlatives: for example oldest, best, most beautiful, most easily.
tense: She goes, she is going, she went, she was going, she has gone are different tenses.
third person: words for other people, not I or you: for example she, them, himself, John, has, goes.
uncountable nouns: see countable nouns.
verbs: for example sit, give, hold, think, write.
vowels: $a, e, i, o, u$ and their usual sounds; consonants: $b, c, d, f, g$ etc and their usual sounds.

## other useful words

Here are some other words that are used in this book. Find them in your dictionary and write the translations here.
action
choose
common
complete (verb)
correct
description
difference
event
exclamation
explain
expression
form (noun)
go on, happen
in general
introduction
join
mean (verb)
meaning
necessary
news
normal
normally
particular
plan
polite
politely
possibility
possible
practise
predict
prefer
probable
pronounce
pronunciation
repeat
report
revision
rule
section
similar
situation
stressed (pronunciation)
structure
unnecessary
unusual
use (noun)
use (verb)
(word) order

## list of units

SECTION 1 be and have pages 1-14
grammar summary1
be I am happy today. Are we late? ..... 2-3
be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.4be: future The bus will be full.there is/was There's a dog in the garden.5there is: future Will there be cars?6have I have do you have? I don't have7
8
have: past and future ..... 9
have: actions He's having a shower. ..... 10
have without do: have got Have you got a cat? ..... 11
be and have: more practice ..... 12-13
be and have: revision test ..... 14
SECTION 2 present tenses pages 15-34grammar summary15
simple present affirmativeI work; you work; she works16
simple present: use I work in a bank. ..... 17
simple present negativesI don't know. She doesn't ski.18-19
simple present questionsDo you remember me?20-21
simple present: more practice ..... 22
present progressive: forms
I'm reading. I'm not working. ..... 23
present progressive: use
I'm working just now. ..... 24
present progressive negativesHe's not listening to me.
25
present progressive questions Is it raining? ..... 26
present progressive: more practice ..... 27
the two present tenses: the difference ..... 28-29
non-progressive verbs I don't understand. ..... 30-31
present tenses: more practice ..... 32-33
present tenses: revision test ..... 34
SECTION 3 talking about the future
pages 35-44
grammar summary35
going to Look - it's going to rain. ..... 36-37
present progressiveWhat are you doing this evening?38
will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow. ..... 39
will: deciding, refusing, promising I'll answer it. 40simple present for futureOur train leaves at 8.10.41
future: more practice ..... 42-43
future: revision test ..... 44
SECTION 4 past tenses pages 45-56
grammar summary ..... 45
simple past: forms I worked. I went. ..... 46
simple past: use Ileft school in 1990. ..... 47
simple past: negatives I did not work.
I did not go. ..... 48
simple past questions Did you pay?
What did she say? ..... 49
simple past: more practice ..... 50
past progressive What were you doing at 8.00? ..... 51
simple past or past progressive?
I walked / I was walking ..... 52-53
past tenses: more practice ..... 54-55
past tenses: revision test ..... 56
SECTION 5 perfect tenses pages 57-72
grammar summary ..... 57
present perfect: forms
I have paid. Has she forgotten? ..... 58-59
finished actions: present perfect or simple past? ..... 60-61
time words: present perfect62-63
already, yet and just ..... 64
since and for since Tuesday; for ten years ..... 65
present perfect progressive It's been raining since Sunday. ..... 66-67
past perfectIt had already begun when we arrived.68-69
perfect tenses: more practice ..... 70-71
perfect tenses: revision test ..... 72
SECTION 6 modal verbs pages 73-92
grammar summary ..... 73
modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc 74must You must be home by eleven. Must you go? 75have to Do you have to teach small children?76
mustn't and don't have to
We mustn't wake the baby. 77
had to, will have to I didn't have to pay. 78
should What should I tell John? 79
can He can play the piano. 80
could; be able to
She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon. 81
may and might
It may snow. Imight have a cold. 82-83
can, could and may: permission
Can l use the phone? 84-85
can/could you?: requests
Can you lend me a stamp? 86
shall in questions What shall we do? 87
would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller. 88
used to I used to play the piano. 89
modal verbs: more practice 90-91
modal verbs: revision test

## SECTION 7 passives pages 93-102

grammar summary 93
passives: introduction
English is spoken in Australia. 94
simple present passive
We are woken by the birds.
future passive
Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.
simple past passive
I was stopped by a policeman. 97
present progressive passive $1 t$ 's being cleaned. 98
present perfect passive
The house has been sold.
99
passives: more practice 100-101
passives: revision test

SECTION 8 questions and negatives
pages 103-118
grammar summary 103
yes/no questions
Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa? 104-105
question words When will you see her? 106-107
question-word subjects
Who phoned? What happened? 108-109
questions with long subjects
Are Ann and her mother coming? 110
prepositions in questions
Who did you go with?
negatives Dogscan't fly. Idon't know why.112-113
not and no 114
negatives with nobody, never etc
Nobody loves me.
115
questions and negatives: more practice 116-117
questions and negatives: revision test 118

SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms
pages 119-138
grammar summary 119
infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go? 120 infinitive of purpose

She went to Paris to study music. 121
verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.122-123
verb + object + infinitive
He wants me to cook. 124-125
it with infinitive subjects
It's nice to be here with you. 126-127
adjective + infinitive
glad to find you at home 128
adjectives with enough/to + infinitive too tired to sing 129
noun/pronoun + infinitive some letters to write130
-ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you. 131
preposition + ...ing Thank you for coming.132-133
verb + ...ing I can't help feeling unhappy. 134-135
infinitives and -ing forms: more practice 136-137
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test 138

SECTION 10 special structures with verbs
pages 139-150
grammar summary 139
structures with get
get up get your coat it's getting cold 140
verbs with prepositions Wait for me. 141
phrasal verbs
Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142-143
verbs with two objects
Take the boss these letters. 144
have something done
I have my hair cut every week. 145
imperatives Come in. Don't worry. 146
let's (suggestions) Let's go. 147
special structures with verbs: more practice148-149
special structures with verbs: revision test 150
SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the
pages 151-166
grammar summary ..... 151
a/an; pronunciation of the ..... 152
countable and uncountable a car, cars; petrol 153the and $a / a n$
Let's see a film. I didn't like the film. ..... 154-155
a/an She's adoctor. ..... 156
a/an: describing people She's got a nice smile. ..... 157
talking in general without thePeople are funny.158-159
names Mary, Africa, the USA ..... 160-16
special cases
in bed; after lunch; a hundred; .. ..... 162-163
articles: more practice ..... 164-165
articles: revision test ..... 166
SECTION 12 determiners pages 167-184
grammar summary ..... 167
this, that, these and those ..... 168-169
some and any
I need some sugar. Have you got any? 170-171
somebody, anything, nowhere ... ..... 172
much and many
How much milk? How many languages? ..... 173
a lot of and lots of ..... 174
a little and a few a little English; a few words ..... 175
enough money; fast enough ..... 176
too, too much/many and not enough ..... 177
all all my friends are here; my friends are all here ..... 178
all and every; each ..... 179
both, either and neither ..... 180
determiners and of most people; most of us ..... 181
determiners: more practice ..... 182-183
determiners: revision test ..... 184
SECTION 13 personal pronouns; possessives
pages 185-194
grammar summary ..... 185
personal pronouns: I and me etc ..... 186-187
possessives: my, your etc This is my coat ..... 188-189
possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine. ..... 190
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc ..... 191
personal pronouns and possessives:more practice192-193
personal pronouns and possessives: revision test ..... 194

## SECTION 14 nouns pages 195-208

grammar summary ..... 195
singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, boxes 196
singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors ..... 197
countable and uncountable nouns ..... 198-199
one and ones abig one; the ones on the chair ..... 200
'sand s'possessive: forms son's, sons,' men's ..... 201
's and s' possessive: use
lan's car; the boss's car ..... 202-203
noun + noun
Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate. ..... 204-205
nouns: more practice ..... 206-207
nouns: revision test ..... 208
SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs pages 209-220
grammar summary ..... 209
adjectives
a beautiful little girl who was not stupid 210-211
adverbs of manner He ate quickly. ..... 212
other adverbs I like sport very much. ..... 213
adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc 214-215
interested and interesting etc ..... 216
fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly ..... 217
adjectives and adverbs: more practice ..... 218-219
adjectives and adverbs: revision test ..... 220
SECTION 16 comparison pages 221-232
grammar summary ..... 221
comparative and superlative adjectives: forms ..... 222
comparative or superlative? ..... 223
comparatives: usebrighter than the moon224-225
superlatives
the highest mountain in the world ..... 226
comparison of adverbs More slowly, please. ..... 227
(not) as ... as Your hands are as cold as ice. 228-229
comparison: more practice ..... 230-231
comparison: revision test ..... 232
SECTION 17 conjunctions pages 233-242233
conjunctions: introduction and, but, because ... ..... 234
position of conjunctionsIf you need help, ask me.235
tenses with time conjunctions
I'll see you before you go. ..... 236
because and so; although and but ..... 237
and I speak Russian, English and Swahili ..... 238double conjunctions
both ... and; (n)either ... (n)or239
conjunctions: more practice ..... 240-241
conjunctions: revision test ..... 242
SECTION 18 if pages 243-252
grammar summary ..... 243
if: position; unless ..... 244
if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice. ..... 245
not real / not probable If dogs could talk,... ..... 246
If I were you, ... ..... 247
If I go, I will ...; If I went, I would ... ..... 248
unreal past
If $A$ had happened, $B$ would have happened. ..... 249
if. more practice ..... 250-251
if: revision test ..... 252
SECTION 19 relative pronouns
pages 253-262
grammar summary ..... 253
relative who and which
the keys which I lost ..... 254-255
relative that abird that can't fly ..... 256
leaving out relative pronouns the car (that) you bought ..... 257
prepositions the man that she works for ..... 258
relative what It was just what I wanted. ..... 259
relative pronouns: more practice ..... 260-261
relative pronouns: revision test ..... 262
SECTION 20 indirect speech ..... pages 263-272
grammar summary ..... 263
tenses and pronouns
Bill said he was really happy. ..... 264-265
indirect questions
She asked him what his name was. ..... 266
present reporting verbs
She says she comes from London. ..... 267
here and now > there and then ..... 268
infinitives She told me to get out. ..... 269
indirect speech: more practice ..... 270-271
indirect speech: revision test ..... 272
SECTION 21 prepositions pages 273-286
grammar summary ..... 273
$a t$, in and on (time) ..... 274-275
from ... to, until and by ..... 276
for, during and while ..... 277
in and on (place) ..... 278
at (place) ..... 279
other prepositions of place ..... 280-281
prepositions of movement ..... 282-283
prepositions: more practice ..... 284-285
prepositions: revision test ..... 286
SECTION 22 spoken grammar pages 287-298
grammar summary ..... 287
question tags
This music isn't very good, is it? ..... 288-289
short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't. ..... 290
reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really? ..... 291
revision of spoken question and answer structures ..... 292
leaving out words Don't know if she has. ..... 293
so am I; nor dol etc ..... 294-295
spoken grammar: more practice ..... 296-297
spoken grammar: revision test ..... 298

## SECTION 1 be and have

## grammar summary

## be (am/are/is/was/were)

- We can use adjectives, nouns or expressions of place after be.

She is late. I'm hungry. Are you a doctor? Is everybody here?

- We use a special structure with be - there is - to introduce things: to say that they exist.

There's a strange woman at the door. There are some letters for you.

- Be can be an auxiliary verb in progressive tenses (see page 23 ) and passives (see page 94 ).

She is working. It was made in Hong Kong.

## have (have/has/had)

- We can use have or have got to talk about possession, relationships and some other ideas.

Do you have a car? I don't have any brothers or sisters. Ann has got a headache.

- And we can use have to talk about some kinds of actions.

I'm going to have a shower. What time do you have breakfast?

- Have can also be an auxiliary verb in perfect tenses (see Section 5).

I haven't seen her all day. We knew that he had taken the money.

'And were you good while I was out?'

To be or not to be, that is the question. (Shakespeare: Hamlet)

Is there life before death?
(Seamus Heaney)

If you've got everything, you've got nothing.

## (Leni MacShaw)

There's a thin man inside every fat man. (George Onwell.

You can have it all, but you can't do it all. (Michelle Pfeiffer)

When I was young there was no respect for the young, and now that I am old there is no respect for the old.

## (JB Priestley)

## be I am happy today. Are we late?

|  | BE: PRESENT |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| + | lam | you are | he/she/it is | we are | they are |
| $?$ | $a m$ l? | are you? | is he/she/it? | are we? | are they? |
| - | lam not | you are not | he/she/it is not | we are not | they are not |

I am a doctor. Are you American? We are not ready.
1 Put in am, are or is.

- You ..are..... late.
1 We ............. very well.
2 My sister ............. a doctor.
3 Paul and Ann in America.

4 I............ happy today.
5 I think you $\qquad$ tired.
6 Our house $\qquad$ very small.
71 $\qquad$

In conversation and informal writing, we use contractions:
I'm you're he's she's it's John's thetrain's we're they're
I'm a doctor. You're late. John's in London. The shop's open. We're ready.
2 Write these sentences with contractions.

- Claire is ill. ..claire's ill.
4 My name is Peter.
1 We are all tired.
5 You are early.
2 They are here.
6 The shop is closed.
3 I am sorry.
7 She is at home.

To make questions (?) with be, we put the verb before the subject.
STATEMENT + : I am late.
The taxi is here.
We are late.
Is the taxi here? Are we late?
Your keys are in the car.
QUESTION ? : Am I late?
Are we late? Aremy keys in the car?
(3) Make questions.

- Bill/Scottish .. Is Bill Scottish?

7 we all / ready
1 Marie / from Paris
8 I/early
2 we / very late
9 they / at home
3 John / in bed
10 you / happy
4 the boss/here ............................................ 11 Joe / married
5 your car/fast ............................................... 12 this/your house
6 Luke / here
13 that/Jane

## Do you know all these question words? who what when where why how <br> Contractions with is: who's what's when's where's why's how's

Who's that? What's this? When's the party? Where's the station? Why are we here? How are you?
Put in question words with are or 's.

- ' . Who.s......... that?' 'It's my brother.'
- ' .......ere are... Leo and Amy?' 'In London.'

1 ‘.................... your name?' 'Maria.' my glasses?' 'Here.'
your teacher?' 'Mrs Allen.'
the exams?' 'On Tuesday.'

5 •
'.................... you late?' 'My watch is broken.
6 '.................... your mother?' 'Not very well.'
7 '.................... Daniel?' 'In hospital.'
8 '.................... those men?' 'I don't know.'
9 '.................... your parents?' 'Very well.'
10 '.................... your birthday?' 'March 17th.'

To make negative ( - ) sentences with be, we put nor after $a m / a r e / i s$ or $m, ' r e, s$.
I am not Scottish. We are not ready. Im not tired. She not here. They re not my friends.

5 Write negative ( $\square$ ) ends for the sentences.

- I'm Greek, but ( - from Athens) ..!'m not from Athens:
- It's winter, but (-cold) .. it's not cold. ............................ OR ..it isn't cold

1 She's tired, but (-ill)
2 They are in England, but (-in London)
3 You're tall, but (-too tall)
4 We are late, but (- very late)
5 It's summer, but (-hot)
6 I'm a student, but (-at university)
7 John's good-looking, but (-very nice)
8 Anne is at work, but (-in her office)
9 This is a nice coat, but ( - mine)
10 It's a big car, but (-very fast)

We often use be with: hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?
And we use be with ages.
Have you got anything to eat? I'm hungry. I'm cold. It's very hot here in summer. 'It's late.' 'You're right. Let's go.' Are you afraid of flying? I'm interested in politics. What colour is her hair? What size are your shoes? 'How old are you?' I'm 17.'
(6) Complete the sentences under the pictures.


- She is hungry


1 He


2 She


4 It

7 Put in words from the box.


## be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.

| + + + | I was was I? I was not | you were were you? you were not | he/she/it was was he/she/it? he/she/it was not | we were were we? we were not | they were |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Contractions: wasn't, weren't |  |  |  |  |  |
| Where were you yesterday? |  |  | My mother was a singer. I wasn't well last week. |  |  |
| 1 Put in was or were. <br> - In summer 1990 I ..was..... in Brazil. <br> 1 'We $\qquad$ very happy to see you yesterday.' 'And I $\qquad$ happy to see you:' <br> 2 Lunch $\qquad$ OK, but the vegetables $\qquad$ not very good. <br> 3 I can't find my keys. They $\qquad$ here this morning. <br> 4 It $\qquad$ cold and dark, and we $\qquad$ tired. <br> 5 My grandmother $\qquad$ a doctor, and her two brothers $\qquad$ both doctors too. <br> 6 : $\qquad$ you in London yesterday?' 'No, I $\qquad$ in Glasgow.' <br> 7 'When $\qquad$ your exam?' 'It $\qquad$ yesterday.' <br> 8 'Why $\qquad$ you late?’ ‘The train $\qquad$ late.' |  |  |  |  |  |

2 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.
Ann at home yesterday was ..Was.Ann at home.yesterday?
good party was the
people were the interesting
teacher father your was a
everybody was late
your was driving test when
6 Tuesday you where on were
open windows why the all were
John's brother school was with at you
3 Put in wasn't or weren't and words from the box. Make sure you understand actually. Use a dictionary if necessary.


| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | I/you/he/she/it/we/they will be |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{n}$ | will I/you/she etc be? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | 1/you/he etc will not be |
|  | Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't ( = will not) |

It will be cold this evening. I'll be at home all day tomorrow.
Where will we be ten years from now? The exam won't be difficult.
(1) Look at the table and complete the text.

| It $\qquad$ hot in $\qquad$$\qquad$ warm in $\qquad$ cold in $\qquad$ very cold in |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |


|  |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Cairo | $35^{\circ}$ |
| Rio | $30^{\circ}$ |
| Paris | $23^{\circ}$ |
| London | $3^{\circ}$ |
| Moscow | $-18^{\circ}$ |

2 Change these sentences to affirmative ( + ) or negative ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ).

- The bus will not be full. ..The bus will be full.
- She'll be late. ..She won't be late.

1 I'll be sorry.
2 It will not be hot.
3 We won't be at home.
4 The shops will be closed.
5 He'll be in Scotland.
6 Lisa will be at school.

To make future questions with be, we put will before the

## STATEMENT +: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. The bus will be full. QUESTION ?: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Will the bus be full?

- you / at home / this evening ....... you be at home this evening?
- when / lunch / ready ......en will. Lunch be ready?

1 when / your father / in England
2 Ann / at the party / with John
3 everybody / here / at 8.00
4 the train / late / again
5 when / Joe and Mary / in the office
6 the weather / good / tomorrow
7 where / you / on Tuesday
(4) Complete the sentences.


## there is/was There's a dog in the garden.

|  | PRESENT |  | PAST |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| + | there is | thereare | therewas | therewere |
| ? | is there? | are there? | was there? | were there? |
| - | there is not | there are not | therewas not | there were not |
|  | Contractions: there's; isn't, aren't, wasn't, weren't |  |  |  |

We use there is, there are etc to say that something or somebody exists. We often use there is, there are etc before alan, some and any.
There's a dog in the garden. (NOT A dog is in the garden.) There are some letters for you.
Is there any milk in the fridge? (NOT ts any mitk...?) There isn't much coffee. Were there any phone calls? (nOT Were any phone calls?) There was a good film last night.
1 Make some sentences with words from the three boxes, using there is etc.

| There is/are a lot of <br> There isn't much <br> There aren't many <br> There isn't/aren't any <br> There wasn't/weren't any |
| :--- |$\quad \rightarrow$| water air grass dogs |
| :--- |
| elephants trees cars |
| people computers ... |
| (you think of some more |
| things) |$\quad \rightarrow$| in Africa in the USA |
| :--- |
| in Antarctica in London |
| on the moon in 1600 ... |
| (you think of some more places |
| or times) |

- There are a lot of animals in Africa
- ..There weren't any cars in 1600

1
2
3
4
5
6

To make questions with there is etc, we put is etc before there.

## STATEMENT + : There is a letter for you. There were some problems. William says there are six eggs. QUESTION ?: Is there a letter for me? Were there any problems? How many eggs are there?

2 Make present or past questions with there is etc.

- any fruit juice in the fridge (present) ..Is there any fruit juice in the fridge?
- any letters for me (past) .....ere.there any letters for me?
- how many people / in your family (present) ..How many people are there in your family?

1 a doctor here (present)
2 any trains to London from this station (present)
3 a special price for students (past)
4 any mistakes in my letter (past)
5 much money in your bank account (present)
6 how many students / in your class (present)
7 many children at the swimming pool (past)
8 how many people / at the party (past)

## there is: future Will there be cars?



2 Make negative ( - ) sentences. Use There will not be or There won't be.

- time / see Granny ..Therewon't be time to.see Granny:
- exam / Saturday ..There will not be an exam on Saturday

1 meeting / tomorrow
any trains / Sunday
any buses / 4 o'clock in the morning
4 If you get up late tomorrow, / any breakfast
5 anybody / home tomorrow evening
6 any children / the party
7 a French lesson / Monday evening
8 time / have lunch today
(3) Write questions about life in the year 2100, with Will there be ...?

- (cars) ....ill there be cars?

1 (trains)
2 (computers)
3 (good food)

4 (different countries)
5 (governments)
6 (a lot of problems)
7 (your question)
(4) Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.


## have I have do you have? I don't have

## 1/you/we/they have he/she/it has

We can use have to talk about possessions, family (and other) relationships and illnesses.
I have a new car. Nina has two sisters. Pete has a nice girlfriend. We all have colds.
We also say that people have hair, eyes etc; and that things have parts.
You have beautiful eyes. My new car only has two doors.
1 Circle the correct form.

- John / (1)have two brothers.
4 I see that your brother have / has a new girlfriend.
- Gracehas / have a cold.
5 You / Paul has very long hair.
1 My father / My parents has two cars.
6 These houses have / has big rooms.
2 We all / Sally have blue eyes.
7 I can't read this book - it has / have 800 pages.
3 I have / has a headache.
8 Susie / Susie and Mick have a really nice flat.


## 2 Write about three things that you have, and three things that one of your friends or relations has.



We can make questions ( ? ) and negatives ( - ) with do/does/did + infinitive (without to).
(For questions and negatives without do, see page 11.)

| STATEMENT + | QUESTION? | NEGATIVE - |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| I have the keys. <br> Joe has a car. | Do I have the keys? <br> Does Joe have a car? (NOT Boes foe has ...) | I do not / don't have the keys. <br> Joe does not / doesn't have a car. |

3 Make questions (?) or negatives ( - ) with have.
you / a cat? ..... you have a cat?

- Eric / many friends - Eric doesn't have many friends.

1 we / a garden - We don't
2 they / any children ?
3 Peter / a cold ?
4 myaunt/adog -
5 Monica / any brothers or sisters?
6 I/enough money -
7 Laura / a boyfriend ?
8 Why / you / two cars ?
4. Write about three things that you don't have, and three things that one of your friends or relations doesn't have.
1 Idon't have
2
3
4
5

6

## have: past and future

PAST: I/you/he/she/it/we/they had
When I was a student I had an old Volkswagen. Ann had a cold last week.

We make past questions and negatives with did + infinitive (without to).

| STATEMENT + | QUESTION ? | NEGATIVE - |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Clara had a cold. | Did Clara have a cold? | Clara did not / didn't have a cold. |
|  | (NOT Oid Clofa had ...) |  |

1 Make sentences about Clara when she was six.

- a bicycle? . Did she have a bicycle?
- a dog - ..She didn't have a dog.

1 a computer -
2 very fair hair +
3 lots of friends -
4 many nice clothes -
5 her own room?
2 Write sentences about yourself when you were six. Use I had and I didn't have.
1 Ihad............................................................ 3
2 Ididn't have ................................................... 4
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { FUTURE: } & \text { I/you/he/she/it/we/they will (not) have } \\ \text { Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't ( }=\text { will not) }\end{array}$
Contractions: I'Il, you'll etc; won't (= will not)
One day, everybody will have enough food. Julia says that she won't have children.

To make future questions with have, we put will before the subject.
STATEMENT +: John will have a car soon. The baby will have blue eyes.
QUESTION - Will John have a car soon? Will the baby have blue eyes?
(3) Read the text and complete the sentences about John's future.

This year, John doesn't have money, a job, a house, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.
He has a small room, a bicycle, old clothes, a guitar and a cat. But next year:

- more money + .....will have more money.
- a small room - .He won't have a small room.
- a cat ? ...nill he have a cat?

1 a job +
2 a bicycle -
3 a car +
4 a house?
5 a girlfriend?
6 old clothes -
7 a suit +
8 a guitar?

## have: actions He's having a shower.

We use have in a lot of common expressions to talk about actions.
I usually have breakfast at seven o'clock. I'm going to have a shower.
Would you like to have something to eat? If Bill comes this weekend we'll have a party. Teresa had a baby in June. Are you having a good time? 'Have a good flight.' Thanks.'

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use have, has or had with words from the box.


We make simple present and past questions and negatives with do/does and did.
We don't have parties very often. Does Kurt have eggs for breakfast?
Did you have a good journey? We didn't have a holiday.
2 Make questions (?) and negatives (-).

- (good time ?) 'We went to Paris at the weekend.' ...Did you have a good time?'.
- (breakfast - ) I got up late this morning, so I didn't have breakefast.

1 (lunch ? W) What time
on Sundays?
(good trip - ) Ann was in America last week
(shower -) The hotel bathroom was very dirty, so 1 (good flight ? ) Welcome to England, Mr García.
(good game ? ) 'Mark and I played tennis this morning.'
(coffee - $\boldsymbol{-}$ ) .......................................................... before I go to bed.

## LEARN THESE COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH HAVE (USE A DICTIONARY IF NECESSARY)

have breakfast, lunch, dinner, (a cup of) tea/coffee, a drink, something to eat/drink have eggs/toast for breakfast, have fish for lunch etc have a wash, a shower, a bath have a good time, a bad day, a nice evening, a party, a holiday, a game have a good flight/trip/journey etc have a conversation have a baby

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | 1/you/we/they have got | he/she/it has got |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?}$ | have I/you etc got? | has he/she/it got? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | 1/you etc have not got | he/she/it has not got |
|  | Contractions: I've, he's etc; haven't, hasn't |  |

We often use got with have, especially in spoken English, and especially in the present.
This does not change the meaning: we use have/has got like have/has to talk about possession etc.

- I have got is the same as I have.
- Have you got? is the same as Do you have? (We don't use do/does with have got.)
- She hasn't got is the same as She doesn't have.

I've got a cat. Has she got a dog? (NOT Does she have got ...)
I haven't got a car. She's got a sister. You've got beautiful eyes. Have you got a cold?

## 1 <br> Write about John's possessions etc.

- a bicycle: $\downarrow$.John's got a bicycle.
- suits: 2 ..He's got two suits.
- a horse: $x$..Hehasn't got a horse.
- any children: $x$..Hehasn't got any children.

1 brothers: 2
2 a car: $X$
3 dogs: 3
4 a dictionary:
5 long hair: $x$
6 any sisters: $X$

## 2 Write three sentences about your possessions etc, and three about the possessions

 of a friend or relation.

To make questions (?) with have got, we put have/has before the subject
STATEMENT + : I have got a cold. Harry's got a fast car. Amy and Juan have got tickets.

QUESTION ?: Have you got a cold? Has Harry got a fast car? Have Amy and Juan got tickets?
Beth and Tom have got a lot of money. Ask questions with have got.

- they / big house ..Have they aot a bug house?

1 they / big garden
2 Beth / good job
3 Tom / big car
4 they / plane
5 they / any horses

Past forms with got (l had got etc) are unusual. We don't use got in the future.
She had a fast car. (MORE NATURAL THAN She had got a fast car.) I will have. (NOT t will have gof:)

## be and have: more practice

(1) Contractions. Rewrite these sentences with contractions.

- John is tired. John's...tired.
5 She will not be late.
1 They were not ready.
6 You have got my keys.
2 We are all here.
7 I have not got much time.
3 I am not a student.
8 Franz does not live here.
4 Where is your house?


## 2) Contractions. Rewrite these sentences without contractions.

- I wasn't ready. ..! was not ready:

1 Tom's late.
2 I won't have time.
3 Anna's hungry.
4 He doesn't have a car.

5 She's got two sisters.
6 She's right.
7 Emma's got beautiful eyes.
8 There's a letter for you.
(3)Be. Make questions and negatives. Use negative contractions.
$\rightarrow$ It's summer. (hot) .. Is it hot?...No, itt's not hot....(OR No, it isn't hot.)
1 He's Chinese. (from Beijing)
2 He was ill. (in bed)
3 We'll be late. (very late)
4 Her room's cheap. (very big)
5 They were students. (at university)
6 She was in the building. (in her office)
7 They'll have something to drink. (coffee)
8 They're rich. (happy)
(4) Have: questions and negatives. Complete the sentences with do or does.

- I ..do....... not have much free time. 4
- ..Does... Carol have a boyfriend?

1 Dogs ............ not have wings.
2
3 Ann England have any high mountains?
.n't have a job just now.

4 $\qquad$ you have my new address?
5 My brother and I
6 Maria ............ n't speak English. 7 I .............n't have a headache any more. 8
your street have any shops?
(S) There is. Put in expressions from the box.

6) Grammar in a text. Read the text, and then write about yourself.

His name's Noureddin. He's from Rabat, in Morocco. He's a student. He's 21. He isn't married. He's got four brothers and two sisters.
He's interested in music and politics. He isn't interested in sport.

My name's


## (7)

Grammar in a text. Put in affirmative ( $\ddagger$ ) or negative ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) forms of be or have.
Helen 1 .. is. fourteen. She 1 $\qquad$at a very nice school; she 2 interested
in the lessons - there 3 only two teachers that she doesn't like - and she 4 got lots of friends. (Two years ago she 5 $\qquad$ at a different school; the lessons 6 very good, and she 7 many friends, so she 8 $\qquad$ very unhappy.) The school 9. $\qquad$ a long way from Helen's house, so she gets up early. She 10. $\qquad$ a quick wash, and then she 11 $\qquad$ breakfast - cereal and fruit juice if she 12. hungry. There 13. a school bus, but if it 14 $\qquad$ very cold her mother takes her by car. In the evenings she 15 school work; she 16 $\qquad$ much difficulty with this, so she usually finishes quickly. Then she 17 . $\qquad$ . supper. At ten o'clock she 18 $\qquad$ very tired, so she 19. $\qquad$ a bath and goes to bed. On Saturdays and Sundays she gets up at 12.00, 20
$\qquad$ a quick lunch and goes straight to her computer games.

## 8

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: relations. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the family tree and write 'true' or 'false' against the sentences.


## 9 Internet exercise. Can you find these on the internet?

1 The name of a song with the words "there is a house"
2 The name of a song with the words "once I had"
3 The name of a song with the words "have a party"

## be and have: revision test

(1) Circle the correct form.

- (is)/Are your brother at home?

1 Where/Who/How is the station?
2 I/We was in London yesterday.
3 Are/Have you thirsty?
4 Alice is/has three brothers.
5 My sister is/has 25 today.
6 'I am / have cold.' 'Put on a sweater.'
7 I want/won't be here next week.
$8 \mathrm{lam} /$ are tired.
9 Emma is / has very happy today.
10 There is/are a new secretary in the company.

11 Did you have / had a good journey?
12 Do / Does your father have a car?
13 Do/Have you got a cold?
14 Will be you / Will you be at the party tonight?
15 lamn't / I'm not ready.
16 'Why / Who / How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
17 Did you have / has a good holiday?
18 It's my birthday next week. I will be / will have 18.
19 Does John have / has a brother?
20 How many people is / are there in your family?

## (2) Correct $(\alpha)$ or not $(x)$ ?

- I don't had breakfast today. ..

5 My friends was late.
1 I'm not ...... I amn't ...... he's not ...... he isn't ......
2 Do you got a bicycle?
3 Had you a good journey?
6 Is there any eggs in the fridge?
7 I don't have many friends.
8 I do have two brothers.
9 There won't be a lesson tomorrow.
4 Jane is having a shower.
10 Inot had breakfast today.
3 Change the sentences to questions or negatives.

- It's Tuesday. - ...t.isn't.Tuesday

OR ..It's not Thesday
1 There's a taxi outside. ?
2 Chris has got a headache. ?
3 Joe has a car.
4 Ann had a meeting yesterday. ?
5 I had coffee for breakfast.
6 There will be an English lesson tomorrow. ?
7 I'm hungry.
8 Petra's got a new car. -
9 She had a nice time at the party. ?
10 The house has got a big garden. ?
(4) Make present (PR), past (PA) or future (F) questions.

- Peter / Irish (PR) ..IS.Peter Inish?
- Jane / have breakfast this morning (PA) ..Did Jane have breakfast this moming?

1 Rosemary / from London (PR)
2 we / early (F)
3 Sarah / at home (PA)
4 Karim / have a cold (PR)
5 your car / fast (PR)
6 the manager / in America (F)
7 Tim and Anna / students (PA)
8 What time / you have lunch today (F)
9 you / here tomorrow (F)
10 those people / American (PA)

## SECTION 2 present tenses

## grammar summary

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work, she works, he doesn't work etc
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I am working, she is working, he isn't working etc

English has two 'present' tenses.

- We use the simple present mostly to talk about things that are always true, and things that happen repeatedly.

Dogs eat meat. My grandmother lives in Brighton. I work every Saturday.

- We use the present progressive (or'present continuous') to talk about things that are happening just around the time when we speak.

Look! The dog's eating your shoe. I'm working hard these days.

- We can also use the present progressive to talk about the future (see page 38).

I'm seeing Lucy tomorrow.

## Some old songs

## I like myself

I believe in love
She's leaving home
Am I asking too much?
Is she really going out with him?
Where are you going?
Smoke gets in your eyes
I love Paris in the springtime

## She loves me

## She loves you

## I'm crying

## I'm flying

## Why do I love you?

Why do fools fall in love?
Why do lovers break each other's hearts?

I don't want to do it

## simple present* affirmative I work; you work; she works

| + | I work | you work | he/she/it works | we work | they work |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Ilive | you live | he/she/it lives | we live | they live |  |
| I stop | you stop | he/she/it stops | we stop | they stop |  |

I work in a bank. He works in a restaurant.
You live near my brother. She lives in Liverpool.
We stop the lessons at 5.00. The train stops at York.

## HOW TO MAKE HE/SHE/IT FORMS

- most verbs: +-s work $\rightarrow$ works know $\rightarrow$ knows rain $\rightarrow$ rains
$--s,-s h,-c h,-x:+$-es pass $\rightarrow$ passes wash $\rightarrow$ washes teach $\rightarrow$ teaches mix $\rightarrow$ mixes
- exceptions: $\quad g o \longrightarrow$ goes $d o \rightarrow$ does have $\rightarrow$ has


## 1 Write the he/she/it forms.



| +-S: | comes. |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| +-ES: | catches | ....... |  |  |

## VERBS ENDING $\operatorname{IN}-Y$

- vowel $+y \quad-a y,-e y,-o y,-u y: \quad+-s \quad$ say $\longrightarrow$ says
- consonant $+y \quad-d y,-l y,-p y,-r y$, etc: $-y \rightarrow$-ies fly $\rightarrow$ flies
(2) Write the he/she/it forms.

| buy $\ell$ carry $\ell$ copy | enjoy | fry | marry | play | stay | study | try |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

3 Put the words in the correct order.

- eats dog too your much . Your dog eats too much.
1 live I that house in

2 bank Kim in a works

3 badly violin plays the very Claire

4 Scotland those from children come

5 young very look you

4 Circle the correct answers.
-We/My friend always wear old clothes.

- You John always wears nice clothes.

1 We all / The boss thinks you're wonderful.
2 I/Catherine want a new job.
3 Bread / Books costs a lot.
4 Andy / Andy and Pete sings very well.
5 Sophy/Sophy and lan like parties.
6 You / She drive too fast.
7 Our cat / Our cats never catches mice.
8 That child / Children makes a lot of noise.
9 That bus / All those buses go to the station.
10 My father / My mother and father teaches English.

[^0]
## simple present: use I work in a bank.

We use the simple present to talk about:

- things that are always true.

The sun rises in the east. My parents live near Dover.


- habits and things that happen repeatedly.

Joe plays golf on Saturdays.

We often use the simple present with words that tell you how often: for example always, never, often, sometimes, usually, once a day, twice a week, every year, all the time.
She always forgets my birthday. I often get headaches. You never listen to me.
We play basketball twice a week. It rains all the time here.

1) Complete the sentences with the correct forms of verbs from the boxes.
ask getup go make play speak

Peter always .. 9 ets. up........... late on Sundays.
Ann and John sometimes ........................ tennis at weekends.
My mother often ......................... French at home.
Small children ........................ questions all the time.
Sarah ........................ to Oxford to see her mother twice a week.
I ......................... more mistakes in English when I'm tired.
forget get listen live watch

6 Ioften $\qquad$ people's names.
7 We usually $\qquad$ to music in the car.
8 My brother in Vancouver.
91
I ......................... a lot of films on TV.
10 My parents $\qquad$ all their food from supermarkets.
2) Choose suitable verbs in the correct forms to complete the sentences.

- The sun ..set...... in the west. (live, rise, set)

1 That woman ............ that she ............ everything. (know, think, run, wash)
2 Our son ............ karate. (read, study, write)
3 Alice ............ to go skiing every year. (try, play, say)
4 You always ............ very nice clothes. (look, start, wear)
5 Andy always ............ his car on Saturdays. (buy, sell, wash)
6 Most people ............ for other people. (talk, work, teach)
7 That child never ............'Thank you'. (like, say, sing)
8 He $\qquad$ in the same chair every evening. (know, like, sit, stand)
9 My father $\qquad$ TV most evenings. (listen, think, watch)
10 We always ............ what we can't have. (want, get, forget)

We do not use a present tense to talk about how long something has lasted (see page 65).
I have known her since 1990. (nOT thfow her sinfe 7990)

| - | I do not work you do not work he/she/it does not work we/they do not work |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Contractions: don't, doesn't |


| We make simple present negatives ( - ) with do/does not + infinitive (without to). |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| STATEMENT + | NEGATIVE - |
| I know | I do not know (NOT H How fot) |
| You think | You do not think |
| He likes | He does not like |
| She remembers | She does not remember |
| It helps | It does not help |
| We want | We do not want |
| They understand | They do not understand |

(1) Make negative sentences. Use do not or does not.

- I play chess. (cards) . ! do not.play cards

1 You speak very good Arabic. (Chinese)
2 Bill plays the piano very well. (guitar)
3 We agree about most things. (holidays)
4 Alan and John live near me. (George and Andrew)
5 My father writes novels. (poetry)
6 Barbara works in London. (live)
7 Henry likes old books. (parties)
(2) Make negative sentences. Use don't or doesn't.

1 The train stops at Bristol. (Cardiff) It
2 I like jazz. (pop music)
3 Peter remembers names very well. (faces)
4 We know our Member of Parliament. (his wife)
5 Alice teaches engineering. (mathematics)
6 The children play football on Mondays. (hockey)
7 The shops open on Sunday mornings. (afternoons)
3 Complete the negative sentences, using words from the box.
You can use do not / does not or don't / doesn't, as you like.

## fish in Britain much petrol $\Omega$ much tennis <br> on Sundays Russian your phone number

My car/use ..My cardoesn't usemuch petrol.
Our cat / like
Melinda / speak
I/remember
Oranges / grow
The postman / come
We / play
4. Choose one verb to make each sentence negative.

- it ..doesn'tsnow
very often in San Francisco. (snow, sing, play)
1 I like football, but I
cricket at all. (think, like, remember)
2 She lives in Japan, but she ............................. a word of Japanese. (sing, work, speak)
3 I'm sorry - I
your name. (eat, remember, work)
4 He works in New York, but I $\qquad$ what he does. (know, use, come)
5 Mary's really tired, but she to go to bed. (help, want, walk)
6 We a big flat - just one bedroom. (work, play, want)

8 Gemma's parents
I'm the right man for their daughter. (write, read, think)
(5) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: games

Look at the table, and write five or more sentences like this:
Ann plays tennis, but she doesn't play cards.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| tennis | football | rugby | basketball | baseball | chess | cards | hockey | badminton |  |
| Ann | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Pete | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ |
| Joe | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Sarah | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ |

6 What games do you play? And what games do you not play?

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115).
Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't tuderstand me.)
She never phones me. (NOT She doesf't Aever phone me.)

## simple present questions Do you remember me?

$?$
do I work? do you work? does he/shelit work? do we work? do they work?

```
We make simple present questions(?) with do/does + subject + infinitive (without to).
```


## STATEMENT +

I know
You think
He likes
She remembers
It helps
We want
They understand

## QUESTION ?

Dolknow?
Do you think? (NOT Think you?)
Does he like? (NOT Boes he tikes?)
Does she remember?
Does it help?
Do we want?
Do they understand?
(1) Put in do or does.

- ..DO......... you know my friend Andy?
- ..Does...... this bus go to Cambridge?

1 ............... Ann want to come with us?
2 ............... your parents live near here?

3 ............... you speak Chinese?
4 .............. Sarah go to school on Saturdays?
$5 \ldots \ldots \ldots . .$. this shop sell stamps?
6 ............... Bill and Harry play golf?

2 Make questions.

- They smoke. .Do they smoke?
- Ashley teaches French. .Does Ashley teach French?

1 The Oxford bus stops here.
2 The teachers know her.
3 You play the piano.
4 John works in a restaurant.
5 This train stops at York.
6 We need more eggs.
7 Fatima likes parties.
8 Peter speaks Spanish well.

Do you know all these question words?
what when where who why how how much how many what time
What do you think? (NOT What think you?) Where does Lucy live? (NOT Where tives tuty?)
How much does this cost? (NOT How muth this e日sts?)
What time does the train leave? (NOT What time the frain teaves?)
(3) Choose the correct subject.

- How much does ..the ticket............. cost? (the ticket / the tickets)

1 Where do .............................. live? (your daughter/your children)
2 What time does ............................. start? (the lesson / the lessons)
3 What do .............................. want? (you / the girl)
4 When does ..............................finish? (the holidays / the holiday)
5 Why do ............................ talk so fast? (that woman / those women)
6 What do ............................. think of the new boss? (you /she)

[^1](4) Choose the correct question word and put in do or does.
how how many how much $\Omega$ what when where why

- How much does

1
2
3
4
5
6
the ticket cost?
............................... your children live?
she want?
the holidays start?
the teacher talk so fast?
languages ...................... he speak?
you pronounce this word?
(5) Make questions.

- Where / she live? ..Where does she live?

1 What / you want?
2 What / this word mean?
3 What time / the film start?
4 How much / those shoes cost?
5 Why / she need money?
6 How / this camera work?
7 Where / you buy your meat?
8 Who / you want to see?
6. Do you know all these simple present questions? Study them, and then put the correct question into each conversation.
How do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? What does this word mean?
How much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? Where do you live/work?
What do you do? ( = 'What is your job?') How do you do? (= 'I'm pleased to meet you.')
What time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? What time does the film/concert/class start?

1
'With one c and double s.'
2
'I'm a taxi driver.'
3
'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.'
4
'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the morning.'
5
'€500.'
6
'No, but I know her sister.'
7
'How do you do?'
8
'I don't know. Look on the cinema programme.'

## simple present: more practice

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | l/you/we/they work | he/she/it works |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{?}$ | dol/you/we/they work? | does he/she/it work? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | l/you/we/they do not work | he/she/it does not work |
|  | Contractions: don't, doesn't |  |

1) Circle the correct answers.
1 Where do / does your sister live?
6 The post office doesn't open / opens on Sundays.
2 My cat / My cats don't like fish.
7 When does your holiday start / start your holiday?
3 This car don't / doesn't go very fast.
8 My parents both play / plays golf.
4 This train stop / stops at every station.
9 That café / Those cafés stays open all night.
5 Why do English people / English people do
10 Her letters don't say / to say very much. drink so much tea?
(2) Make sentences.

- Anu (live) in Birmingham + Anu Lives in Birmingham.
- you (speak) Chinese ? ..Do you speake chinese?
- Sarah (like) classical music - . Sarah doesn't líke classical music.
1 I (like) getting up early
2 you (want) something to drink ?
3 Dan (play) football on Saturdays +
4 you (remember) her phone number ?
5 that clock (work)
6 she often (fly) to Paris on business +
7 it (rain) much here in summer -
8 elephants (eat) meat?
9 he (think) he can sing ?
10 we (need) a new car +
(3) Make sentences like the ones in Exercise 2. Write about yourself.

I like
I don't like
I want
I don't want
I need
I don't need
I often
I never
9 Ialways


| $\mathbf{+}$ | lam working <br> lam not working$\quad$you are working <br> you are not working | he/she/it is working <br> he/she/it is not working etc | we/they are working |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Contractions: I'm, you're, he's etc (not) ...ing; you aren't, he isn't etc ...ing |  |  |
| What's he...ing?, Where's she ...ing?, When's it ...ing? etc |  |  |  |

We make present progressive verbs with be (/ am, you are etc - see page 2 ) $+\ldots$ ing.
John is studying Russian. I'm not working today.
We use contractions (I'm, John's, isn't etc) in conversation and informal writing.
(1) Make present progressive affirmative ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) and negative ( $\boldsymbol{-}$ ) sentences.


- Jenny .isn't working .................... today. (work - $\boldsymbol{-}$ )

2 The cat ................................................. a bird. (eat + $\boldsymbol{+}$ )

4 । ................................................. this party. (enjoy -)
5 1................................................. a good book. (read + )

7 You ................................................... to me. (listen - )

9 Peter ................................................... to school this week. (go -



## HOW TO MAKE -ING FORMS

- most verbs: + -ing work $\rightarrow$ working sleep $\rightarrow$ sleeping
- verbsending in -e: $\left(l_{\sim}\right)+$-ing $\quad$ make $\rightarrow$ making $\quad$ hope $\rightarrow$ hoping
- -ie changes to $y+$-ing lie $\rightarrow$ lying
(2) Write the -ing forms of these verbs.
break ..........ng. clean ................ come................. die................. enjoy

start
wash
write


## DOUBLING (stopping, running etc)

- one vowel + one consonant
$\rightarrow$ double consonant +-ing
- two vowels: don't double
- two consonants: don't double
- Only double in STRESSED syllables
stop $\rightarrow$ stopping (NOT stoping) run $\rightarrow$ running
sleep $\rightarrow$ sleeping wait $\rightarrow$ waiting (NOT waitting)
want $\rightarrow$ wanting (NOT wantting) help $\rightarrow$ helping
beGIN $\rightarrow$ beginning BUT HAPpen $\rightarrow$ happening
(3) Write the -ing forms of these verbs.


We use the present progressive to say that things are happening now or around now.


I'm sorry, I can't come out. I'm working just now. (Compare: I work every day. - see page 17.) Look - it's raining again. (Compare: It rains every day here.)
Jane's taking driving lessons. (Compare: A lot of people take lessons with that driving school.) I'm enjoying this party. (Compare: I usually enjoy parties.)
(1) Make present progressive sentences.

- Emma / read / the newspaper. ..Emma's reading the newspaper.

1 The baby / cry / again.
2 It/snow/hard.
3 You / look / very beautiful today.
4 Your coffee / get / cold.
5 I/ play / a lot of football this year.
6 We / wait / for a phone call.
7 Chris and Helen / spend / a week in France.
2 Look at the pictures and use the verbs in the box to say what Helen is doing.

|  | brush | brush | drink | get up $\checkmark$ | go | listen | open | read | read | wash |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -..She's.getting.up......... 5 .............................. the newspaper. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | . her face. 6 .................................. her hair. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | . her teeth. $7 \ldots \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . l e t t e r s . ~$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | .. to the radio. $8 \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .$. the door. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 |  |  |  | . coffee. |  |  |  |  |  |  | to work |



| - | Iam not working you are not working he/she/it is not working we/they are not working |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Contractions: I'm not, you're not; he's/she's/it's not, we're not, they're not  <br> Or: you/we/they aren't, he/she/it isn't |

We make present progressive negatives with am/are/is not + ...ing.
I'm not working this week.
(1) Choose the right verbs and make negative ( - ) present progressive sentences.

- I (write, play, ask) you for a lot of money. .!'m not asking you for a lot of money

1 He (listen, stand, start) to me.
21 (rain, work, get) today.
3 It (wear, rain, speak) now.
4 She (wear, look, wait) a coat.
5 John's students (wait, like, learn) very much.
6 We (enjoy, fly, read) this film.
7 You (live, wait, eat) much these days.
8 I (sleep, stand, expect) to pass the exam.
9 My computer (pay, work, write).
10 I (stop, play, give) much tennis these days.
(2) Write negative ends for the sentences.

- It's cold, but (- snow) ..it's not snowing.
- I'm a teacher, but ( $\boldsymbol{\rightarrow}$ work just now) ..!'m not working just now.

1 He's a good footballer, but (-play well today)
2 They are in England now, but (-live in London)
3 It's a new car, but (-run well)
4 Everybody says this is a good book, but (/-enjoy it)
5 It's summer, but (the sun - shine)
6 I'm a student, but (-study at university)
7 She sings when she's happy, but (-sing just now)
8 I don't have any problems, but (- sleep well these days)
9 We're on holiday, but (- have a good time)
10 I'm crying, but ( - cry because of you)
(3) Complete the sentences, using the verbs in the box.

| not work not listen not rain not move not eat |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

1 The train
2 The children $\qquad$

4



3 It
4 The cat
5 John


NOTE: We do not use a present tense to say how long something has lasted (see page 65 ).
I've been waiting since 9.00. (NOT I'maiting siffe-9:00:)

## present progressive questions Is it raining?

? am I working? are you working? is he/she/it working? are we/they working?
We make present progressive questions with am/are/is + subject + ...ing
STATEMENT $\boldsymbol{+}:$ It is raining.
QUESTION ?: Is it raining?

Make questions.
$\qquad$
you / wait / for somebody ?
your boyfriend / enjoy / the concert ?
those men / take / our car ?
you / talk / to me?
it / snow?
we / go / too fast ?
your computer / work ?
you read / that newspaper ?
the bus / come ?
somebody / cook lunch ?
2 Complete the questions.

- 'Those people aren't speaking English.' 'What language are they speaking?
1 'Bill's writing something on the wall.' 'I can't see - what
2 'The train's stopping!' 'Why
3 'They're studying now.' 'What
4 'They're playing a game.' 'What game
5 'I'm going now. Goodbye.' 'Wait! Where
6 'Nadia's telephoning somebody.' 'Who
7 'The baby's eating something.' 'What
8 'Sue's working as a secretary.' 'Where
9 'I'm cooking something good.' 'What
10 'I'm not living with my parents.' 'Where

3) Put in question words and make present progressive questions. (More than one answer may be possible.)

- you/do ....hatareyou doing?

1 you / go now
2 Anne / cry
3 he / write
4 you / telephone
5 they / live
6 your brother / study English
7 you / cook
8 those people / look at me
9 the dog / eat
10 the children / do

# present progressive: more practice 

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | lam working | you are working | he/she/it/is working | we/they are working |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{n}$ am I working? | are you working? | is/he/she/it working? | are we/they working? |  |
| lam not working | you are not working | he/she/it/is not working etc |  |  |
|  | Contractions: I'm, you're, he's etc (not)...ing; you aren't, he isn't etc ...ing |  |  |  |

(1) Put the words in the correct order. Use contractions (e.g. it's) where possible.
$\downarrow$ me you talking are to? ..Are you talking.to.me?
1 getting are you up ?
2 raining is again it.
3 not you are listening
4 going where you are?
5 talking fast too 1 am ?
6 Ifilm enjoying not this am
7 laughing those people at are me why?
am for you I cooking this not
you what drinking are?
10 the baby eating the is newspaper
(2) Make present progressive sentences.
$\rightarrow 1 /$ look for / the station + . !'m Looking for the station.

- you / work / tonight ? .Are you working tonight?
- it / rain - ..t's.not raining:

1 Peter / try / to save money +
2 why / those children / cry?
3 your friends / play football / this afternoon ?
4 she / look / very well today
5 I think she / make / a big mistake +
6 you / wear / your usual glasses -
7 1/start/ to learn Spanish +
8 the 10.15 train / run / today ?
9 David / live with his parents / any more -
10 what / you / do / in my room ?
(3) Complete the text with verbs from the boxes.
1-5: come look not wear snow walk wear

| $\qquad$ heavily, but she 2. $\qquad$ very happy. She 3. $\qquad$ a dark blue dress with a black coat and boots, but she 4 $\qquad$ a hat. She really is a very beautiful woman. Her husband 5. $\qquad$ down the steps with her. |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |

6-11: kiss look return say stop try

Now Mrs Alexander and her husband $6 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ at the crowd and smiling. The photographers
$7 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. to get nearer, but the police $8 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots .$. them. What a day! At last, after
twenty years, this wonderful woman $9 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$................... her own country. Now the President
10.......................... her hand. What 11 he to her, do you think?

## the two present tenses: the difference

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work etc

- things that are always true
- things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc

The sun rises in the east.
She often wears red.
I play tennis.

## PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I'm working etc

- things that are happening now
- things that are happening around now

The sun is not shining today.
She's wearing a blue dress.
l'm playing a lot of tennis these days.
(1) Put the expressions in the correct places.
every day $\Omega$ just now nearly always now $\Omega$ on Fridays these days
this afternoon today very often when l'm tired

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work etc
..every day

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I'm working etc
now
....1..........................
$\qquad$
(2) Use the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

| chase $\Omega$ chase drive eat fly play play rain sell speak work write |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |


(3) Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms.
' 'What are you cating?'
1 'Where ................................................. these days?' 'In a garage.' (she / work)
2 '........................................................................ (it / rain)
3 'Bonjour.' 'Sorry, I
4 'Your English
5
6 'Who
'Where's Suzanne?'
Well, goodnight..................................................... to bed. (I/ go)
9 Water .................................................. at $100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. (boil)
10
11
hat man
'Yes, and he $\qquad$
'What's Peter's job?' $\qquad$
$\qquad$ film scripts.' (he / write)
4 'Summer's coming.' 'Yes, ................................................... warmer.' (it / get)
15 'How often ?' 'Every weekend.' (you / see your parents) 'Where's your brother?' '.............................................................. Scotland today.' (he / come back)
fast?' 'Yes, always. Too fast.' (John / drive)
'Come and have a drink'. 'Not now. I 'What ...............................................at?' 'A very strange bird.' (you / look)
'What kind of music $\qquad$ 'All kinds.' (you / like)
(4) Make true sentences about yourself.


## I never vote for anybody: I always vote against. (W C Fields)

I never travel without my diary. One should always have something sensational to read in the train.

## (Oscar Wilde)

I never think of the future.
It comes soon enough.

When a dog bites a man, that is not news, because it happens so often. But if a man bites a dog, that is news.
(John B Bogart, American newspaper editor)

When a woman isn't beautiful, people always say, 'You have lovely eyes, you have lovely hair'. (Anton Chekhov)

## (Albert Einstein)

## non-progressive verbs I don't understand.

Some verbs are most often used in simple tenses, not progressive, even if we mean 'just now'. I like this weather. (NOT t'm liking this weather.) What does he want? (NOT What is he wanting?)

## THE MOST IMPORTANT NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS

believe, hate, hope, know, like, love, mean, need, prefer, remember, seem, think (= 'have an opinion'), understand, want

I hate this music. 'We're late.' I know.' I love that colour. Do you understand? What does this mean? Ineed some help. 'Tea?' I prefer juice.' Ayesha seems unhappy. Note also the expressions It doesn't matter ( $=$ 'It's not important') and I see ( $=$ 'I understand').
'I'm sorry l'm late.' 'It doesn't matter.' 'There's a problem.' 'I see.'

## Make sentences.

- Ayesha / seem / unhappy today + ..Ayesha seems unhappy today
- you / need / help ? .Do you need help?
- $1 /$ know / her name - ..!don'tknow her name.

1 what/this word/mean ?
2 Rob/want/to see the doctor -
3 she / love / me! +
4 Peter / seem / tired +
5 we / need / a new car -
6 you / know / that man?
7 1/hate / this cold weather +
8 you / like / this music ?
9 I/remember/her address -
10 you/understand/this letter?
(2) Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes.

'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' 'Is it going to rain?' I hope not.'
'Is that Maria over there?' 'Yes, I think so.' 'Are you free on Sunday?' I don't think so.'
'Can you help me?' 'It depends. What do you want me to do?'
'What would you like to drink?' I don't mind.'
(3) Choose the best expressions to complete the conversations.

- 'Is Ingrid enjoying her holiday?' I hope so.' I I don't mind.'

1 'Agresti, min ruggide flochsch?' I don't think so.' /'I don't understand.'
2 'We're not happy with your work.' 'I hope so.'/'I see.'
3 'Is Jeremy coming to dinner?' 'I see.'/'I hope not.'
4 'Do you like this music?' 'I think so.'/I don't remember.'
5 'Is that Olivia getting into the taxi?' 'I know.' /'I don't think so.'
6 'Who wrote 'War and Peace'?' 'It depends.' / I don't know.'
7 'It's Tuesday.' 'I think so.'/'I know.'
8 'Can you lend me some money?' 'It depends.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
9 'We're too early.' I don't know.' / It doesn't matter.'
10 'What's Phil's address?' I don't remember.' / 'It depends.'
11 'Sorry, this coffee isn't very good.' I don't mind.'/I hope so.'
12 'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.'/I don't remember.'
13 'Is Pete in his office?' 'I don't think so.'/'I see.'
14 'Is it going to rain?' 'It depends.'/'I hope not.'
15 'Can you help me?' 'I think so.'/'I don't remember.'
(4) Write personal answers.

- Will everybody in the world speak English one day? ..!think so.!! don't think so.!! hope so.!..... ! hope not ! ! don't mind ! ! ! don't know.
1 Is your English getting better?
2 Will you be rich and famous one day?
3 What were you doing at 8.00 in the morning on February 16th last year?

4 How many stars are there in the sky?
5 Will it rain tomorrow?
6 Have you got a good government?
7 Will you live to be 100 years old?
8 Are there people on other planets?
9 Are you a nice person?
10 Will you fall in love next week?

| WHAT YOU SAY | WHAT THEY SAY | WHAT THEY MEAN |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 'Do you mind if I sit here?' | 'No, please do'' | 'Go away.' |
| 'I'm sorry I spilt coffee on you'' | 'It doesn't matter at all.' | 'You clumsy fool.' |
| 'Can you do something for me?' | 'It depends. What is it?' | 'Certainly not.' |
| 'What shall I sing!' | 'I don't mind. Anything.' | 'Don't sing.' |
| 'Do you see what I mean?' | 'Yes.' | 'No.' |
| 'Shall I wear the blue dress or the | 'I don't mind.They're both <br> green one? Which do you prefer?' | beautiful.' |
| 'You don't seem to like the food' | 'Oh, I do. It's delicious.' | What's the difference?' |
| 'I need to be alone.' | 'I see.' | 'I hate it.' |

## present tenses: more practice

(1) Question words. Choose words from the box to complete the questions.
how how many how much what what time when where why

(2) Simple present. Choose the correct verbs to make simple present sentences.

- 1 /hamburgers (+) (like, drink, play) ..! likee hamburgers.
- Henry / French (?) (make, speak, work) ..Does.Henry speak French?
- the buses / on Sundays ( $\boldsymbol{-}$ ) (speak, play, run) ..The buses don't run on Sundays.

1 what language / Brazilians (?) (run, work, speak)
2 Felix / fast cars (+) (sing, catch, drive)
3 Annemarie / newspapers (-) (make, read, clean)
4 my two brothers both / in London (+) (play, speak, work)
5 dogs / vegetables (-) (walk, eat, pass)
6 Maria / the piano (-) (play, make, cool)
7 Peter / at weekends (?) (work, wear, break)
8 my husband / very well (+) (want, cook, stop)
9 Roger / to work with animals (+) (want, play, read)
10 this bus / to Belfast (?) (work, speak, go)
(3) Present progressive. Write true sentences to say what is (not) happening now.

- I/work .l'm working.

1 I/wear red socks I'm
2 it / rain
3 I/ listen to music
4 I/sit on the beach
5 1/sing
6 I/ think about something beautiful
7 I/ wait for a phone call
8 the sun / shine
9 the government / make everybody happy
10 my English / get better
(4) Progressive and non-progressive verbs. Correct $(\mathcal{J})$ or not $(x)$ ?

- Are you liking this weather? .....
- I'm working today. .....

1 You're driving too fast.
2 What is this word meaning?
3 I'm not wanting a drink just now.
4 Where are you living now?

5 I'm thinking you're wrong.
6 That man is looking like your brother.
7 Sorry, I'm not understanding.
8 I'm seeing the doctor this morning.
9 'I can't pay you today.' 'I see.'
10 What are you thinking about?
5) Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

| get up go have like like live look after | not like | not want | work work $J$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |


| $\qquad$ at 5.00 , she 3 $\qquad$ breakfast in her tent and then she $\qquad$ to work the animals. She 5 $\qquad$ her life very much, and she 6 $\qquad$ the other people in the us, but she 7 $\qquad$ her boss. She also has problems with her boyfriend, James. He$\qquad$ 500 miles away, in Scotland, where he 9 $\qquad$ in a bank. He 10 $\qquad$ |
| :---: |
|  |  |


| cry do love not know | not want | not work | read | sit | you think want |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

This morning Anna $11 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. . She $12 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. in her tent. She $13 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . .$. a letter
$\qquad$ In the letter, James says'I 15 $\qquad$ you to leave the circus and come to Scotland to be with me. I 16 $\qquad$ to move to England to be with you, because I'm doing well in my job.' Anna 17 what to do. She 18 $\qquad$ James, but she 19 well in her job too. What 20 she should do?
6) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: clothes. Use the words in the box to say what the people are (not) wearing. Use a dictionary if necessary.


John


Cathy


Sandra


David John is wearing a white shirt, a blue sweater, a blue jacket, grey trousers with a blue belt, blue socks and black shoes. He is not wearing glasses.
Cathy is wearing

Sandra

David
(7) Internet exercise. Use the internet to get information about a well-known person. Write some of the information (simple present sentences). Some of these words might be useful.

| hate like live work play travel often | always | never |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

## present tenses: revision test

(1) Write the simple present he/she/it forms.

(2) Write the -ing forms.

(3) Put the words in order to make simple present sentences.

- Phil / dogs / like (+) .........ines dogs:
- know / you / Anna (?) ..Do.you know Anna?
- open on Sundays / the post office (-) ....ne post offlce doesn't open on Sundays.

1 work/you / London (?)
2 pop music/ like / I (-)
3 where / live / James (?)
4 coffee / some / want / you (?)
5 rain / here / it / a lot (+)
6 I/my / every week / wash / car ( +
7 Spanish / Luke / speak (-)
8 friends / football / play / all your (?
9 a suit / wear / to the office / I (-)
10 make / spaghetti carbonara / how / you (?)
(4) Put the words in order to make present progressive sentences.

1 sister / my / in Spain / travel ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ )
2 happy / Alice / look / very (-)
3 the baby / why / cry (? )
4 for the bus / wait / you (?)
5 much tennis / / / these days / play (-)
6 nice / Tim/ wear / a / very / raincoat (+ )
7 me/talk/you /about / (?)
8 walk / slowly / you / too (+)
9 that / what / eat / child (?)
10 this / / / enjoy / concert ( - )
(5) Correct $(\mathcal{V})$ or not $(x)$ ?

1 'Where's Melissa?' 'She's coming now.'
2 'Are you smoking?' 'No, never.'
3 John cooks dinner just now.
4 I work late most Tuesdays.
5 Why is she looking at me?
6 I'm going skiing every winter.
7 You're driving too fast.
8 What is this word meaning?

9 I'm seeing the doctor this morning
10 'I can't pay you today.' 'I see.'
11 Where are you living now?
12 What do you think about?
13 Ithink you're wrong
14 That man is looking like your brother.
15 'Your English gets better.' 'Oh, thank you.'

## SECTION 3 talking about the future

## grammar summary

There are three common ways to talk about the future in English:

- with the going to structure.

I'm really going to stop smoking.

- with the present progressive.

I'm seeing John this evening.

- with will.

Anna will be in the office from 10.00 till 2.00 .
We use going to or the present progressive especially when the future has some present reality: for example to talk about plans that we have already made.
We can sometimes use the simple present to talk about the future.
Her train arrives at 15.37. I'll phone you when I get home.
I'll see you tomorrow if I have time.

## Your horoscope for next week

## AQUARIUS

(Jan 21 - Feb 18)
Wednesday will bring money, but the money will bring problems.

## PISCES

(Feb 19 - March 20)
It will be a difficult week.
Don't travel by train.


ARIES
(Mar 21 - Apr 20)
Some very strange things will happen on Tuesday. Try to laugh about them.


TAURUS
(Apr 21 - May 21)
The week will be full of danger. Stay away from children and animals.


## GEMINI

(May 22 - June 21 )
Your family will cause problems on Monday. And on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, ...


## CANCER

(June 22 - July 22)
The week will bring love, excitement and adventure.
But not to you.

## LEO

(July 23 - Aug 23)
Stay in bed on Thursday. Don't open the door. Don't answer the phone.

## VIRGO

(Aug 24 - Sept 23)
You will meet an exciting stranger. Don't believe anything that he says.


## LIBRA

 (Sept 24 - Oct 23)You will spend most of the week in hospital. Good luck.

## SCORPIO

(Oct 24 - Nov 22)
The week will be bad in many ways. But not as bad as the following week.

## SAGITTARIUS <br> (Nov 23 - Dec 21)

You will make an unexpected journey. It will end badly.

## CAPRICORN

(Dec 22 - Jan 20)
Trouble will come from a horse and a washing machine.

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | lam going to drive | you are going to drive | he/she is going to drive etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{a m}$ | am l going to drive? | are you going to drive? | is he/she going to drive? etc |
| $\boldsymbol{-} \boldsymbol{l}$ am not going to drive | you are not going to drive etc |  |  |
|  | For contractions (l'm, aren't etc), see pages 2 and 315. |  |  |

We often use going to when we can see the future in the present - when a future situation is starting, or clearly on the way.

Look - it's going to rain.


Rebecca's going to have a baby next month.

1 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use the words in the box.

- She is . going to post a letter.

1 The woman
2 He
3 She
4 The cars
5 He
6 The ball
break the window
crash
drink coffee
have breakfast
play the piano
post a letter $\swarrow$
read a letter


4



We often use going to to talk about intentions - things that people have decided (not) to do.
What are you going to wear this evening? I'm not going to take a holiday this year.
2 Make questions with going to.

- you / cook supper ..Are.you going to cook supper?
- when / your brothers / be here ..When are your brothers going to be here?.

1 Jane / change her school
2 where / you / put that picture
3 what / you / buy for Felix's birthday
4 Ethan / play football / tomorrow
5 when / you / stop smoking
6 Alice / go to university
7 you / phone the police
8 your mother / come and stay with us
9 she / buy that coat
10 what / you / tell the boss
(3) Lindsay is talking about her holiday next week. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

```
do any work drive to Italy f fly learn some Italian read English newspapers
stay in a nice hotel swim a lot take photos visit museums write postcards
```

- No. I'm not going to.fly:

4

- .!'m. going to drive to taly.

5
1
2
3 $\qquad$

(4) Make sentences with going to.

- Andy / start school / next week + ..Andy is going to start school next week.
- you / see the dentist ? ..Are.you going to see the dentıst?
- 1/work this evening - ..!'m..not going to work this evening:

1 how / you / get to London?
2 when / Monica / come and see us ?
3 it / snow -
4 1/ cook fish / for lunch +
5 when / you / see the doctor ?
6 Angela / marry / her secretary +
7 John / call/ this evening ?
8 I/ stop / playing poker +
9 everybody / watch the football match +
10 Sally / get the job -
(5) Write some sentences about your intentions. Use I'm (not) going to ...


NOTE: In informal speech (and songs), we often say gonna for going to.

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | lam working | you are working | he/she/it is working | we/they are working |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{a m}$ | am I working? | are you working? | is he/she/it working? | are we/they working? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | lam not working | you are not working | he/she/it is not working |  |
|  | For contractions (I'm, aren't etc), see pages 2 and 315. |  |  |  |

We can use the present progressive with a future meaning, especially when we talk about plans for a fixed time and/or place.
'What are you doing this evening?' I'm staying in.' Where are you going on holiday?
Joe's coming to the theatre with us tomorrow. I'm starting a new job next week.
1 Make sentences with the present progressive.

- when / you / come back ? ..When are you coming back?
- $1 / \mathrm{go} /$ there again - .!'m not going there again.

1 1/ play/baseball tomorrow -
2 1/ go / to Canada next year -
3 we / stay / with Paul and Lucy next week +
4 you/work/ this evening -
5 what time / your friends / arrive
6 my company / move / to Scotland next year +
7 how / your mother / travel to France ?
$8 \mathrm{l} / \mathrm{see} /$ the dentist on Thursday +
9 l/go/to a concert tonight +
10 Gary / marry Cathy / after all -
2 Look at Harry's diary and correct the sentences.

- He's staying in Berlin on Friday night.

No, he's coming back to England on Friday night.
1 He's seeing John Parker on Sunday afternoon.

2 He's going to the Birmingham office by car.

3 He's having dinner with Stewart on Tuesday.

4 He's going to the theatre on Thursday evening

5 His new secretary is starting on Friday.

6 Phil and Monica are going to his wedding on Saturday.

| Sunday |
| :--- |
| John Parkeer morning |
| Monday |
| to Birmingham (1.15 train) |
| Tuesday |
| Lunch Stewart 1.00 |
| Wednesday |
| theatre with Ann and joe |
| Thursday |
| new secretary starting |
| Friday |
| to Berlin LHo14 8.00 ; |
| back U135 |
| Saturday |
| Phil and Monica's wedding |

(3) A friend of yours is going on holiday soon. Write questions.

- when/leave .When areyou Leaving?

5 stay / with friends

- take / your sister Are you taking. your sister?

1 where/go
2 why / go there
3 how long / stay ..............................................
4 stay / in one place

6 how / travel
7 take / the dog
8 who/go with you
9 when / come back

## will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow.

| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | 1/you/he/she/it/we/they will work |
| ---: | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{r}$ | will l/you/he etc work? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | 1/you/he etc will not work |
|  | Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't ( = will not) |

```
We use will + infinitive to predict - to say things that we think, guess or know about the future.
I think it will snow tomorrow. Be quick, or you'll miss your train.
Bella won't be here this evening. When will you know your exam results?
(1) Put the words in the correct order to make affirmative (+) sentences.
```



```
- speak everybody English perhaps will ..Perhaps.everybody.will.speak English.... in the year 2100.
1 begin class will the .................................................................................
2 be they'll home
examination will the difficult be
walk we'll party the to
she not speak will me to
your John answer questions will
Sunday ten years old will Emily be on
```


## (2) Make questions with will.

what time / tomorrow evening's concert / start ?
when / you and the family / get back / from Paris ?
you / be / here tomorrow?
you and your mother / be / here tomorrow?
where / you / be / this evening ?
the children / have enough money / for the journey?
how soon / you know / the answer ?
(3) Make negatives with won't and questions.


NOTE: After I and we, some people say shall instead of will. The meaning is the same; will is more common in modern English.

We can use will when we decide or agree to do things, and when we talk about refusing (saying 'no') and promising. We don't use the simple present in these cases.

OK, I really will stop smoking. She won't speak to me. I'll phone you. (NOT
Things can 'refuse'.
The car won't start. This pen won't write.
We often use will at the moment when we decide something.
'There's someone at the door.' I'll go.' (NOT lgo.) 'That's the phone.' I'll answer it.'
1 Put in words from the box with 'll or won't.

| do go shopping go to bed $\Omega$ help open | start stop tell $\checkmark$ tell wash |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

(2) It's time to change your life. Look at the ideas in the box and write six promises with will or won't - the most important first.
always think before I speak be nice to everybody drive too fast fall in love every week
go for a walk every day go to bed early learn another language / a musical instrument
read more relax smile at everybody smoke study English every day talk more slowly
talk to strangers think about myself too much work harder (your own promise)

- !'ILtalk more slowly:.................................................... 3
- I won't drive too fast. ............................... 4

1 ......................................................................... 5
2 .......................................................................... 6
(3) Look at the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then circle the best answers.

I'll think about it. I'll see. ( = 'I'll think about it.') (I'll) see you tomorrow/later.
(I'll) see you. I'll give you a ring/call. ( = I'll phone you.) I'll tell you tomorrow/later.


## simple present for future Our train leaves at 8.10.

We can use the simple present to talk about timetables, cinema/theatre programmes and dates
Our train leaves at 8.10. What time does your flight arrive? The film starts at 7.30.
1 Put the words in order to make sentences.

- leave / the flight / at 9.30 + ..The flight Leaves at 9.30.
- the film / what time / start ? ..What time does the film start?
- at Mill Road / this bus / stop - ..This bus doesn't stop at Mill Road.

1 start / the next lesson / at $2.00+$
2 this term / on March 12th / end +
3 when / finish / the concert ?
4 we / a lesson / next Thursday / have -
5 this bus / at the post office / stop?
6 at $8.00 /$ start / the play
7 what time / arrive / you / in Rome ?
8 the banks / at 3.00 tomorrow / close +
9 at every station / stop / the next train +
10 when / start / the school holidays??

We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when, as soon as and if.

```
We'll see you before we go. (NOT ... before we wilt go.) We'll have a drink after I finish work.
You can use my bike while I'm away. He'll phone you when he arrives. (NOT ... when he witl afrive.)
We'll wait until Justin gets here. I'll tell you if I need money. I'll write as soon as I get home.
```

Put in the correct verb forms: simple present or will-future.

|  | .ramus................ we .'ll have .............. the party inside. (rain; have) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | . happy when I ........................... my exam. (be; pass) |
| 2 | f you ......................... now, you ........................... the train. (leave; catch) |
| 3 | John says he ........................ as a taxi-driver if he .......................... money. (work; need) |
| 4 | . free tomorrow evening, but I ............................ you on Friday. (not be; see) |
| 5 | Mary ........................ Chinese next year after she .......................... work. (study; stop) |
| 6 | . you to the station as soon as I ........................... my car keys. (drive; find) |
| 7 | When he $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots .$. her, his life ....................... a lot. (marry; change) |
| 8 | you $\qquad$ smoking if the doctor $\qquad$ you <br> hat you must? (stop; tell) |
| 9 | f we $\qquad$ to the boss very politely, $\qquad$ he o us? (talk; listen) |
|  | back from work. (phone; get) |

[^2]
## irlongunge

## future: more practice

(1) Going to. Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use going to with the verbs in the box.

2) Present progressive. A problem. (Use a dictionary if necessary.) Jane is seeing five people next week, one each day: her bank manager, her solicitor, her accountant, her dentist and her doctor. Who is she seeing when? Read the text in the box, fill in the table and complete the sentences.

She's seeing her bank manager before her doctor. She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday. She's seeing her dentist two days after her bank manager. She's seeing her accountant two days after her doctor.

| 1 | She's seeing .............................................. on Monday. | Monday |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | .................... on Tuesday. | Tuesday | doctor |
| 3 | .................... on Wednesday. | Wednesday |  |
| 4 | ................... on Thursday. | Thursday |  |
| 5 | on Friday. | Friday |  |

(3) Will. These are sentences from real conversations. Put in forms of will with expressions from the box. (C: the speaker used a contraction: 'II or won't.)


Put the words in order, and make statements ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ ), questions ( $\boldsymbol{\Pi}$ ) or negative sentences ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) with going to (G), the present progressive (PP), will (W) or the simple present (SP).

- (G) start work / Robert / tomorrow + ..Robert is going to start work tomorrow:
- (PP) again / invite / her / - - .!'m.notinviting her again.
- (W) be / in the office tomorrow / Anna ? ..Will Anna be in the offuce tomorrow?
- (SP) leave / our train / at midday $\boldsymbol{+}$..Our train Leaves at midday

1 (G) stop / I/smoking +
2 (PP) I/ Andrew / tonight / see +
3 (G) rain / it -
4 (G) marry / Peter / his boss +
5 (W) exams / his / pass / Oliver -
6 (W) like/ this / you / film +
7 (SP) arrive / the bus from London / what time ?
8 (PP) I/tomorrow/ the car / use -
9 (G) steak / I / cook / this evening +
10 (G) how / travel / to Ireland / you ?
11 (W, SP) I/ phone you / when / get home / I +
12 (PP) you / on Saturday / work ?
13 (W) need / you / for the night / room / a?
14 (G) write / you / to your father ?
15 (W) we / enough / for a good holiday / money / have -
16 (W) key / find / the / I / where ?
17 (W, SP) you / to university / after / leave school / you / go ?

18 (PP) stay with us / next week / John and Sylvia +
19 (G) you / when / have a haircut ?
20 (G) get up / soon / you ?
(5) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: giving directions with will. Complete the letter. Put '/l with the verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

(6) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences that begin:

1 The government will
2 The government will not
3 The Prime Minister will
4 The Prime Minister will not
5 The President will
6 The weather will

## future: revision test

(1) Write the contracted forms.

- I am going to ..!'m.going to.

1 I will
2 She will
3 It will not
4 They are going to

5 They will
6 They will not
7 She is not going to OR
8 I am not going to
(2) Correct $(\alpha)$ or not $(x)$ ?

- You eat with us this evening? . $x$...
- I'm taking a Spanish exam on Thursday. ...
1 'There's somebody at the door.' 'I go.'
2 Will Anna and John be here tomorrow?
3 I promise I write again soon.
4 I'll telling you everything soon.

5 The car won't start.
6 I'm working in London next week.
7 The concert starts at 8.00 this evening.
8 Emma's going to have a baby.
9 Do you play tennis with Peter this weekend?
10 Where will be the party?
(3) Correct the mistakes.

- When are you

1 The concert will tonight.
2 I will need a visa to go to China?
3 Our business will moves out of London next year.
4 Alan and Carol not are getting married after all.
5 I really going to stop smoking.
6 I wo'nt be here tomorrow.
7 I phone you after I will get home.
8 The secretary will giving you all the information.
9 What you're doing at the weekend?
10 When will be the meeting?

## (4) Make questions and negative sentences.

- Tim will play the trumpet on Tuesday. Fred / flute / Friday ? Serena / saxophone / Saturday Will fred play the flute on Friday? ..... Serena won't play the saxophone on saturday
1 Susan's seeing Simon on Sunday. Melanie / Martin / Monday? Tessa / Tom / Tuesday -

2 Mr Smith is going to study Spanish in Seville. Mr Andrews / Arabic / Algiers ? Mrs Roberts / Russian / Rome -
$\qquad$

3 Charles will cook chicken for Charlotte. Derek / duck / Dorothy ? Sally / spaghetti / Sam -
$\qquad$

4 Williarn is going to work in West Africa. Harry / take a holiday / Hungary ? Steve / study / Siberia -
$\qquad$

5 Angela is travelling to Amsterdam in August. Oliver / Oslo / October ? Monica / Madagascar / May -
$\qquad$

## grammar summary

SIMPLE PAST: I worked, she worked, he didn't work etc
PAST PROGRESSIVE (OR 'PAST CONTINUOUS'): I was working, she was working, he wasn't working etc

## English has two 'past' tenses.

- We use the simple past for complete finished actions. We often use it in stories.

I wrote ten letters yesterday. A man walked into a police station and asked ...

- We use the past progressive to talk about actions which were unfinished at a past time.
'What were you doing at 10.00 last night?' II was writing letters.'


4 About 6,000 years ago, somebody painted this picture on a cave wall in Namibia, south-west Africa.


A
Stonehenge, in southern England, is about 4,800 years old. Who built it? Nobody knows.

4 About 1,200 years ago, Vikings from Scandinavia made this beautiful ship.

About 2,200 years ago, Shi Huangdi completed the Great Wall of China.



## simple past: forms I worked. I went.

|  | REGULAR VERBS | IRREGULAR VERBS |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | I/you/he/she/it/we/they worked <br> did I/you/he/she/it/we/they work? <br> $\boldsymbol{?}$ | I/you/he/she/it/we/they went <br> did/you/he/she/it/we/they go? |
|  | Contraction: didn't | I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not go |

## HOW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS

- most verbs: +-ed work $\rightarrow$ worked help $\rightarrow$ helped rain $\rightarrow$ rained
- after $-\mathrm{e}:+-d \quad$ hope $\rightarrow$ hoped like $\rightarrow$ liked

1) Write the simple past.
walk ..walked. arrive $\qquad$ change $\qquad$ cook $\qquad$
hate ............... live
live
pass shave watch

## VERBS ENDING $\mathbb{N}-Y$

- vowel $(a, e, o)+y \rightarrow$-yed play $\rightarrow$ played enjoy $\rightarrow$ enjoyed
- consonant $(d, I, r e t c)+y \rightarrow$-ied try $\rightarrow$ tried reply $\rightarrow$ replied

2 Write the simple past.


## DOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)

- one vowel + one consonant
$\rightarrow$ double consonant + -ed
- two vowels: don't double
- two consonants: don't double
- only double in STRESSED syllables

| stop $\rightarrow$ stopped (NOT sfoped) | plan $\rightarrow$ planned |
| :--- | :--- |
| seem $\rightarrow$ seemed | wait $\rightarrow$ waited (NOT waitted) |
| want $\rightarrow$ wanted (NOT wantted) | help $\rightarrow$ helped |
| preFER $\rightarrow$ preferred | BUT WONder $\rightarrow$ wondered |

3 Write the simple past.
shop ............... rain
jump ................ shout................ sip
ob ............... slim
jum
reGRET
slip
fit
turn
Vlsit
deVElop $\qquad$ GALIop
OPen
ANswer
reFER $\qquad$

With irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).

```
go }->\mathrm{ went see }->\mathrm{ saw buy }->\mathrm{ bought pay }->\mathrm{ paid
```

Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.


## simple past: use I left school in 1990

We often use the simple past to talk about when things happened.
Ileft school in 1990. Ididn't see Ann yesterday. What time did you arrive?

## PAST 1990

YESTERDAY
9? 10 1 11 ?
We use the simple past, not the present perfect (have seen etc) with finished-time expressions.
I saw that film last week. (NOT thave seen that film tast week.)
Did you pay William on Sunday? (NOT Hove you paid William on Sunday?)
(1) Put the beginnings and ends together, using the verbs in the box.

```
die f forget learn like read speak stop
```

Shakespeare ..die..........
I ............... my girlfriend's
That's a really good book.
When we were children
I didn't .............. my piano teacher
Where did you ...............

A birthday on Monday.......
$B$ in 1616......
C sol............... my lessons last week. ......
D I................ it last year. ......
E we always ................ French at home. ......
F to speak Spanish so well? ......

Note the word order with ago.
I started this job three years ago. (NOT ... age three years.) It happened a long time ago.
2 How long ago was your last birthday? Ten days ago? Five weeks ago? Eight months ago? Write the answer, and complete the other sentences.

1 My last birthday was $\qquad$ 3 Last January
2 Last Tuesday was
4 My third birthday

We often use the simple past for things that happened one after another, for example in stories.
He parked his car, went into the station and bought a ticket. Then he had a cup of coffee and
3 Grammar in a text. Put simple past verbs into the story.

| $1-6:$ | come hear open say not see stand |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| $7-10:$ | give hold not read take |  |  |
| $11-15:$ | run say not speak turn | write |  |



## simple past: negatives I did not work. I did not go.

| - | Idid not work you did not work he/she/it did not work we did not work they did not work |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
|  | Contraction: didn't |

We make simple past negatives ( - ) with did not /didn't + infinitive (without to).

## STATEMENT +

He cleaned the car. He started early. She saw you.
John went to Rome.

## NEGATIVE -

He did not clean the car. (NOT He did not eleaned the ear.) He did not start early. (NOT He did not ftarts early.) She didn't see you. (NOT She didn't saw you:) John didn't go to Rome.
(1) Circle the correct form.

- I break /broke a cup yesterday.
- Ann did not(play)/ played tennis this morning.

1 Harry work/ worked last Sunday.
2 I didn't know / knew where I was.
3 I didn't feel / felt well last night.

4 Alina come / came to see us at the weekend. 5 I didn't see / saw Bill at the party.
6 Peter didn't write / wrote to me for a long time.
7 The train did not arrive / arrives on time.
8 Julita didn't like / likes / liked her teacher.
(2) Make simple past negative sentences.

- I played hockey last weekend. (football) ..!didn't play football.

1 We spoke Spanish together. (Arabic)
2 My uncle taught mathematics. (science)
3 Bill cooked the potatoes. (the fish)
4 I took my mother to the mountains. (my father)
5 We told our parents everything. (the police)
6 I wrote to my sister. (my brother)
7 I liked the party. (the music)
8 We knew her address. (phone number)
(3) Complete the sentences with affirmative (+) or negative ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) verbs.

- I didn't break this window, but (the other one + ) . ! brolee the other one.
- I worked last week, but (the week before -) ..! didn't work the week before.

1 He didn't change his trousers, but (his shirt + )
2 She answered the first question, but (the others - )
3 He phoned her, but (go to her house - )
4 I didn't bring any flowers, but (some chocolates $\boldsymbol{+}$ )
5 She didn't buy a coat, but (a very nice dress + )
6 I ate the vegetables, but (the meat $\boldsymbol{\square}$ )
7 We kept the photos, but (the letters - )
8 They didn't speak English, but (German + )
9 My grandfather shaved on weekdays, but (at weekends $\boldsymbol{\square}$ )
(4) Write five things that you didn't do yesterday.

1 Ididn't
2
3
4
5

We make simple past questions (?) with did + subject + infinitive (without to).

| STATEMENT + | QUESTION ? |
| :--- | :--- |
| He cleaned the car. | Did he clean the car? (NOT Bid he eleaned the taf?) |
| The class went to Rome. | Where did the class go? (NOT Where did the tlass went?) |

## (1) Circle the correct form.

| I take /took my father to Spain last week. | 6 Why did you leave / left your job? |
| :--- | ---: | :--- |
| Did youhear/ heard me? | 7 Did Fred speak / spoke to you about Andy? |
| 1 Did Theo bring / brought his wife with him? | 8 Where did that woman keep / kept all her money? |
| 2 When did Gemma start / starts school? | 9 Rolf learn / learnt English when he was young. |
| 3 I see / saw Eric in the supermarket yesterday. | 10 Sorry - I forget / forgot to buy milk. |
| 4 The lesson begin / began very late. | 11 Did you come / came by train or by bus? |
| 5 How did Oliver break / broke his leg? | 12 What did you say / said? |

(2) Make simple past questions.

- James enjoyed the food, but (the music ?) ..did he enjoy the music?

1 She listened to everything, but (remember it ?)
2 You didn't pay Ryan, but (the others ? ?
3 You liked the book, but (the film ?)
4 He played football, but (well ? )
5 You gave them some help, but (any money ?)
6 She wrote to her sister, but (her mother ? )
7 He learnt French, but (English ??)
8 She got up early, but (early enough ? )
9 You shut the back door, but (the front door ?)
10 They took the children with them, but (the dog ? )
11 She felt ill on Sunday, but (OK yesterday ? )
12 He forgot the name of his hotel, but (the address as well ?)
(3) Make simple past questions with what, who and where.

- Pete saw somebody. ...Who did he see?

1 John went somewhere.
2 Bill bought something.
3 Alice married somebody.
4 Mary broke something.
5 Mike stayed somewhere.
6 Joe studied something.
7 Robert studied somewhere.
8 Ann wrote something.
9 Catherine heard somebody.
10 George understood something.
11 Helen forgot something.
12 Sarah went on holiday somewhere.
$\rightarrow$ For questions without did, like Who said that? or What happened?, see pages 108-109

## simple past: more practice

|  | REGULAR VERBS | IRREGULAR VERBS |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | I/you/he/she/it/we/they worked / liked | I/you/he etc went/saw |
| $\boldsymbol{?} \boldsymbol{l}$ | did I/you/he etc work / like? | did I/you/he etc go/see? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | I/you/he/ etc did not work / like | I/you/he etc did not go/see |
|  | Contraction: didn't |  |

(1) Complete the sentences with affirmative ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) verbs, questions ( $\boldsymbol{?}$ ) or negatives ( $\boldsymbol{-}$ ).

- She didn't feel well last night, but (OK this morning + ) ..she felt OK this morning.
- 'I bought a new coat yesterday.'('shoes too ?') ..Did you buy shoes too?.
- We saw the Eiffel Tower, but (see Notre Dame- - ) .we didn't see Notre Dame.

1 I didn't learn much French at school, but (a lot of Latin + )
2 I remembered to buy the bread, but (the milk $\boldsymbol{\square}$ )
3 I spoke to Alexia's father, but (her mother - )
4 'Peter didn't phone yesterday.' ('this morning ?]')
5 Ididn't take the bus to London; (the train + )
6 I know you went to Singapore, but (Malaysia ?)
7 The train stopped at Edinburgh, but (Glasgow -
8 'Did the children see a film?' ('two films +')
9 'I ate your cake.' ('my chocolates too ?')
10 I studied for the exam, but (enough -
(2) Make simple past questions.

- Sarah and her baby came out of hospital. (When) ..When did they come out?

1 Ann and her brother went on holiday. (Where)
2 Peter's friends gave him a bicycle. (Why)
3 The small woman said something. (What)
4 The children bought something. (What)
51 invited somebody to lunch. (Who)
6 Mary dropped something. (What)
7 Oliver beat somebody at tennis. (Who)
8 George wrote to the police. (Why)
9 Rose asked somebody to marry her. (Who)
10 Bruno lived in India. (When)
(3) Look at the picture, and complete the sentence correctly.


A did you remember
B did you remembered
C do you remembered
D did you to remember
'That reminds me, dear -
the sandwiches?'

| + | l was working | you were working | he/she/it was working | we/they were working |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?}$ | was I working? | were you working? | was he/she/it working? | were we/they working? |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | I was not working | you were not working | he/she/it was not working etc |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

We make the past progressive with was/were + ...ing. (For spelling rules, see page 23. ) At 8 o'clock I was waiting for a train. What were you doing?
We use the past progressive to say what was (not) happening around (before, at and perhaps after) a past time.
'What were you doing at 8.00? Were you watching TV?' (NOT What did you do . . .)
'At 8.00? No, I wasn't watching TV. I was playing cards.' (NOT+played ...)
PAST 8.00 Now

1) What were the people doing yesterday evening? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with words from the box.
Use past progressive verbs.


| cook supper | dance drive home |
| :--- | :--- |
| not watch TV | play cards $\Omega$ |

- At 9.15 Sarah .......playing cards.

1 At 10.30 Fred and Alice
2 At 8.20 Keith
3 At 7.50 Mary
4 At 11.00 Oliver


## simple past or past progressive?

We use the simple past to talk about complete actions (long or short). We use the past progressive for actions which were not complete at a past time.


## ( Simple past or past progressive?

- I ived was living in France for eight years.
- Sue lived was living) in France when her uncle died.

1 At 6.15, when you phoned, I had/was having a shower.
2 We watched / were watching TV all evening.
3 Matt watched/was watching TV when Anita came in.
4 My father worked/was working hard all his life.
5 They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.
6 Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.
7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.
8 I met Sylvie while I worked/was working in Japan.
9 At university I studied/was studying physics.
10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.
2 Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.


- (you cycle ?) when you broke your leg .....ere you cycling when you broke your leg?

When I saw Joan (she look -) happy .........! saw loan she wasn't Looking happy.
1 At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards + )

2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk $\boldsymbol{\square}$ )

3 When Mary got up (it snow + )

4 When I saw Alice, (she walk - ) very fast

5 What (you do ?) at ten o'clock yesterday evening

6 When you heard them, (they talk about me ?)

7 How fast (you drive ?) when you had the accident

8 The doorbell rang when I (expect - ) anybody

9 I don't know what I (do + ) at 10.00 on January 13 th, 2005

10 I had to drive to London because the trains (run - ) when I left home

Note the difference when we use the past progressive and the simple past together.
Past progressive: longer action or situation.
Simple past: complete shorter action that happened while the longer action was happening.

While I was having a bath,

the phone rang.

## While I was talking to my brother,



Bill came in.

## Put simple past and past progressive verbs in the right places.

| - | While I ..was walking .......... down the road, I ..saw......................... Bill. (walk; see) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | While I $\qquad$ the newspaper, the cat $\qquad$ on to the table. (read; jump) |
| 2 | Alan ........................... Helen while he ............................. in Morocco. (meet; travel) |
| 3 | Sally ........................... her leg while she .............................. (break; ski) |
| 4 | While I ............................. , somebody ............................... my car. (shop; steal) |
| 5 | Ruth ........................... me eight times yesterday while I .............................. (phone; work) |
| 6 | The police . ........................... me while I .............................. home. (stop; drive) |
| 7 | 1 $\qquad$ an interesting report on the radio while I $\qquad$ breakfast. (hear; have) |
| 8 | Dad ........................... to sleep again while he .............................. TV. (go; watch) |
| 9 | While I ................................ I ................................. a glass. (wash up; break) |
| 10 | . my hand while I ................................ in the kitchen. (cut; work) |
| 11 | When I $\qquad$ the house I took my coat because it (leave; snow) |
| 12 | When I ............................. the door they ............................... about me. (open; talk) |
| 13 | The telephone ................................ while I ................................. lunch. (ring; cook) |
| 14 | When I last . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . from Harry he ............................ in Portugal. (hear; work) |

## 4. Correct ( $\mathcal{J}$ ) or not ( $x$ )?

1 This morning I listened to the news before I was going out.
2 I walked up to the policeman and asked him the way to the station.
3 When Ann arrived I was writing letters.
4 The cat was bringing in a mouse while I was having breakfast.
5 I didn't go out because when I looked out of the window it rained.
6 When I went to sleep the teacher was talking about grammar.
7 The teacher was still talking about grammar when I woke up.
8 Jenny and Takashi got married while she worked in Tokyo.
5 Put in words from the box, in the simple past or past progressive.
drive open pass pull run shine $\mathcal{J}$ sing start turn turn wait

| ple 2. $\qquad$ in front of the palace. At 10.00, the guards 3. $\qquad$ the Palace gates, the President's car 4 $\qquad$ out and 5. $\qquad$ left into Democracy Street. crowds 6. $\qquad$ to sing the National Anthem. The President's car 7. $\qquad$ |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |

## past tenses: more practice

(1) Simple past. Make sentences.

- the train / stop / at every station + ..The train stopped at every station
- when / my letter / arrive ? ..When did my Letter arrive?
- the doctor / remember / my name - ..The doctor didn't remember my name.
1 what / all those people / want ?
2 all your brothers / send you / birthday cards ?
3 the baby / eat / some toothpaste this morning $\boldsymbol{+}$
4 the teacher / answer / my question -
5 l/ lose / my keys again yesterday +
6 anybody / phone / while I was out ?
7 The Prime Minister / tell / us that things were getting better ..... $+$
8 My friends and I / believe / the Prime Minister -
9 Richard / give / me a birthday present -
10 What time / you / get up / today?
2 Past progressive. Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
- When I walked in (the children fight $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) ..the children were fighting.
- What (you do ?) in my office when I came in ..Were. you doing
- When I had the accident (I drive - ) fast I wasn't driving
1 At 9.00 on Sunday (we watch TV + )
2 When I saw him he was holding a paper, but (read - )
3 When you heard them, (they speak English ? )
4 When you got home, what (the children do ?)
5 Anna arrived when I (expect - ) her
6 I don't know what I (do $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) at 6.00 on February 18 th
7 When I looked out of the window it (snow + ) again
8 I had to drive to work because the trains (run - )
9 How fast (you drive ?) when the police caught you
10 When I saw Peter, he (stand $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) and looking up at my window
3 Simple past and past progressive. Put in the correct verb forms.
- They told the police that they ..were.playing.. cards at 10.00. (tell; play)
1 When I ............ out of the house I took my umbrella because it ..... (go; rain)
2 This morning I the newspaper before I went out. (read)3 ............ you ............ the football match last night? (watch)
4 When I into the room they about clothes. (walk; talk)
5 At 8 o'clock yesterday morning in the sea. (swim)
6 I walked up to the classroom window and in. The teacher ..... but
nobody (look; talk; listen)
7 The telephone as usual, while I ..... a bath. (ring; have)
8 This time last Friday 1 on the beach. (lie)
9 Why ............ you home early yesterday? (go)
10 When I first John he round the world. (meet; travel)

4) Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

|  |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

5. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know all the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then try to correct the mistakes. Find the answers on the internet if necessary.
build climb compose discover make invent paint write

- Galileo wrote 'Hamlet'. ..Galileo discovered the moons oflupiter.
- Shakespeare discovered the moons of Jupiter. ..Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet.....................................

1 Mozart built the Eiffel Tower.
2 Leonardo da Vinci directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.

3 Shah Jehan invented dynamite.
4 Alfred Nobel wrote the song 'Help'.

5 Sergei Eisenstein built the Taj Mahal.
6 Gustave Eiffel wrote ‘Pride and Prejudice'.
7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.

8 Marie Curie first climbed Mount Everest.
9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney discovered radium.

10 The novelist Jane Austen painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
6) Internet exercise. What did these people do? Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out the answers, if necessary.
1 Alexander Fleming
2 Giuseppe Verdi
3 Rembrandt van Rijn
4 Edmund Whymper
5 Mary Shelley
6 Stephanie Kwolek
7 Christopher Wren
8 Akira Kurosawa

## past tenses: revision test

(1) Write the simple past forms.

2) Circle the correct forms.

## Why didn't you phone/phones / phoned?

1 In the afternoon the rain stoped/stopped.
2 You never visited / visitted me in hospital.
When I arrived she was makeing / making coffee.
My mother didn't feel / felt well yesterday.
We usually speak / spoke French in my family when I was a child.
Henry didn't told / tell the police anything.
Did you like / liked the film?
I didn't saw/ seen / see the accident.
John phoned / was phoning just when I went / was going out.
10 I played I was playing football a lot when I was at school.
(3) Put in simple past or past progressive verbs.

4) Each sentence has one or two mistakes. Correct them.

- I looked out of the window, and I was seeing that it rained. saw was raining

1 Yesterday we were driving from London to Bristol and back.
2 At university I was studied engineering.
3 Why you were crying when I came in?
4 I was begining to get tired, so I was going home.
We payed the bill and leaved the restaurant.
While I was shoping, somebody was stealing my bicycle.
The doorbell ringed while I was cleaning the flat.
8 It was a warm day, so we opening all the windows.
9 What time you was got up this morning?
10 I did lost my keys somewhere when I walked home this evening.

We use the present perfect to talk about past actions with some importance now.
live written to John, so he knows what's happening.
We use the present perfect progressive mostly to say how long things have been going on up to now.
I have been writing letters since breakfast time.
When we are already talking about the past, we use the past perfect to talk about an earlier time.
Yesterday I found some old letters that Kate had written to me from Germany.
(SIMPLE) PRESENT PERFECT: I have worked, she has worked, he hasn't worked etc PRESENT PERFECT PRÓGRESSIVE: I have been working, he has been working etc PAST PERFECT: I had worked, she had worked etc

was born in 1976. She is an
NN CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.


ISABELLA LUCY BIRD (1831-1904) was a famous explorer. At a time when it was difficult for women to be independent, she travelled in the United States, Persia, Tibet, Kurdistan, China, Japan, Korea and Morocco. She wrote many books about her experiences, illustrated with he own remarkable photographs.

He's not here.
He's gone to Paris.


I've been studying English for three years.

## Look what live found!

Have you ever been to Canada?

She's been here since Monday.

Nobody was there. They had all gone home.

Who's taken my coat?

I've just had a brilliant idea.

The Prime Minister has met workers' representatives. They discussed a number of questions.

I knew ld seen her somewhere before.

## present perfect: forms I have paid. Has she forgotten?

|  | REGULAR VERBS | AN IRREGULAR VERB |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | I have worked you have worked he/she/it has worked etc <br> have I worked? <br> Ihave not worked <br> have you worked? has he/she/it worked? etc <br> you have not worked etc | I have seen etc <br> have I seen? etc <br> Ihave not seen etc |
|  | For contractions (l've, he's, haven't), see page 301. |  |

To make the present perfect, put have/has with the past participle (worked, seen etc).
Regular past participles end in -ed, like simple past tenses (for spelling rules, see page 46).
work $\rightarrow$ worked $\quad$ hope $\rightarrow$ hoped $\quad$ stop $\longrightarrow$ stopped try $\longrightarrow$ tried
With irregular verbs, the past participle is often different from the simple past tense. You have to learn the forms one by one (see page 299).
see $\rightarrow$ seen speak $\rightarrow$ spoken $\quad$ go $\rightarrow$ gone buy $\longrightarrow$ bought
1 Write as many of the irregular past participles as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn the ones that you don't know.


2 Write affirmative ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) or negative ( $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) present perfect sentences.

- I (speak + ) to the boss .. ! have spoken to the boss.
- they (eat - ) anything ..They have not eaten anything

1 she (forget + ) my address
2 I (make + ) a mistake
3 you (shut -) the door
4 Alan (work + ) very hard
5 I (hear - ) from Mary
6 John (learn -) anything
7 I (break + ) a cup
8 we (buy + ) a new car
9 the rain (stop $\boldsymbol{+}$ )
10 I (see - ) a newspaper today

'Somewhere with no irregular verbs.'

We make present perfect questions with have/has + subject + past participle.

| STATEMENT +: You have paid. The rain has stopped. $\quad$ The children have gone to Dublin. |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| QUESTION ?: Have you paid? | Has the rain stopped? |

Make present perfect questions.

- John / leave? ..Has John Left?
- why / Fiona / go home? .......y has Fiona gone home?
- where / you / put the keys? .....here have you put the keys?

1 we/pay?
2 Tim/phone?
3 you / hear the news?
4 the dogs / come back ?
5 what / Barbara tell the police ?
6 why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children ?
7 what / you / say to Mike ?
8 why / everybody / stop talking ?
9 you / see / Martin anywhere?
10 who / take / my coat ?
11 what / happen?
12 where / my brother / go ?
13 why / Peter / close the window ?
14 Judith / pass / her exam?
15 the postman / come?
(4) Look at the pictures and put the words in the correct order.

| seen 1 ball sorry your haven't no $\Omega$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

'No,

## finished actions: present perfect or simple past?


#### Abstract

PRESENT PERFECT: WE THINK ABOUT THE PAST AND THE PRESENT TOGETHER When we think about the past and present together, we normally use the present perfect.


l've written to John, so he knows what's happening now.
l've made a cake. Would you like some?
Look-l've bought a new dress.


| FINISHED ACTION | PRESENT PERFECT | PRESENT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| letter (yesterday) | I've written to John. | John knows now. |
| e (this morning) | I've made a cake. Would you like some? | l'm offering you some now. |
| ew dress (last | ook - l've bought a new | I'm showing you now. |

SIMPLE PAST: WE THINK ONLY AB OUT THE PAST, NOT THE PRESENT When we think only about the past, we most often use the simple past.
My grandfather wrote me a lot of letters.
(He's dead now; I'm not thinking about the present.)
I made a cake for the children, but they didn't like it.
(I'm not talking about the present.)
I bought a new dress last Tuesday, for the party.
(I'm thinking only about last Tuesday.)


1 Read the sentences and the questions, and circle the correct answers.

- Ann has bought a new coat. Has she got the coat now? YES/PERHAPS
- Grandma came to stay with us. Is Grandma with us now? YES (PROBABLY NOT)

1 I made a cup of tea. Is there tea now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
2 Eric has made a cake. Is there a cake now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
3 Jane went to France. Is she there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
Marlon has gone to Scotland. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
Pat and Al started a business. Is the business still running? YES / DON'T KNOW
Sue has started guitar lessons. Is she taking lessons now? YES / DON'T KNOW
The cat has run away. Is the cat at home now? NO / DON'T KNOW
The doctor sent Bill into hospital. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
Pete lost his glasses. Has he got his glasses now? NO / DON'T KNOW Joanna has cut all her hair off. Has she got any hair now? NO / DON'T KNOW
(2) Circle the correct verb forms.

[^3]3) What are the people saying? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect.

```
break \ break buy cut eat find
give pass sell send stop
'Somebody ........................ the window.'
'John ........................... us a postcard.'
'I ........................... a hat.'
'I ........................... my finger.'
'The rain
'Look what Peter
my car.'
`| .......................... too much.'
8 'I ........................... an earring.
9 I ........................... my exam!'
I ......................... my arm.
```

10 〕

4. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in the present perfect verbs.
break $/$ change close find forget go leave lend lose see

```
    Joe..has broken. his leg,
    Molly can't get into her house
    'He's looking unhappy.'
    'Who's that?'
    'That's a good film. Shall we go?'
    'Where's Louise?'
    'Can I borrow your bicycle?'
    Anton
        a new job.
    'Shall we have lunch at the Cantina?'
    'Denise looks different.'
```

A 'Sorry. 1 know him, but 1
his name.'
B 'Yes, his girlfriend .................... him.' ......
C because she .................... her keys. ......
D 'No, I................... it'. ......
E so he can't go skiing. .....
F 'Yes, she ................... her hair-style.' ......
G 'We can't. It $\qquad$
H 'I think she .................... to Ireland.' ......
1 'Sorry, I ................... it to Maria.' ......
J He's working in a bank now. ......

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to) in present perfect sentences.
Where's John?' 'He's gone to Paris.' (He's there now.) Mary's gone swimming. She'll be back at 6.00.
I've been to Italy lots of times (and come back), but l've never been to Spain.

## (5) Put in been or gone.

1 'Where's Zoe?' 'She's $\qquad$ shopping:
2 Gary's $\qquad$ shopping. The fridge is full.
3 Have you ever to the United States?

4 They're not here. They've all $\qquad$ out.
5 I haven't $\qquad$ to the cinema for weeks.
6 Katie's $\qquad$ to live in Greece.

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.
I've seen Ann. OR I saw Ann yesterday. BUT NOT Éveseeadanyesterdays
We use the simple past, not the present perfect, in stories (see page 47).
A man walked into a police station and said ... (NOT A man has-watked . . .)

## time words: present perfect or simple past?

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.
We've found oil in the garden. BUT NOT We've found oit in the garden yesterday.
A plane has crashed at Heathrow Airport. BUT NOT A plane has-cfashed at $3: 75$ this afternoon:
(1) Circlethe words for a finished time.
a few days ago always this week last week never now
then today yesterday when in 1990

## $(2$ Correct ( $\checkmark$ ) or not $(x)$ ?

- My father has changed his job.
- Andy has gone to Scotland last week. .....

1 Look what Peter has given me yesterday!
2 l've seen a great programme last night.
3 I think everybody has arrived now.
4 When have you talked to Ann?
5 We've bought a new car in April.
6 I've met my wife when we were students.
7 Look what Peter has given me!

8 Mary has written to me three weeks ago.
9 Sorry - l've forgotten your name.
10 I've forgotten Mike's birthday last Tuesday.
11 Everybody has gone home at 10 o'clock.
12 There's nobody here! What has happened?
13 Sally has left school in 2006.
14 When have you arrived in London?
15 I think Mary has missed the train.
16 What have you done then?

We can use the present perfect to ask if things have happened up to now, or to say that they haven't happened up to now. This often happens with words for an unfinished time (for example today, ever, never).

## Has the boss phoned today? Have you ever broken your leg? <br> We haven't been to Scotland this year. Mary hasn't written to me this week.



## 3 Make present perfect sentences.

- Steven / pay / for his lessons? ..tas.Steven paid for his lessons?

1 you / ever/write / a poem ?
2 I/ never / climb / a mountain
3 Charles / speak / to you / today ?
4 Clara / not / tell / me / her new address
5 you / ever / lose / your memory?
6 We / not / play / football / this year
7 Alex / never / write to me
you / see Henry / this week?
my father / never / drive a car
10 the cat / have / anything to eat / today ?
11 you / finish / those letters ?
12 I/ not/pay/for the lessons / this month
13 Sally / have a baby
14 Lucy / not phone / today
15 Corinne / come back / from India ?
16 It / stop / raining
17 the postman / come / this morning?
18 We / eat / everything in the house

We can use the present perfect to say how often things have happened up to now.
That's a wonderful film. I've seen it three times. Sally has only been to Ireland once.
We've often wanted to come and see you.
Make present perfect sentences.

- I/break / my arm / three times ..'ve broken my.arm three times

1 Joe / change / his job / twice this year

2 how often / she / ask / you for money?

3 I/ often / try / to stop smoking

4 Tom / phone / me / six times this week

5 My father / meet / the Prime Minister / twice

6 The police / question / Annie / more than once

7 I/ only / play / rugby / once in my life

8 My brother / often / help / me / in my work

9 Nobody / ever / understand / her

10 I/ never / want / to go to the moon

## (5) Present perfect or simple past?(Circle the correct answers.

1 Did you ever go / Have you ever been to Wales?
2 I never read / have never read any of his books.
3 Our team won / has won two matches this year.
4 Our team won / has won two matches last year.
5 Shakespeare never went / has never been to Athens.

6 I haven't bought any clothes this year / last year.
7 Julia stayed / has stayed with us last week.
8 I worked very hard today/yesterday.
9 Inever saw / have never seen a ghost.
10 When did John phone. / has John phoned?

6 Write five things that you didn't do yesterday, and five things that you have never done.

[^4]
## already, yet and just

We often use the present perfect with already (='earlier than somebody expected'). Note the word order: already comes after have.
'Newspaper?' 'No, thanks. l've already read it.' You're late. We've already started.Complete the sentences with already and verbs from the box (present perfect).
cook finish get up go $\checkmark$ leave pay


We also often use the present perfect with yet (='up to now') in questions and negatives.
Note the word order: yet usually comes at the end of a sentence.
'Have you spoken to John yet?' 'No. He hasn't come in yet.'
(2) Make questions (?) and negatives (-) with yet.

1 my sister/phone ?
2 the postman / come -
3 Bill / find a job -
4 you / finish that book ?
5 I/start work -
6 you / have supper ?

And we often use the present perfect with just (='a short time ago'). Just comes after have.
l've just come back from Spain. The rain has just stopped.
3 Do these things, and then write sentences to say what you have just done.

- (touch your ear) ... have just touched my ear.

1 (look at the floor)
2 (think about your home)
3 (move your feet)
4 (put your hand on your head)
(4) It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say what Angela has (not) done. Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just.


| have a cup of coffee | 7.55 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| get dressed | - | $\checkmark$ |
| do a lot of work | + | $\checkmark$ |
| write letters | three |  |
| telephone mother | 7.57 |  |
| clean kitchen | + |  |
| read newspaper | - |  |
| make toast | 7.59 |  |
| listen to the radio | + |  |

TUESDAY I've been here since Tuesday NOW


## 2 How long have you known people? Write sentences.

- ..'ve.known my English teacher since september.

1 I've known ....................................................................
2 I've
3
4
5
3) How long have you had things? Write sentences.

- . I've had these shoes for six. months.

2
3
4
5
(4) Make present perfect questions with How long ...
- you / be / in this country ..How long have you been in this country?
- Rachel / have / her job ..How Long has Rachel.had her job?

1 you / know / Mike
2 you / be / a student
3 your brother / be / a doctor
4 Andrew / have / that dog
5 David and Elizabeth / be / together

Be, know and have are non-progressive verbs (see pages $30-31$ ). With most other verbs, we use the present perfect progressive (see next page) to say how long things have continued up to now.
How long have you been waiting?

| + | I have been working | you have been working | he/she/it has been working etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ? ${ }^{2}$ | have lbeen working? | have you been working? | has he/she/it been working? etc |
| - | I have not been working | you have not been working etc |  |
|  | For contractions (l've, he's, haven't etc), see page 301. |  |  |

We make the present perfect progressive with have/has been + ...ing.
We have been living here since April. John's been working in the bank for three months.
We use the present perfect progressive (with most verbs) to say how long things have been continuing up to now. (For be, have and know, see page 65.)
I've been learning English for four years. It's been raining all day. Have you been waiting long?

> We've been travelling for six hours.

## PAST

## NOW

Make present perfect progressive sentences. Use for or since (see page 65).

- John started learning Chinese in February. Now it's July. (for)
dohn has been Learning chinese for five months
- It started raining on Sunday. It's still raining. (since)
!t's been raining since Sunday
1 Mary started painting the house on Monday. Now it's Friday. (for)

2 We started driving at six o'clock. Now it's ten o'clock. (for)

3 Anna started working at Smiths in January. (since)

4 Joseph started building boats when he was 20. Now he's 40 . (for)

5 We started waiting for the bus at 8.30. (since)

6 Prices started going up last year. (since)

7 We started camping on July 20th. (since)

8 My father started teaching 40 years ago. (for)

9 It started snowing at midnight. Now it's midday. (for)

10 The team started training together in June. Now it's September. (for)

REMEMBER: we don't use present tenses to say how long things have been going on.
They've been living here since 1998. (NOT They-are fiving-here since +998:)
I've been learning English for three years. (NOT I'm tearning English for-3 years:)

[^5]2 How long have you been learning English?
$\qquad$
3 Correct ( $\mathcal{\prime}$ ) or not ( $(x)$ ?

- I'm waiting for her since this morning. .....
- I've been waiting for her for four hours.

1 I have been sitting in this office since 9.00
2 She's working here since 1998.
3 We have been driving for about six hours.
4 How long are Ann and Peter working here?

5 Sue has been talking on the phone all day
6 How long are you learning English? $\qquad$
7 My brother's living in Glasgow since March.
8 That man has been standing outside all day.
9 I'm only playing the piano since Christmas.
10 Have you been waiting long? $\qquad$

4 Look at the pictures and say what the people have been doing. Use the verbs in the box (present perfect progressive).
play play swim teach travel $/$ write

|  | 1 ..................................................the......... ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 2 ..................................................fo.......... |
| 3 | 3 |
| 4 | 4 .................................................... letters. |
|  |  |



| $\boldsymbol{+}$ | I had seen | you had seen | he/she/it had seen etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\boldsymbol{?}$ ? | had I seen? | had you seen? | had he/she/it seen? etc |
| $\boldsymbol{-}$ | I had not seen | you had not seen | he/she/it had not seen etc |
|  | Contractions: I'd, you'd etc; hadn't |  |  |

To make the past perfect, put had with the past participle (worked, seen, lost etc). She didn't phone Alan because she'd lost his number. It was a film that I hadn't seen before.

1 Make past perfect sentences.

| - I couldn't get in because I ........forgotten............... my keys. (forget + ) |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | Anna wasn't at home. Where ..had........................... she ..aone......................... (go ? ? |
| $\checkmark$ | The telephone wasn't working because we ..h......t.p.aid................. the bill. (pay -) |
| 1 | The woman told me that she .............................. in China a few years before. (work $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) |
| 2 | Everything in the garden was brown because it .................................. (rain $\boldsymbol{\square}$ ) |
| 3 | The bathroom was full of water. What ....................................(happen ? |
| 4 | I knew I ................................. that man somewhere before. (see + + ) |
| 5 | We were surprised to see Mark, because we .................................... his letter. (get - - ) |
| 6 | After three days the dogs came back home. Where ..................................... (be ? ${ }^{\text {? }}$ ) |
|  | They gave me some money back because l ................................... too much. (pay + ) |
|  | There was nothing in the fridge. I could see that Peter ........................... the shopping. (do - |

We use the past perfect when we are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past time.

Our train was late, and we ran to the cinema. But the film had already begun.


EARLIER PAST PAST NOW
I got out of the car and went into the school. It was empty. Everybody had gone home. I was glad that I had caught the early bus. Anna wondered if anyone had told Jim. We couldn't understand why Sue hadn' locked the door.

## (2) Circle the correct answers.

- I didn't recognise / hadn't recognised Helen, because she cut / had cut her hair very short.

1 No one understood / had understood how the cat got / had got into the car.
2 Joe didn't play / hadn't played in the game on Saturday because he hurt / had hurt his arm.
3 When I looked / had looked in all my pockets for my keys, I started / had started to get very worried.
4 Liz never travelled / had never travelled by train before she went / had gone to Europe.
5 I arrived / had arrived at the shop at 5.30, but it already closed / had already closed.
6 I didn't have / hadn't had much money after I paid / had paid all my bills last week.

3 Put in the simple past or the past perfect.
Bill didn't.tel
anybody how he
had got into the house. (not tell; get)

- Emma ..went to France last week. Before that, she had never . been..................... outside Ireland. (go; be)
1 When their mother home, the children all the sweets.
(get; eat)
2 Yesterday 1 a man who $\qquad$ at school with my grandmother. (meet, be)
3 It $\qquad$ that 1 my window.
(start; remember, not close)
4 1 a letter on my desk that 1 (find; not open)
51
Bob I couldn't go to the theatre, but he the tickets.
(already tell; buy)

We use the past perfect after when to show that something was completely finished.
When I had watered all the flowers, I sat down and had a cool drink.
When Susan had done her shopping, she went to visit her sister.

## 4

Make sentences using the past perfect after when.

- Jan finished her dinner. Then she sat down to watch TV.
- David phoned his girlfriend. Before that he did his piano practice.

Davd phoned his airlfriend when he had done nis piano. practice.
1 George ate all the chocolate biscuits. Then he started eating the lemon ones.

2 I turned off the lights in the office. Then I locked the door and left.

3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper. Before that she read it.
4 Mark had a long hot shower. Before that he did his exercises.

5 Barry phoned his mother with the good news. Then he went to bed.

## Nothing had changed

When I went back to my old school nothing had changed.

Well, OK, the place had closed down.

Doors stood wide, windows had lost their glass, ceilings had fallen.

Travellers had camped in the dining-room, and left their names on the walls.

## Wind blew

through the rooms where I had sat for so long and learnt so little.
Rubbish piled up in the corners.
But nothing important had changed.

## perfect tenses: more practice

(1) Verb forms. Make questions or negative sentences.

## - She has finished the book. - . She hasn't.finished the booke

- The rain has stopped. ? . Has the rain stopped?

1 All those people have gone home. ?
2 Peter has told us everything.
3 The postman has been. ??
4 Pat has spoken to Robert. ?
5 Tim and Angela have bought a house.
6 Emma's boyfriend has forgotten her birthday.?
7 Monica has been working in London all this week. ?
8 l've phoned Joseph. -
9 Robert and Sally have moved to Ireland. ?
10 We've been working all day.
(2) Present perfect or simple past? Somebody has just said these sentences. Choose the best answers.

- 'Harry has found a new girlfriend.' Has he still got this girlfriend? YES / PERHAPS
- 'Then a cat came into the house.' Is the cat in the house now? YES/PROBABLY NOT

1 'I've made coffee.' Is there coffee now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
2 'So Ross made soup.' Is there soup now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
3 'And Tom has started Japanese lessons.' Is he taking lessons now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
4 'Jill and Bob opened a driving school.' Is the school running now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
5 '... because Pete lost his glasses.' Has he got his glasses now? NO / WE DON'T KNOW
6 'Alan has gone to America.' is he there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
7 'We had a good time in Bulgaria.' Are they there now? YES / NO
8 'July has been a good month for business.' Is it still July? YES / NO
9 'Tony and Maria went to China.' Are they there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
10 'Polly has just bought a new coat.' Has she got the coat now? YES / PERHAPS
(3) Question formation. Make questions (simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive).

- The letter arrived. (when) ..When did the Letter arrive?
- Somebody has told her. (who) .....no has told her?

1 Everybody has already gone home. (why)
2 Anna's been learning Chinese. (how long)
3 George closed the door. (why)
4 Sue and Jeanne have gone on holiday. (where)

5 The President visited Russia. (when)
6 Jan's father has been travelling in Wales. (how long)

7 Something has happened. (what)
8 Joe has been working in Spain. (how long)
9 Mary studied medicine. (where)
10 Somebody has taken my bicycle. (who)

4 Simple past or past perfect? Complete the sentences.
1 When I
him, I
that I $\qquad$him before. (see; know; meet)
2 He ................... enough money for food because he (already start; arrive)
3 The meeting when I
4 The car down because I to put oil in. (break; forget)
51 Mary for the first time thirty years ago. (meet)
6 After our conversation I $\qquad$ everything that she (forget; say)
7 The house was empty. Everybody out. (go)
8 When he
work he out for a walk. (finish; go)
9 When I looked in the fridge, I .................. some cheese that I.................. six weeks before. (find; buy) 10 He $\qquad$ the door, and then realised that he $\qquad$ his keys in the house. (close; leave)
(5) Grammar in a text. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

| not be $\Omega$ happen have lose not pass spend |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

Last year $\downarrow$ was not $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . .$. a good year for Pete and Sonia. Pete $1 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . . \ldots$ a car


be buy change open pass

6. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: housework. Put simple past verbs into the story. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Once upon a time there was a beautiful girl called Cinderella. Her two sisters made her do all the housework. Every day she ( $\downarrow$ get) .. go............... up early, she (1 sweep) the floors, she (2 make) . the beds, she (3 polish) $\qquad$ (4 wash) and (s iron) $\qquad$ the clothes, she ( 6 wash up) dishes and (7 put) them away. She (8 tidy).
all the rooms, and she ( 9 do) $\qquad$ hundreds of other jobs.

## Now put present perfect verbs into the conversation.

SISTERS: Well, Cinderella, have you done everything?

| 10. the floors? 11 $\qquad$ the beds? 12. $\qquad$ the furniture? 13. $\qquad$ the clothes? And 14. $\qquad$ them? 15. $\qquad$ the dishes? And 16 . $\qquad$ them away? 17. $\qquad$ all the rooms? <br> NDERELLA: No,l 18 $\qquad$ anything. I'm going to marry the Prince. Goodbye! |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |


(7) Internet exercise. Read the two texts on page 57. Then use the internet to find out information about two other people (one living, one dead), and write a few sentences about their lives. Be careful to use the simple past or the present perfect correctly.

## perfect tenses: revision test

(1)

Put in the past participles.

(2) Complete the sentences with simple past verbs or past participles.

- I ......ote.... to my brother yesterday. (write)
- I haven't .............. to my sister for a long time. (write)

1 The lessons .............. last week. (begin)
2 You've $\qquad$ three cups today. (break)
3 Why have you $\qquad$ home early? (come)
4 We what they wanted. (know)

5 Who has
6 We
$\qquad$
7 John
$\qquad$ too much last night. (eat)
$\qquad$ off his bicycle yesterday. (fall)
8 I'm sorry, l've $\qquad$ your name. (forget)
9 l've .............. my address to the police. (give)
10 Somebody has $\qquad$ my umbrella. (take)

## (3) Circle the correct forms.

- Jenny slept / has slept very badly last night.

1 We know / We've known / We've been knowing John and Andy for / since years.
2 I work / I'm working / I've been working here since last summer.
3 'Mary went / has gone to London.' 'When did she leave? / has she left?'
4 Our football team already has lost / has already lost ten games this year. It lost / has lost all its games last year too.
5 Did you ever drive / Have you ever driven a bus?
6 My brother speaks good English, but he has never had / never had lessons.
7 Did you see / Have you seen Paul yet?
8 I started / have started this job for eight weeks / eight weeks ago / ago eight weeks.
9 I'm / I've been in this school for / since five years.
10 How long do you know / have you known Rebecca?
(4) Complete the sentences with the simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive.
$\qquad$ tickets for the match. Do you want to come with me? (buy)

- My grandfather went ....... to school in Ireland. (go)
How long ....................... you you ........................ his new watch? (lose)


## When

 MikeThat child
chocolate all day. (eat)

Andrew isn't here today - he $\qquad$ an accident. (just have)
It
non-stop since Sunday. (snow)

1 $\qquad$
51 6 'You're looking happy.' 'Yes, I mathematics from 1996 to 1998. (study)
$\qquad$ my exam.' (just pass)
How long you $\qquad$ Emma? (know)

9 The company a lot of money last year. (lose)
10 'Do you like the book I gave you?' 'I $\qquad$ it yet.' (not start)

## SECTION 6 modal verbs

## grammar summary

```
MODAL VERBS: can, could may,might shall, should will, would must ought to
PAST AND FUTURE OF MODALS: be able to have to
```

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. We use them before other verbs to express certain meanings - for example permission, ability, possibility, certainty.
Modals have different grammar from other verbs. For example, they have no -s on the third person singular: we say he can, NOT Ae-eafs.

Have to, be able to and used to are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section.
For will, see pages 39-40.

Together we can tackle

## CLIMATE

 CHANG:
## Science says We must Technology says 'We can' Help to get politicians to say 'We will'

(Adapted from advertisement for
Centre for Alternative Technology,
Machynlleth, Wales.)

I love mankind, it's people I can't stand.
(Charles M Schulz)

If you can't live without me, why arent you dead yet?
(Unknown)

Letters to a magazine
Should I give up smoking? Should I marry Bob?
Should I move to Woking?
Should I change my job?
Should I dye my hair green?
Should I tell his wife?
Should I ask a magazine
How to live my life?
(Lewis Mancha)

There are three kinds of people: those who can count, and those who can't.
(George Carlin)

Money can't buy you love.
(Traditionan

# modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc 

can, could may, might shall, should will, would must ought to

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs.
They are different from most other verbs in four ways.

## + INFINITIVES WITHOUT TO

After modals (except ought), we use infinitives without to. (After other verbs, infinitives have to.)
Can I use your phone? (NOT Gan House ...) Joe can't swim. I may be out tonight. BUT I want to use her phone. I'd like to go home. Joe seems to have a cold.
(1) Circle the correct answers.

- Can you play $V$ to play the guitar?
- I don't want play/to play football today.

1 Ann seems be / to be very tired.
2 Peter hasn't phoned. He must be / to be away.

3 Could you pass / to pass the orange juice?
4 We hope get / to get a bigger flat soon.
5 Chris may be / to be here at the weekend.
6 I forgot speak / to speak to Janet.

NO-S
Modal verbs have no -5 on the third person singular (he/she/it form). (Other verbs have -s.)
John can speak Korean. (nOT tehfeafs...) Barbara may be late. This must be your coat. BUT Josh knows my father. Ann seems to be ill. The cat wants to go out.
(2) Add $-s$ or nothing (-).

- Amy play.s... tennis. Tim can..... swim. 1 Our cat like.....fish. 2 It may...... rain.

3 She must..... pay now. 4 Harry work..... in London. 5 Kim should..... phone her mother.
6 The train seem..... to be late. 7 Nick might..... come and see us. 8 Tom want..... to go home.

## NO DO

We make modal questions (?) and negatives ( - ) without do. (Other verbs have do.) Can you help me? (NOT Boyoutan helf ffe?) You must not tell Philip. (NOT Yetdef't musf ...) BUT Do you know my friend Jeremy? Sally doesn't cook very well.
(3) Make questions (?) or negatives (-).
(Negatives in this exercise: cannot/can't; must not/mustn't; may not)

- Claire can't speak Russian. (Chinese ?) ......................................
- Katy must wash her clothes. (do it now -) ...........................................

1 Mike can't swim. (ski ?)
2 John can play football. (poker ?)
3 Maria must play the piano. (sing - )
4 Robert may go to Italy. (go this week -)
5 Emma can visit us on Saturday. (Sunday-)

## NO INFINITIVES OR PARTICIPLES

Modal verbs have no infinitives or participles: toean, maying, musfed. Instead, we use other verbs: can $\rightarrow$ be able to (see page 81); must $\rightarrow$ have to (see page 78).

| + + | I must go | you must go | he/she/it must go etc | (NOT Imustfoge, NOT helsheffimustsgo) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $?$ | must lgo? | must you go? | must he/she/it go? etc | (NOT Dotmustgo?) |

In affirmative (+) sentences, we use must when we mean This is necessary'.
I must get up early tomorrow. You must fill in this form. (NOT Ket ffust fofill...)
You must visit us while we're in Paris. Pat and Jan are so nice - we must see them again.
(1) Complete the sentences with must and verbs from the boxes.

(2) Put the beginnings and ends together. Add must and verbs from the box.

| get up give go go have phone read $\checkmark$ see |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

> Smith's latest book is her best, I think. I haven't heard from Annie for ages. l've left my handbag in the restaurant. This cake is delicious.
> 'Velocity' is a wonderful film.
> l've got a lot of work to do tomorrow. I'd like to see you again.
> The woods are full of flowers.

A 1 $\qquad$ her tonight.
B You ..must read
it. Shall I lend it to you?
C My mother made it; you $\qquad$ a piece.
D You ......................... it. It's a cinema classic.
E We for a walk this weekend.
F You $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$..................
G 1
I... back and get it.
H 1 must early.

In questions (?), we use must when we mean: 'Is this really necessary?'
To make questions with must, we put must before the subject.
Must we tell the police when we change addresses? Musi you talk so loud? Must you go?
(3) A new student is asking some questions about next week's exam. Complete the questions. Use Must I ...? and verbs from the box.


Have to (see pages 76-77) means the same as must.
Must has no past (musted) or infinitive (tomust). Instead, we use had to and (to) have to (see page 77).

## have to Do you have to teach small children?

| + | I/you/we/they have to go | he/she/it has to go |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $?$ | do I/you/we/they have to go? | does he/she/it have to go? |
| - | II/you/we/they do not have to go | he/she/it does not have to go |
|  | Contractions: don't; doesn't |  |

Have to is not a modal verb, but we use it very like must.
We use have to when we want to say 'This is necessary' / 'Is this necessary?' (like must).
You have to drive on the left in Britain. I have to go to New York for a meeting every month.
My sister has to work on Saturdays. Do your children have to take lunches to school?
1

1) Complete the sentences with have to or has to and expressions from the box.

|  | be $\checkmark$ be carry $\checkmark$ do | have | have | know | know | like | practise | read | wear |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1234 | An accountant ..has to be | good | th num |  | 5 A p |  | ...... | ... | d at |
|  | Builders . have to carry |  | heavy t | gs. | 6 Foot | lers |  |  | lot |
|  | A soldier |  | a u | rm. | 7 A se |  |  |  | good |
|  | Students |  | lot of | ks. | 8 A ga | ner. |  |  | abo |
|  | A schoolteacher |  | . chi | en. | 9 Doct |  |  |  | ab |
|  | Cooks ........ |  | clean $h$ | ds. | 0 A mu |  |  |  |  |

(2) Put the beginnings and ends together. Add Do/Does ... have to.

0 'Mary's a swimming teacher.'
1 'Here is some work for you and lan.'
2 'I want you to go to your aunt's party.'
3 'Jo and Alec work for a Mexican firm.'
4 'When would you like your holiday?'
5 'Dad and I are going out tonight.'
6 'That will be 250 Euros.'
7 'Peter works in marketing.'

finish it today?'
speak Spanish?'
tell you now?'
stay until the end?'
teach small children?' .....
pay it all now?'
babysit?'
(3) Write five things that you have to do every day, or most days.
! have to take the train to work
1
2
3
4
5
4. Write five things that you never have to do.

- ...never have to speale chinese

1
2
3
4
5
$\rightarrow$ For negatives (do not / don't have to) see page 77.

# mustn't and don't have to We mustn't wake the baby. 

| - | I must not go $\quad$ you must not go | he/she/it must not go etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| - | Ido not have to go $\quad$ you do not have togo | he/she/it does not have to goetc |
|  | Contractions: mustn't, don't have to |  |

Must has two negatives ( - ): we use mustn't or must not when we mean 'Don't do this'. we use don't / do not have to when we mean 'This isn't necessary'.
You mustn't smoke here. You mustn't take pictures here. We mustn't wake the baby. You don't have to pay now; you can pay when the work is finished. We don't have to hurry - we're early.
(1) Complete the sentences with mustn't and the verbs in the box.
let light $\checkmark$ make play play smoke wash

2) Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to and verbs from the box.

| drive give make make post speak wake $/$ |
| :---: |



A I can walk. .......
B I'll buy The Times at the station.
C Cathy's going to the post office. ......
D I'll just have coffee.
E I've got an alarm clock. .....
F everybody here understands English. ......
G I'll have lunch in the canteen. ......
(3) Mustn't or don't have to?


|  | PAST: HAD TO | FUTURE: WILL HAVE TO |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| + | I/you/he etc had to go | I/you/he etc will have to go |
| $? ?$ | did I/you/he etc have to go? | will I/you/he etc have to go? |
| - | I/you/he etc did not have to go | I/you/he etc will not have to go |

Must has no past or future: musted; will must.
We use had to for the past and will have to for the future of both must and have to.
My mum had to leave school at sixteen. Did you have to tell Jo? I didn't have to pay.
Alice will have to start school next September. Aled won't have to come.
(1)

Write about the things that John had to do ( + ), and didn't have to do ( - ), at school.

- (learn French +) .He had to Learn French.
- (playtennis -) .He didn'thave to play.tennis.

1 (learn Russian - )
2 (learn maths +)
3 (learn music -)
4 (play football + )
5 (write poems -)
6 (write stories + )
2 Make questions with Did ... have to ...?

- you / learn French at school ..Did you have to Learn French at school?
- Annie / work last Saturday ..Did Annie have to work last Saturday?

1 Adam / pay for his lessons
2 Tina / take an exam last year
3 Joe and Sue / wait a long time for a train
4 you / show your passport at the airport
5 the children / walk home
6 Peter/ cook supper
3 Complete the sentences. Use 'll have to ..., will ... have to ...? or won't have to ... with the verbs in the box.


| + $?$ - | I should go should I go? I should not go | you should go should you go? you should not go | he/she/it should go etc should he/she/it go? etc he/she/it should not go etc | (NOT Hsheuldtoge) (NOT dotsheutld ge?) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Contractions: shouldn't |  |  |  |

Should is like must, but not so strong. We use should for suggestions, opinions and advice.
Ought to is like should, but less common.
You should / ought to be more careful. People shouldn't drive fast in the rain. Should I wear a tie?
(1) Choose the best verbs, and complete the sentences with should and shouldn't.

(2) Make questions with should I, the question words and verbs from the box.
QUESTION WORDS: What $\checkmark$ What What time What time Where Where Who
VERBS: arrive put phone sit tell $\downarrow$ wake wear

- What should ! tell $\qquad$ John?' 'Tell him I left early.'
1
2
3 first?' 'Mr Andrews.'
$\qquad$
4
5
6 $\qquad$ you up?' 'Not too early, please.'

We use must to talk about what's necessary, and we use should to talk about what's good. I musi get a new passport: I'm travelling next month. I should eat more fruit, but I don't like fruit.
(3) Put in should or must.

- 'Do I look OK?' 'You ..should........ get a haircut.'

1 I can't go; I .................... finish this work.
21 take more exercise.

3 You $\qquad$ n't smoke near babies.

4 The sign says we ......................n't smoke.
5 What ................... I do to get a visa?
6 You ................... be over 16 to buy cigarettes.
7 'What music .................... I play?' 'Mozart.'

| + $?$ - | I can go can lgo? I cannot go | you can go can you go? you cannot go | he/shefit can go etc can he/she/it go? etc he/she/it cannot go etc | (NOT feantoge, NOT he eansgo) <br> (NOT deteange?) <br> (NOT tean het ge) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Contraction: can't |  |  |  |

## 1) Write sentences with but about what David can and can't do.



To make questions (?) with can, we put can before the subject.
Can Bill swim? Can Alice speak Chinese? When can lpay?
(2) Make questions with can.

- 'Little Lilya is ten months old now.' (walk) ........................
- 'John is starting the violin.' (what/play) ............................y?

1 'My brother wants to work in a restaurant.' (cook)
2 'My daughter's going to Spain.' (speak Spanish)
3 'Bill and Lisa want to buy a house.' (how much / pay)
4 'Can I help in any way?' (drive a bus)
5 'Some colours look bad on me.' (wear red)
6 'Jessica and I have got a lovely hotel room.' (see the sea)
7 'I want to learn the piano.' (read music)
8 'My brother is looking for a job.' (what / do)
9 'I can't eat cheese.' (eat butter)
10 'My sister is one year old today.' (talk)
(3) Write three things that you can do, and three things that you can't do.

[^6]
# could; be able to She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon 

|  | PAST |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| + | lcould go | you could go | he/she/it could go etc | (NOT Heouldte go) |
| $?$ | could lgo? | could you go? | could he/she/it go? etc | (NOT didteeutd go?) |
| - | I could not go | you could not go | he/she/it could not go etc |  |
|  | Contraction: couldn't |  |  |  |


|  | FUTURE |
| :--- | :--- |
| + | I/you etc will be able to go |
| $?$ | will I/you etc be able to go? |
| - | I/you etc will not be able to go |
|  | Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't |



2 What could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.

| climb trees dance fight play chess play the piano read run fast sing write |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
Can does not have an infinitive (foan). Instead, we use (to) be able to.
I want to be able to speak German. (NOT ... to ean speak Gefman:) I'll be able to drive soon.
(3) Make sentences with will be able to.

- I/swim/soon ..!'ll.be able to.swim. soon

1 Little Tim / talk / soon
2 I/pay you / next week
3 I hope that / go to America / one day
4 The doctor / see you / tomorrow
5 We / buy a car / next year
(4) Write about yourself, using be able to.

1 I'll soon.
2 I'll next year.
3 I'll one day.
4 I'll always
5 I'll never

## may and might It may snow. I might have a cold.

| + | I maygo you maygo | he/she/it may go etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| - | Imaynot go you may not go | he/she/it may not go etc |
|  | No contractions: ffoyff: |  |

We use may to say that things are possible - perhaps they are (not) true, or perhaps they will (not) happen.
'What's that animal?' 'I'm not sure. It may be a rabbit.' I may go to Wales at the weekend.
We may not be here tomorrow.
We do not use may in this way in questions.
It may snow. BUT NOT Mayit snow?
(1) Rewrite the sentences with may.

- Perhaps Sarah's ill. ..Sarah may............................
- Perhaps we won't go out. ....e. may not go out

1 Perhaps it won't rain.
2 Perhaps we'll buy a car.
3 Perhaps Joe is not at home
4 Perhaps Anna needs help.
5 Perhaps the baby's hungry.
6 Perhaps I won't change my job.
7 Perhaps she's married.
8 Perhaps he doesn't want to talk to you.
9 Perhaps you're not right.
10 Perhaps I won't be here tomorrow.
2 Put the beginnings and ends together; put in may with words from the box.
not be decide give go $\int$ go nothave snow stay

0 'What are your plans for next year?'
1 'Are you going to buy that coat?'
2 'Where are your parents going on holiday?
3 'Shall we phone Pete now?'
4 'It's getting very cold.'
5 'What are you doing this evening?'
6 'Are you going to study medicine?'
7 'What are you giving Oliver for his birthday?'

A 'I'm not sure. I .......y. $20 . . .$. . to America.' .....
B 'Not sure. They .................... at home.'
C 'No. I ..................... to study physics.
D 'Yes. I think it $\qquad$ '......
E 'Perhaps; I ..................... enough money.'
F 'I don't know. I ..................... him a sweater.'
G 'It's early; he .................... out of bed yet.'
H 'We
round to Sophie's place.

We may live without poetry, music and art;
We may live without conscience, and live wichout heart;
We may live without friends, we may live without books;
But civilised man cannot live withour cooks.
(Owen Meredith)

Science fiction is the literature of might be.

## Note the difference between may not and can't.

She may not be at home - Ill phone and find out. ( = 'Perhaps she's not at home ...')
She can't be at home: she went to Spain this morning. ( = 'She's certainly not at home ...')
We can use can't to express great surprise or disbelief.
'Karen's going to marry Bes.' It cant be true. She hates him!'

## (3) Put in may not or can't.

1 We can try that restaurant, but they $\qquad$ have a table free.
2 There are no lights in the house, and they're not answering the doorbell. They ....................... be at home.
3 He says he's got lots of money, but it ........................ be true.
4 'You've won 1 million Euros in the lottery.' 'No, it $\qquad$ be true!'
5 She says her dog talks to her, but dogs talk.
6 Ill ask that policeman, but he $\qquad$ speak English.
7 'Can you come tomorrow?' 'Ill see. I $\qquad$ have time.'
8 I $\qquad$ pass the exam, but I'm hoping for the best.
9 'They've found elephants in Antarctica.' 'That $\qquad$ be right.'
10 I'm going to see my old primary school teacher tomorrow, but she $\qquad$ remember me.'

| + | Imight go | you might go | he/she/it might go etc |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $?$ | might I go? | might you go? | might he/she/it go? etc |
| - | Imight not go | you might not go | he/she/it might not go etc |
|  | Contraction: mightn't |  |  |

We can use might in the same way as may - especially if we are not so sure about things.
'Are you ill?' 'Not sure. I might have a cold. Or perhaps not.' I might not be here tomorrow.
Might is unusual in questions.
John has no money. He is thinking about things that might happen. Put in verbs from the box with might.

| buy fall find make send win $\checkmark$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

1 . might win..................... lot of money in the lottery. Or l $1 \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . .$. some money in the street.
Or Uncle Max $2 \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . .$. me $\$ 1,000$. Or a rich woman 3. $\qquad$ in love with me.
Or the bank 4
a mistake. Or somebody $\qquad$ my old car.
(5) Might or might not? Circle the correct answers.

- Kate had a big lunch, so she might want / might not want io eat this evening.

1 It's getting late. I might finish / might not finish this work on time.
2 If the traffic gets very bad we might miss / might not miss the train.
3 If he's had a good day, your dad might give / might not give you money for the cinema.
4 Andrew's story is so good that his teacher might believe / might not believe he wrote it.
5 Helen's not feeling well today - I'm afraid she might pass / might not pass her exam.
6 Alan wasn't at the last meeting. He might know / might not know the new members.
7 'Where's Tom?' 'He might be / might not be in the kitchen.'
8 live got toothache. I might have to / might not have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
9 Ill do my best, but I might have / might not have time to help you.
10 I hope we can take the car, but it might / might not start.

## can, could and may: permission Can I use the phone?

We use can l...? or can we ...? to ask if it is OK to do things: to ask permission.Can I use the phone, please? Mum, can I leave the table now? Can we wait here?
We often use Can I have ... ? and Can we have ...? to ask for things.
Can I have your address, please? Can we have some water?
(1) Make questions with Can I ..... ?
DON'T SAY THIS!- Lend me your pen.1 I want a glass of water.2 I'm going to use your pencil.3 I want some more coffee.4 l'll put my coat here.5 Give me some bread.6 Show me those photos.
SAY THIS (to your sister, a friend, a waiter, your secretary)
SAY THIS (to your sister, a friend, a waiter, your secretary) (borrow) ..can! borrow your pen (.please)? ..... (have) ..... (use)
(have) ..... (put)
(have)
(look at)
Could ...? is more formal and polite than can ...?, so we use it, for example, with strangers, older people, teachers and bosses. Could I possibly ...? is very polite.
Could we leave our luggage here until this afternoon? Could I possibly borrow your paper for a moment?
Make polite questions with Could I...

DON'T SAY THIS!

- Lend me your pen.

1 I need to use your calculator.
2 I'm leaving early today.
3 I want to take your photo.
4 Lend me your newspaper.
5 I'm going to turn on the TV.
6 I want to open a window.

SAV THIS (to a stranger, a teacher, a boss, an older person)
(borrow) ..could ! borrow. your.pen. please?
(use)
(leave)
(take)
(borrow)
(turn on)
(open)

We use can/can't, but not could/couldn't, to say that it is or isn't OK to do things. (You can't is like you mustn't - see page 77.)
You can leave your books here if you want. (NOT You could teave your books ...)
You can't use the gym between 1.00 and 2.00.
(3) Put the beginnings and ends together. Add can and verbs from the box.

| borrow $\downarrow$ eat park play turn on watch |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

0 If you don't have a torch,
1
The children
2
Tell the boys that
3 If you're cold,
4
5 If you're bored,
5 Only teachers

(4) What do the signs tell you? Use You can't ... here with words and expressions from the box.
cycle park smoke take photos use mobile phones


- You can't park here


1


2

## We use Can I/we ...? to offer help.

Can I help you? Can we book the tickets for you? Can I carry those for you?
(5) Use Can I ...? to offer help in these situations.

- Your friend has just come home from hospital. Offer to do some shopping for her. can! do sene shopping for you?
1 You're going to make a cup of tea for yourself. Offer to make one for your sister.

2 You work in a shop. A customer walks in. Offer to help her.

3 Offer to drive your brother to the station.

4 Your friend has got a headache. Offer to get some aspirins for her.

In formal situations, and when we need to be very polite, we often use May I ...? to ask if something is OK, or You may (not) to say that something is/isn't OK.
May I have your name, please, sir? May I use the toilet please, Mrs Roberts?
You may open your books now. You may ask questions after the Prince has finished speaking.
This is a tourist visa: you may not take a paid job. You may not leave until the bell rings.
6) A teacher is telling her class what to do. Complete the text with may and verbs from the box.

|  |  | not leave |  | talk | talk |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Please work in groups. You may talk in your group, but please talk quietly. <br> You 1 $\qquad$ to another group, and you 2 $\qquad$ the room. You 3 $\qquad$ your dictionaries. If you want to use other books, you 4. $\qquad$ them from the shelf; but only one person 5 $\qquad$ the group at a time. Each group 6 $\qquad$ the computer for twenty minutes; I will tell you when it is your turn. If you finish before the time is up, you 7 $\qquad$ other work, but please work quietly. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## can/could you?: requests Can you lend me a stamp?

We can ask people to do things (make requests) with can you ...? This is informal; we often use it when we are talking to friends; and also, for example, in shops and restaurants.
Joe, can you lend me a stamp? Can you bring me some more butter?
Could you ...? is more formal and polite; we often use it, for example, when we are talking to strangers, older people, teachers or bosses. Could you possibly ...? is very polite.

Excuse me, Mr Andrews, could you lend me a stamp?
I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you possibly watch my luggage while I get a coffee?

1) Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

|  | babysit clean | drive | give $/$ | hold | lend |  | pass | put | speak | tell $\downarrow$ | tell |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Can you .. give.. | .... | a recei |  |  | 5 | Can you ................. this bag? |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Could you ..tell | ... | me your | name? |  | 6 | Could you possibly ................. tonight? |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | Could you .... | - | e the ri |  |  | 7 | Could you possibly |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | Can you ..... | ... | suit? |  |  | 8 Can you ................. these pap |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Can you ........ | ..... | the tim |  |  | 9 |  |  |  | .. more slowly? |  |  |
| 4 | Could you ... | .... | me to th | statio |  | 10 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

2 Find better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, $\mathrm{P}=$ polite, $\mathrm{PP}=$ very polite).

- Open the window. (I) ..can.you open the window?
- Lend me a pen. (P) ..could you lend me.a.pen?
- Helpme. (PP) ..could you possibly help.me?

1 Open the door. (I)
2 Give me an envelope. (P)
3 Pass me the sugar. (1)
4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)
5 Tell me the time. (P)
6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)
7 Wait outside. (1)
8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)
9 Come back tomorrow. (1)
10 Say it in English. (P)
3) Put the words of the caption in the right order.

'Miss Ellis, ?'

## shall in questions What shall we do?

We often use shall I ...? or shall we ...? when we are asking or suggesting what to do.

## Shall I put the lights on? Where shall we meet tomorrow? Shall we go and see Bill?

(1) Make sentences with shall I...?

- put / the meat / in the fridge? ..Shall! put the meat in the fridge?
- what / tell / the police? ........................................e?

1 what / buy / for Sandra's birthday?
2 when / phone you?
3 pay/now?
4 clean / the bathroom?
5 how many tickets / buy?
6 where / leave the car?
7 what time / come this evening ?
8 shut / the windows?
9 when / go shopping?
10 get / your coat?
(2) Make sentences with shall we ...?

- what time / leave? ..........time shall we leave?
- watch / a film tonight? ..Shall we watch a film tonight?

1 go out / this evening?
2 have / a game of cards?
3 how / travel to London?
4 what / do at the weekend?
5 where / go on holiday?
6 look for / a hotel ?
7 what time / meet Peter?
8 how much bread/buy?
9 have / a party ?
10 when / have the next meeting?

We can use Shall I ...? to offer politely to do things for people.
Shall I take your coat? Shall I make you some coffee?
(3) Make sentences offering to:

- carry somebody's bag
shall! carry your bag?
post somebody's letters
do somebody's shopping
make somebody's bed
read to somebody
drive somebody to the station
make somebody a cup of tea
clean somebody's car
phone somebody's secretary
cut somebody's hair
10 bring somebody an aspirin


## would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller.

ভ


## used to I used to play the piano.

| ++1 <br> 7 <br> -1 |
| :--- |


| I used to play | you used to play | he/she/it used to play etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| did I use to play? | did you use to play? | did he/she/it use to play? etc |
| Idid not use to play | you did not use to play | he/she/it did not use to play etc |

I used to play the piano. Idon't play now.

## PAST \& \& \& \& \& \& \& \& \& \& Now

We use used to + infinitive for finished habits and situations: things that were true, but are not now.
(Used to is not really a modal: we make questions and negatives with did.)
I used to play the piano, but I stopped. Pat used to have long fair hair.
Where did you use to live before you came here? I didn't use to like fish, but now I do.
1 Make sentences about people hundreds of years ago. Begin (Most) people used to
or (Most) people didn't use to ... or A lot of people used to

- be farmers ..Most people used to be farmers.
- havecars ..People didn't useto havecars
1 travel on foot or on horses
2 go to school
3 learn to read
4 cook on wood fires
5 live very long
6 work very long hours


To talk about present habits and situations, we use the simple present, NOT 甘seto.
I play a lot of tennis. (NOT+use to play alot of fennis:)
2 Make sentences about past and present habits and situations.

- John/rugby/tennis John used to play rugby. Now he plays temnis

1 Emily / study German / French
2 Paul / live London / Glasgow
3 Grace / read a lot / TV
4 Dan / driver / hairdresser
5 Alice / coffee / tea
6 Peter / lots of girlfriends / married
(3) Make questions about a very old person's past.

- where/go to school ......ere didyou use to go to school?

1 have dark hair Did
2 play football
3 where / work
4 enjoy your work
5 go to a lot of parties
(4) Write a sentence about your past.

I used to

## modal verbs: more practice

(1) Forms of modal verbs. Make questions or negatives.

- Carol can't speak German. (Spanish ?) ...can.she speak.......................
- Emma may phone you. (do it today -) ..She may not do it today

1 Albert can't ski. (swim ?)
2 Lucy must go to the police. (go immediately ?)
3 Tom may go to Washington, (but ... go this week - )

4 Olivia has to work on Wednesday evening. (Thursday evening - )

5 Paul can play rugby. (hockey ?)
6 Sarah should see the secretary. (today ? ?)
7 Jenny could read when she was five. (three - )
8 The boss would like some coffee. (now ?)
9 We may go away next weekend, (but ... might take the children - )

10 I must stay awake during the opera. (go to sleep - )

2 Past and future. Change the times of these sentences.

- Helen can ski. .Helen could slei. when she was three years old.
1 I can speak french now. .................................................. on holiday next year.
2 Everybody must fill in a big form. ................................................. last year.
3 Everybody must fill in a big form. ................................................... next year.
4 Can you play the guitar? ................................................... at the next school concert?
5 Must you wear a tie to work? .................................................. in your last job?
6 John can't read very well. ............................................................... hen he was younger.
7 We can't buy a car. ................................................ before next year.
8 I must see the doctor. .................................................. last week.
9 Everybody can say what they think. .............................................................. the year 3000.
10 You can't sing now. You ................................................... last year.
And you ............................................... next year, either.
(3) Advice with should. Put the beginnings and ends together.

1 Aunt Mary's thirsty.
2 I'm getting fat.
3 My girlfriend's angry with me.
4 The cat needs a drink.
5 My hair's falling out.
6 I'm tired.
7 I don't like Anna's new hairstyle.
8 I never have any money.
9 I don't play tennis very well.
10 The car won't go.
11 My clothes are all out of fashion.
12 My English teacher says I make too many mistakes.

A You should give her a saucer of milk.
B You should buy some new clothes.
C You should buy a new one.
D You should make her a cup of tea.
E You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets
F You should take more exercise.
G You should practise your service.
H You should study grammar.
I You shouldn't go to bed so late.
J You shouldn't tell her.
K You should change your shampoo.
L You should tell her you love her.
(4) Permission and requests. Make these sentences more polite. (Different answers are possible.)

- Give me some water. ........could/may.! have some water?

1 I want a cup of coffee.
2 Canl take a photograph of you?
3 Close the door, John.
4 I need you to help me.
5 Give me that newspaper.
6 Will you clean my bicycle, please?
7 Can I borrow some money from you?
8 Let me use your phone.
9 Hold this.
10 Wash all my clothes before tomorrow.

## GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: eight useful things. Complete the sentences with you can and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

cook food keep food cool keep food very cold make copies make phone calls take photos wash clothes wash plates, cups etc


a cooker a scanner

a freezer
a washing machine


## GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jobs. Complete the sentences with might be and words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

| a businessman <br> an opera singer | a chef <br> a pilot | a farmer $\quad$ a politician | a gardener | a lawyer |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

Little Henry likes animals. When he grows up ..................... farneer or a vet
1 Little Angela loves aeroplanes. She might
2 Little George is interested in money.
3 Little Amrita likes singing and she has a very loud voice.
4 Little Peter likes talking.
5 Little Alice likes arguing.
6 Little John likes cooking.
7 Little Ruby likes flowers.

```
Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find three short simple sentences with
"will be able to" and three with "will have to".
1 ....................................................... }
2 ...................................................... }
3 ......................................................... }
```

(1) Correct ( $\mathcal{(})$ or not $(x)$ ?

- John cans swim. . $x$...
- I must go now.

1 I don't must see Andrew today.
2 Anna can't to speak English.
3 Last year I must sell my car.
4 Would you like to have some coffee?

5 It may rain tomorrow.
6 Can you singing?
7 Must you go?
8 I may not be here this evening
9 Do you use to smoke?
10 Alex musts work harder. ......

## (2) Circle the correct verbs.

- Can/ Might / Mustn't I help you?

1 If you travel to Morania you can / should / must have a visa.
2 You shouldn't / don't have to / couldn't laugh at old people.
3 Passengers must / must not / should not smoke in the toilets.
4 I think you should / must / may eat less and take more exercise.
5 You mustn't / may not / don't have to tell me if you don't want to.
6 You may / have to drive on the left in Britain.
7 We don't have to / mustn't pay now, but we can if we want to.
8 I may not / could not be here this evening.
9 She isn't answering the phone. She shouldn't /can't be at home just now.
10 People should / have to smile more often.
(3) Choose the correct verbs to rewrite the sentences with the same meaning.

- I know how to swim. (can/may)
!.can swim.
1 It is necessary for you to phone Martin. (must/might)
2 It is possible that Ann will be here this evening. (can/might)
3 It is not necessary for you to wait. (mustn't/don't have to)
4 It's not good for people to watch TV all the time. (mustn't/shouldn't)

5 Do you want me to open a window? (shall/will)
6 It is important for people to cooperate. (may/should)
7 John smoked when he was younger. (used to/would)
8 It is possible that it will rain. (can/may)
9 Alan knows how to speak Spanish. (can/could)
10 I would like you to help me. (Can/Should)
(4.) Grammar in a text. Choose the best modal verbs to complete the quotations.

1 Those who can / can't / shall, do. Those who can / can't / shall, teach. (Traditional)
2 We may / can / must love one another or die. (W H Auden)
3 It is not enough to succeed. Others can / may / must fail. (Gore Vidal)
4 You shall / could / may fool all the people some of the time; you must / can / shall even fool some of the people all the time; but you can't / couldn't / wouldn't fool all of the people all the time. (Abraham Lincoln)

## grammar summary

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

- We use active verbs if we want $A$ to be the subject.

Mrs Harris cooks our meals. Andrew broke the window.

- We use passive verbs if we want $B$ to be the subject.

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. The window was broken by Andrew.
We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, broken etc).
Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs.
For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.
'I'm afraid, Mr Klesmerod, that your blood type has been discontinued.'


## Do you know? (Answers at the bottom of the page)

1 Which of these is used to boil water?
A a fridge
B a sink
C a kettle
D a hot water bottle

2 Which US President was killed in a theatre?
A Lincoln
B Kennedy
C Eisenhower
D Nixon

3 Which game is played with a racket?
A golf
B cricket
C football
D tennis

4 If you are being served, where are you?
A in a shop
B in a church
$C$ in the sea
D in hospital

5 The Olympic Games have never been held in:
A Melbourne
B Tokyo
C London
D Chicago

6 Which of these metals was discovered by Marie Curie?
A uranium
B radium
C gold
D platinum

7 Which of these was not written by Shakespeare?
A Hamlet
$B$ The Sound of Music
C Othello
D Julius Caesar

8 Which country was governed by the Pharaohs?
A Sweden
B China
C Egypt
D Japan

## passives: introduction English is spoken in Australia.

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.
We use active verbs if we want $A$ to be the subject.
We use passive verbs if we want $B$ to be the subject.
We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, seen etc).

| active |  |  |  | PASSIVE |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A |  | B |  | B |  | (by A) |  |
| Mrs Harris | cooks | our meals. |  | Our meals | are cooked | by Mrs Harris. |  |
| Andrew | broke | the window. |  | The window | was broken | by Andrew. |  |
| Somebody | saw | her | in Belfast. | She | was seen |  | in Belfast. |
| The government | will close | the hospital | next year. | The hospital | will be closed |  | next year. |

Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs.
For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.
Note the use of by in passives, to say who or what does the action.
Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. (NOT ...ffom Mhrs-Haffis:)
1 Which picture goes with which sentence?

- The policeman helped the old lady. .....

1 The policeman was helped by the old lady. ......
2 The car hit a tree. ......
3 The car was hit by a tree. ......

4 Annie loves all dogs. ......
5 Annie is loved by all dogs.
6 The Queen photographed the tourists.
7 The Queen was photographed by the tourists.
A


G

H


## 2 Circle the correct answer.

1 English speaks / spoken / is spoken in Australia.
2 I studied / was studied French for three years at school.
3 We spent / was spent too much money on holiday.
4 This window broke / was broken by your little boy.
5 Her clothes made / are made in Paris.
6 This book written / was written by my brother.
7 The new university will open / will opened / will be opened by the Prime Minister.
8 Ann was driving / was driven much too fast, and she stopped / was stopped by the police.
9 This house built / was built in 1800.
10 Everybody had / was had / was have a good time at the party.

| + $?$ + | I am woken am I woken? I am not woken | you are woken are you woken? you are not woken | he/she/it is woken etc is he/she/it woken? etc he/she/it is not woken etc |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | For contractions (l'm, isn't etc), see pages 2, 301. |  |  |

We use the simple present passive like the simple present active, for things that are always true, and things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc (see page 17).I am paid every two weeks. Is Jeremy liked by the other children? Stamps aren't sold here.$\rightarrow$ For spelling rules for adding -ed to verbs, see page 46; for irregular past participles, see page 299.
1 Complete the sentences with am/are/is.
A lot of paper is. made from wood.
1 What this called in English?
2 Jane paid on the first of every month.
3 I often sent to the Singapore office.
4 any classes taught on Wednesdays?
5 More chocolate

$\qquad$
eaten in the US than in any other country.
6 Not very much known about Shakespeare's childhood.
7 We

$\qquad$
woken by the birds every morning.
8 you seen by the same doctor every week?
2 Put simple present passive verbs into these sentences.

- A lot of olive oil ...5.used in Greek cooking. (use)
1 Arabic from right to left. (write)
2 Those programmes by millions of people every week. (watch)
3 Stamps in most newsagents in Britain. (sell)
4 The police say that nothing about the child's family. (know)
5 In English, 'ough' in a lot of different ways. (pronounce)
6 Spanish in Peru. (speak)
7 Cricket by two teams of eleven players. (play)
8 Our windows once a month. (clean)
3 Make simple present negatives and questions.
- 'Those computers ..are.................. in America.'(not make)
Where ..are they made? ' 'In China.'
1 'My name ..... with a Y!' (not spell)
'How 'L, E, S, L, I, E.'
2 'That kind of bird
' 'In warmer countries.'
3 'Where like were.' (not pronounce)
'How ' 'Like wear.'
4 'Diamonds in Scotland.' (not find)
5 'My sister
' 'I don't remember.'


## future passive Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.

| + | I will be woken you will be woken | he/she/it will be woken etc |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ? | will l be woken? | will you be woken? | will he/she/it be woken? etc |
| - | I will not be woken | you will not be woken | he/she/it will not be woken etc |

We use the future passive like the future active (see page 39), to say things that we think, guess or know about the future, or to ask questions about the future.

## One day all the work will be done by machines. Where will the match be played?

Make future passive sentences with the verbs from the box.

|  | clean | close | finish | open | send | speak |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | The motorway ..will be closed |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | The | um |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | One d | English |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | This job |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | Your r |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Your | ets |  |  |  |  |  |

2) Make future passive negatives and questions.

- 'The football match ..won't. be.played.................................... on Saturday.' (play)
'When ..will it be played?................................' 'On Sunday.'
1 'The visitors ....................................................... to the hotel by bus.' (take)
'How .............................................................. there?' 'By taxi.'
2 'The new library ........................................................... in the Central Square.' (build)
'Where .......................................................' 'Behind the Police Station.'
3 'English ......................................................... at the conference.' (speak)
'What language
'Chinese.'

3) Make five future passive sentences from the table.


Tomorrow. your bicycle will be stolen by your old friend Peter.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$


## simple past passive I was stopped by a policeman.

| - | I was woken you were woken $\quad$ he/she/it was woken etc |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ? | was I woken? | were you woken? | was he/she/it woken? etc |
| - | I was not woken | you were not woken | he/she/it was not woken etc |

We use the simple past passive like the simple past active, for complete finished actions and events (see page 47).
This table was made by my grandfather. Was the letter signed? We weren't met at the door.

1) Complete the sentences with was/were.

1 The fire................... seen in Renton, a kilometre away.
2 Most of the matches.....................won by Indian teams.
3 These keys....................found in the changing room yesterday - are they yours?
4 We couldn't find the station, but we..................... helped by a very kind woman.
5 l...................stopped by a policeman in Green Road this morning.
6 Yesterday a man. $\qquad$ caught trying to burn down the Town Hall.
2) Put simple past passive verbs into these sentences.
1 Our passports by a tall woman in a uniform. (take)
2 These books ...................................... in the classroom on Monday. (leave)
3 I don't think this room yesterday. (clean)

5 Nobody ........................................ what was happening. (tell)
$6 \mathrm{He} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .$. away to school when he was twelve. (send)
(3) Make simple past passive negatives and questions.

- 'We ..weren't.paid. when we finished the work.' (not pay)
'When ..were. you paid? ' 'Two months later.'
1 'My father in England.' (not educate)
'Where
' 'In Germany.'
2 'The letters ........................................................... on Tuesday.' (not post) 'When ..............................................................' 'On Thursday.'
3 'This .............................................................. in butter.' (not cook)
'How ...............................................................' 'In margarine.'
4 'My suit
in England.' (not make)
'Where ............................................................' 'In Hong Kong.'
5 'The restaurant bill .......................................................................... cash.' (not pay)

We use a past passive structure - to be born - to give somebody's date or place of birth.
I was born in 1964. (NOT He日rnin 1964. NOT tamberfin.1964:) My sisters were born in Egypt.
(4) Write a sentence about your date and place of birth.

1. $\qquad$

## present progressive passive It's being cleaned.

\(\left.\begin{array}{|l|lll|}\hline \mathbf{+} \& lam being watched you are being watched \& he/she/it is being watched etc <br>

\boldsymbol{?} \& am I being watched? \& are you being watched? \& is he/she/it being watched? etc\end{array}\right]\)| $\mathbf{-}$ | lam not being watched you are not being watched | he/she/it is not being watched etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2 and 301. |  |

We use the present progressive passive like the present progressive active, for things that are happening now (see page 24), or for things that are planned for the future (see page 38).
'Where's the carpet?' It's being cleaned.' When are you being seen by the doctor?
1 Questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete answers to the questions. Use the present progressive passive.


2 Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done.

1 (bills / pay)
2 (coffee / make)
3 (drinks / serve)
4 (food / prepare)
5 (baggage / bring down)
6 (money / change)
7 (new guests / welcome)
8 (reservations / take)
9 (phones / answer)
0 (rooms / clean)


| + | I have been seen | you have been seen | he/she/it has been seen etc |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| ? | have l been seen? | have you been seen? | has he/she/it been seen? etc |
| - | I have not been seen | you have not been seen | he/she/it has not been seen etc |
|  | For contractions (I've etc), see page 301. |  |  |



2 'It's never been done.' Make a sentence for each picture.


- It's never been cut


2


4


1


3


5

## passives: more practice

1) Tenses. Put in simple present, simple past or future passive verbs.

- 'Frankenstein'
was written
by Mary Shelley. (write)
- The repairs ..will be................... before next Tuesday. (finish)
1 Butter from milk. (make)
2 Last night two men in a fight in a nightclub. (kill)
3 One day all our work by machines. (do)
4 English as a second language by millions of people. (speak)
5 This computer in Japan. (make)
6 All the footballers ...................................... by a doctor before the match last Sunday. (examine)
7 This room every day. (clean)
8 You of the test results as soon as possible. (inform)
9 The new road in July next year. (open)
10 Diamonds in several countries in Africa. (find)

2 Present progressive passive. Imagine that you are in a busy hotel at one o'clock.
All the hotel staff are on strike (they have stopped work) because they want more money. Write sentences about six things that are not being done. Some useful words:

| baggage <br> new guests | bills coffee <br> reservations | drinks <br> rooms | food money <br> telephones |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |

Beds are not being made
Bedsarennt.being.made.........................................................................................................................
$\qquad$
3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: travelling by air. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then imagine you are in an airport, and write six or more sentences about what is being done.

(4) Tenses. Put in present perfect passive or present progressive passive verbs.

- 'Is the Army Museum still in Green Street?' 'No, it ...has................................. (follow)
1 Don't look now, but I think we

2 Hello, police? I'd like to report a theft. My handbag ................................................ (steal)
3 'Why did you take the bus?' 'My car ...................................................' (repair)
4 I think someone's been in my room - some books
(move)
5 'There's nobody here.' 'No, all the students ..................................................... home.' (send)
6 'When
you ...'
'Tomorrow morning.' (interview)
7 A group of suspected terrorists
by the police. (arrest)
8 Another group of suspected terrorists
but they (not arrest, watch)
9 The hospital will be closed for two years, while it (rebuild)
10 James to join the local football team. (ask)
(5) Grammar in a text. Put in simple present active or passive verbs.


Gorillas ( $\triangleright$ find) ...................................... in several countries in Central Africa. They are about 1.6 metres tall, and they (i cover) .................................. with black or brown hair. Gorillas'lives (2 spend) ........................................ in groups. Each group has five to ten gorillas in it. The gorillas in a group ( 3 walk) ....................................... about 0.5 to 1.0 km per day, looking for food. They ( 4 not eat) .................................... all the leaves in one part of the forest before moving on; some leaves (s leave) on the trees arid plants.
At night gorillas ( 6 sleep) in nests; these nests
(7 make) of branches and leaves. The number of gorillas living in Africa today ( 8 not know) ........................................ but it is certain that this number is getting smaller. Why? Because in the countries where the gorillas (9 live). more and more trees ( 10 cut down) every year.
6. Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find short simple sentences with the following verbs. Write the sentences.
"are made"
"is spoken"
"will be spent"
"are being built"
"have been seen"
"were given"
"were sent"
"was arrested"

## passives: revision test

(1) Circle the correct passive or active verb form.

- This book written 2 was written by my uncle.

1 Derek posted / was posted his letter to the university today.
2 We did a lot of work for the school, but we didn't pay / weren't paid.
3 My friend Douglas speaks / is spoken seven languages.
4 The letter H doesn't pronounce / isn't pronounced in French.
5 A new hospital will build / will be built in the town centre.
6 You can't come in here - the room is cleaning / is being cleaned.
7 We have invited / have been invited to John's party tonight.
8 This sauce makes/is made with oil and vinegar.
9 French speaks / is spoken in Belgium.
10 John broke / is broken his leg last week.
(2) Correct $(\alpha)$ or not $(x)$ ?

| English is spoken in New Zealand. ..... | 5 Our car has been stolen. ....... |
| :--- | ---: |
| I am born in Manchester. ..... | 6 When is that window broken? ...... |
| I was studied German for three years. ...... | 7 This book was written from my father. ...... |
| Emma invited to a party by her boss. ...... | 8 I was taken to the opera by a friend of mine. |
| How is written your name? ...... | 9 The new road will finished in July. ....... |
| 'Where's your coat?' 'It's being cleaned.' ...... | 10 Our house was built in $1850 . . . . . .$. |

(3) Put in the correct passive tenses.
'The Birds' ...................................... by Alfred Hitchcock. (direct)

- You ..will.be.paid next week. (pay)
'Is the library still downstairs?' 'No, it ........................................'( move)
A new hospital ...................................... here next April. (open)
Somebody has been in my handbag. Some money ....................................... (take)
'Where's your black sweater?' 'It ........................................'. (wash)
You .................................... your examination results before the weekend. (tell)
'My car .........................................' 'Well, tell the police.' (steal)
This phone ....................................... in China. (make)
Spanish ........................................ in most of South America. (speak)
The windows
nearly every week. (clean)
101
I .................................... to help you. What can I do? (ask)
11 There was a fight at the football match on Saturday, and one man
(kill)
12 Do you think all translation ....................................... by computers one day? (do)
13 '
14 Three computers
the match
?' 'Tomorrow.' (play)
from the school since Christmas. (steal)
15 The factory closed suddenly last week, and all the workers ..................................... away. (send)
16 This kind of cheese from goats' milk. (make)
17 Alice .................................. by a car the other day, and her leg .................................... (hit; break)
18 Your letter ...................................... now - it will be ready in five minutes. (translate)
19 It says in today's paper that gold
in Scotland. (find)
20 'Have you done those letters?' 'Not yet. They
by five o'clock.' (finish)


## SECTION 8 questions and negatives

## grammar summary

To make questions, we normally put an auxiliary verb (be, have, can etc) before the subject. John has gone. $\rightarrow$ Has John gone? She's leaving. $\rightarrow$ When is she leaving?
To make negatives, we put not or n't after an auxiliary verb.
John is working. $\rightarrow$ John is not working. $\quad$ l could swim $\rightarrow$ I couldn't swim.
If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do.
$\quad$ I live in Manchester. $\rightarrow$ Where do you live? He said 'Hello.' $\rightarrow$ What did he say? She likes cold weather. $\rightarrow$ She doesn't like cold weather.
We do not use do when a question word is the subject.
What happened? (NOT What did happen?)

## Who are you?

Who were you talking to when I came in just now and you put down the phone? Who were you thinking about when I asked you and asked you again and you answosed Why, no one'? Who were you with lest night when you came home late and said you'd been walking alone?

What was I hoping for that first day when I knocked on your door? What was I thinking about when I first asked you out? Who was I looking at when I first sat looking at you?

Who are you?

I didn't do the housework
I didn't feed the goldfish, I didn't make the bed, I didn't study algebra. I watched a film instead.

I didn't practise on the flute, I didn't write to Jean, I didn't visit Aunty May. I read a magazine.

I didn't do the housework. I started. Then I quit, and wrote a poem just to say I love you. This is it.

# yes/no questions Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa? 

## AM I? HAVEYOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

## All yes/no questions begin with a verb.

To make questions: put an auxillary verb before the subject.
(Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)
STATEMENT +: The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay.
QUESTION ?: Is the taxi coming? Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late? Can you pay?
(1) Put the words in the right order to make questions.

- you ready are ..Are.you ready?
- telephoned she has Mary ..tas.she telephoned Mary?
- swim your brother can ..can your brother.swim?

1 tired are you
2 he at is home
3 go must now you
4 Spanish they speak can
5 tomorrow Derek be here will
6 Aunt Ruth will arrive by train
7 forgotten her keys she has
8 your sister is playing tennis
9 coffee some like you would
10 your home secretary gone has

```
If there is no auxiliary verb: put do/does/did before the subject and use the infinitive (without to).
STATEMENT + : I need a visa.
QUESTION ?: Do I need a visa? (NOT Aledta-visa?, NOT Bolfoneed avisa?)
STATEMENT +: John wants to go home.
QUESTION ??: Does John want to go home? (NOT Does Johan wants to go home?)
STATEMENT +: She knew Naomi.
QUESTION ??: Did she know Naomi? (NOT Did shekfew Naomi?)
```

2 Make questions with you.
You want to know if somebody:

- understands ..Do you understand?
- calledyou ..Did. you call me?

1 drinks coffee at bedtime
2 likes classical music
3 knows your friend Andrew
4 went skiing last winter
5 works in London
6 lives in a flat or a house
7 watches a lot of TV
8 remembered to buy bread
9 saw Barbara last weekend
10 plays tennis
(3) Make questions with she.

You want to know if somebody:

- plays football ..Does.she.play football?

1 speaks Arabic
2 knows Mr Peters
3 works at home
4 lived in Birmingham
5 went home last week
6 plays the piano
7 rides horses
8 likes working with children
9 travelled a lot last year
10 drives to work

## We don't put do with other auxiliary verbs.

## Can you swim? (NOT Өoyou canswiff?)

4 Choose the correct question.

- Will you be ready soon? B Do you will be ready soon?
- $\bar{A}$ Live you in London? Bo you live in London? C Are you live in London?

1 A Do you are tired? B Do you tired? C Are you tired?
2 A Do you must go now? B Must you go now?
3 A Do you speak Japanese? B Speak you Japanese? C Are you speak Japanese?
4 A Do you have been to New York? B Have you been to New York?
5 A Were you go to work by car? B Did you go to work by car? C Went you to work by car?
6 A Can she sing? B Does she can sing?
7 A is Judy looking for a job? B Does Judy looking for a job? C Is Judy look for a job?
8 A You said something? B Did you said something? C Did you say something?

```
Only put one verb befOre the subject.
Is her father working today? (NOT ts working her father today?)
Has your brother got children? (NOT Has got your brother ehildrea?)
Did those people telephone again? (NOT Did telephene those people again?)
```

(5) Put the verbs in the right place to make questions.

- Are / your parents / to dinner (coming) .....e. your.parents coming to dinner?

1 Did / the police / the drug dealers (catch)
2 Have / Lucy and Felicia / from their holiday (come back)
3 When do / English children / school (start)
4 What is / that man / in the garden (doing)
5 Are / the buses / next week (running)
6 Has / the film (started)
7 Has / John's letter / yet (arrived)
8 Is /Alicia / today (working)
9 Does / Paul / your girlfriend (know)
0 Why is / Kate (cry)

[^7]
## WHERE IS ...? WHEN CAN ...? WHY DOES ...?

Questions with where, when, why etc normally have the same word order as yes/no questions (pages 104-105). We put am/are/is/wos/were or another auxiliary verb (have, will, can etc) before the subject.

```
STATEMENT +: Anno is in Russia. I will see her on Tuesday.
QUESTION ?: Where is Anna?? When will you see her? (NOT When you witf seeher?)
If there is no other auxlliary verb, we use do/does/did + infinitive (without to).
STATEMENT +: He likeshis job. I came here to learn English.
QUESTION ?: How does he like his job? Why did you come here? (NOT Why you-came.here?)
```

(1) Make questions with the words in the boxes.


We often ask questions with how + adjective/adverb.
How old is your sister? How tall are you? How fast can you run?
Here are some common expressions with how. Use them to complete the questions.

```
How old ...? How far ...? How long ...? How tall ...?
How big ...? How fast ...? How often ...? How well ...?
| .How old are .......................... you?' '37 next birthday.'
1 '......................................... your house from here?' 'About 5 km.
2 '............................................. John?` `Very tall - nearly two metres.'
3
4
5 '...................................... Petra's flat?' 'Very small - just one room and a bathroom.
6 :........................................ you stay in China?` 'I was there for six months.'
7
you speak Spanish?' 'Not very well.'
```


## Some questions begin with what + noun.

What time is the film? What time does the train leave? (NOT USUALLY At whet-siffe....?)
What colour are her eyes? (NOT What eølouf have ...?) What colour is your car?
What size are you? (buying clothes)
What size would you like?
What sort of books do you read? What sort of films do you like? (OR What kind of ... ?)
3 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in an expression with What

```
........time..... does her plane arrive?'
is the baby's hair?'
music do you play?'
    'I'd like a packet of rice, please.'
    'Can I borrow one of your sweaters?'
    '................ holidays do you prefer?'
        did you get home?'
    'I need a sweater.'
                                are you?'
```

A 'Eight o'clock, if it's not late.' .....
'................. , small or large?'
C 'She hasn't got any.' ......
D 'Pop, mostly.'
E 'I don't remember - it was very late.' $\qquad$
F 'Sure. ................. would you like? Blue? Green?'
G 'Extra large.' ......
H 'We usually go to the mountains.' ......

To ask for descriptions, we often use What is/are/was/were ... like?
'Wherehave you been?' In Ireland.' What was the weather like?' 'OK.'
What's your new boyfriend like?' 'He's very nice.'
'My brother writes detective stories.' 'Yes? What are they like?' 'Not very good, really.'
4. Make questions with What ... like?, using expressions from the box.

```
your new girlfriend your new house your new car your new job
your new boss }\downarrow\mathrm{ your new school your new neighbours
```

1
2
3
6

```
```

- ........'s your new boss like?

```
- ........'s your new boss like?
4 ............................................................. 'Great - we've got much more room.'
4 ............................................................. 'Great - we've got much more room.'
5 ................................................................. 'It's interesting. I travel a lot.'
```

5 ................................................................. 'It's interesting. I travel a lot.'

```

\section*{GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: sOme more useful questions}

Where are you from? Where do you come from? (NOT From where...? - see page 111)
How long have you been here? How long are you here for? (='Until when ...?')
How long does it take to get to London? How long does it take to learn English?
How do you spell that word? How do you pronounce this word?
\(\rightarrow\) For questions with who, what and which, see page 108.

I keep six honest serving-men
(They taught me all I knew):
Their names are What and Why and When And How and Where and Who.
(Rudyard Kipling)

\section*{question-word subjects Who phoned?}

When who and what are subjects, we make questions without do/does/did. Compare:
'Who \({ }^{\text {SUB }}\) phoned?' 'Mike \({ }^{\text {SUBs }}\) phoned.' (NOT 'Whe did phene?.)
'Who \({ }^{083}\) did you see?' I saw Mike \({ }^{083}\).'
'What \({ }^{\text {sUBs }}\) happened?' 'Something \({ }^{\text {SUBs }}\) terrible happened.' (NOT 'What did happen?')
'What \({ }^{083}\) did he say?' 'He said something \({ }^{08 /}\) terrible.'
The same thing happens when subjects begin with which, what, or how much/many. Which team won? (NOT Whichream did win?) What country won the World Cup in 1966?
How many people work here? (COMPARE How many people \({ }^{081}\) did you \({ }^{\text {SUB/ }}\) see?)
(1) Circle the correct form.
- Who lives) does live in that house?
- What(happened'l did happen to Joe?

1 Who plays / does play the piano?
2 What made / did make that noise?

3 Who married she? / did she marry?
4 What means this word? / does this word mean?
5 What said you? / did you say?
6 Who told / did tell you?

2 Make present (PR) or past (PA) questions.
- car / belong / to Mary (which - PR) .....nich car............................?
- you / buy / glasses (how many - PA) ..ttow many glasses did you buy?

1 people / come / to her party (how many - PA)
2 Peter / catch / train (which - PA)
3 bus / go / to the station (which - PR)
4 Douglas / speak / languages (how many - PR)
5 Alice / like / music (what sort - PR)
6 music / keep / the baby quiet (what sort - PR)
3 Look at the picture and complete the sentences.
Wholoves Fred? ..Alice and Mary
Who does Fred love?
2
Ann?
3
4

5

6
7
ove? Joe.
Alice?
love? Mary.
love? Ann.
Nobody.

4. Can you write four more questions and answers about the picture?
(5) Make questions. Ask about the words in italics.
- (a) John broke the window. (b) John broke the window.

1 (a) Melissa bought a coat. (b) Melissa bought a coat.

2 (a) The bus hit that tree. (b) The bus hit that tree.

3 (a) Rose lost the office keys. (b) Rose lost the office keys.

4 (a) Paul teaches Arabic. (b) Paul teaches Arabic.

5 (a) Mike hates computers. (b) Mike hates computers.

6 Write questions about the pictures, using the words in the box. Do you know the answers? (They are at the bottom of the page.)

(7) Write questions about books, plays or songs. Ask some people.

Who wrote \(\qquad\)
\(\qquad\)

For the difference between which and what, see page 322. For whom, see page 322.

Be careful when questions have long subjects. The word order does not change.

- The boss's secretary travels a lot. .Do.es the boss's seccretary travel a lot?
1 Your sister Caroline is talking to the police.

2 All the people here understand Spanish.

3 Most of the football team played well.

4 The man at the table in the corner is asleep.

\section*{(2) Make questions with question words.}
- The President and her husband live in Madrid.

Where do the President and her husband live?
1 A ticket for Saturday's concert costs \(€ 15\). How much
2 The film about skiing in New Zealand starts at 8.00. What time
3 The second word in the first sentence means 'kind'. What
4 The man in the flat downstairs wants to change his job. Why
(3) Put the words in the correct order.

1 laughing / why / all those people / are / ?

2 is / eating / that big black dog / what / ?

3 going / everybody in your family / to Scotland / for Christmas / is / ?

4 what game / those children / playing / are / ?

5 Lola and her friends / studying / are / where / ?

6 those people over there / French / are / speaking / ?

\section*{prepositions in questions Who did you go with?}

\begin{abstract}
We often put a preposition (with, at, for etc) at the end of a question with Who ...? or What ...?, especially in spoken English.
\end{abstract}

Who did you go with? (More natural than With whom did you go?) What are you looking at? What's she talking about?
We also ask questions with Where ... from? and Where ... to?
'Where do you come from?' (OR 'Where are you from?') 'Malaysia.' Where shall I send the letter to?

\section*{1}

1 Put in prepositions from the box.


2 Write questions beginning Who/What and ending with prepositions.
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline - & Who did you buy. your car from? & 'I bought my car from Henry.' \\
\hline 1 & & 'I'm thinking about life.' \\
\hline 2 & & 'Alice works for my aunt.' \\
\hline 3 & & 'We were talking about you.' \\
\hline 4 & & 'I'm interested in most things.' \\
\hline 5 & & 'We're looking at that aeroplane.' \\
\hline 6 & & 'I stayed with Eric.' \\
\hline 7 & & 'I work with Sylvia.' \\
\hline 8 & & 'I spent the money on travel.' \\
\hline 9 & & 'The-film was about Russia.' \\
\hline 10 & & 'You can get tickets from my office.' \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

In conversation, we often ask short questions with Who/What/Where + preposition.
```

I'm going camping.' 'Who with?' 'William wants to talk to you.' 'What about?'

```
(3) Complete the questions with one word.
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline 'I'm thinking.' '.............. about?' & 7 & 'I'm writing postcards.' 'Who ............... ?' \\
\hline 2 'I've got a letter.' ............... from?' & 8 & I've bought a present.' 'Who ...............?' \\
\hline 3 'She hit him.' '.............. with?' & 9 & 'Jane has arrived.' '.............. from?' \\
\hline 4 'She's getting married.' '.............. to?' & 10 & 'I've got a question.' ............... about?' \\
\hline 5 'I'm going to America.' '.............. with?' & 11 & 'Send this box.' 'Where ...............?' \\
\hline 6 'Jamie's writing a book.' '.............. about?' & 12 & 'I'm making a cake.' 'Who ...............?' \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\section*{negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know why.}

\section*{AM NOT HAVENOT WILL NOT CANNOT DONOT}

To make negative sentences: put not after an auxiliary verb. (Auxiliary verbs are: be (am etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might, must.)
It is not raining. I have not seen Bill. She cannot understand me.
In conversation we usually use contractions (see page 301):
aren't isn't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't hadn't won't (= 'will not') wouldn't
can't couldn't shan't shouldn't mightn't mustn't
We say I'm not, NOT tamfit. We can also say you're not (= 'you aren't'), he's not, she's not etc.
It isn't / It's not raining. We weren't at home. I haven't seen Ben.
She can't understand me. You mustn't tell anybody. I'm not ready.
(1) Make negative sentences. Use contractions.
- Dogs can swim. (fly) ......g....an't...........

1 Milk is white. (red)
2 The children are at school. (at home)
3 Max has been to Japan. (Egypt)
4 You must give this letter to Erica. (her mother)
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (in the office)
6 I could talk when I was two years old. (swim)
7 We were in London yesterday. (Birmingham)
8 I'm Scottish. (English)
2) Write five things that you can't do. Here are some suggestions.
\begin{tabular}{l} 
dance draw drive play chess/bridge etc play the piano/guitar etc \\
remember faces remember names ride a horse sing \\
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

'There are three things that I can't remember: names, faces, and l've forgotten the other.'
(3) Write five things that you probably won't do next week. Here are some suggestions.
```

go to New York get married get rich play football become President
write a poem buy a car make a cake read Shakespeare climb Mount Everest

```
- !.probably won't go to paris next week.

1
2
3
4
5

If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + not \(n^{\prime} t+\) infinitive (without to).

> Ilike \(\rightarrow\) I don't like She knows \(\rightarrow\) She doesn't know (NOT She doesn't knows) He arrived \(\rightarrow\) He did not arrive (NOT He didnot affiveet) It rained \(\rightarrow\) It didn't rain

Make negative sentences.
- Cats eat meat. (potatoes) ..cats don't eat potatoes
- Cervantes wrote 'Don Quixote' (Mozart) .Mozart didn't write 'Don Quixote'

1 Shakespeare lived in London. (New York)
2 Dictionaries tell you about words. (phone books)
3 The earth goes round the sun. (round the moon)
4 Most Algerians speak Arabic. (Russian)
5 Fridges keep food cold. (cookers)
6 The Second World War ended in 1945. (1955)
7 John knows my parents. (my sister)
(5) Use expressions from the two boxes, and write eight things that you don't do.
buy socks dance go to sleep play football play the violin ride abicycle speak English
sing study mathematics write poetry
after breakfast at Christmas at school in London in the bath in the middle of the night
in the middle of the road in the sea on the bus on the telephone on Tuesdays
- I don't buy books in London

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
.
\(\qquad\)
\(\qquad\)
\(\qquad\)
\(\qquad\)
\(\qquad\)

6 Complete these negative sentences. Use aren't, haven't, doesn't etc.
1 'What's the time?' 'I know.'

2 'What was the film like? 'It . very good.'
3 'Would Stella like some coffee?' 'No, she \(\qquad\) drink coffee.'
4 I ............... seen William for weeks. Is he OK?
5 Pat and Jim ............... very happy with their new car.
6 'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'I be here. How about Tuesday?'
7 'Was the lesson any good?' 'I ................ understand a word.'
8 She .............. buy the coat; it was too expensive.
9 The baby ............... got much hair.
10 'Can we go?' 'In a minute. 1 ready.'
\(\rightarrow\) For more practice with present negatives, past negatives etc, see Sections 2-5.

NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115).
Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn'. onderstand me:) She never phones me. (NOT She doesfit Aever phoneme.)

\section*{not and no}
```

We use not to make a word, expression or clause negative.
Not surprisingly, we missed the train. (NOT Avesurprisingly....)
The students went on strike, but not the teachers. (NOT ... fo-the teachers:)
I can see you tomorrow, but not on Thursday.
I have not received his answer.
We use no with a noun or -ing form to mean 'not any' or 'not a/an' (see page 115).
No teachers went on strike. (= There weren't any teachers on strike.)
I've got no Thursdays free this term. (= ... not any Thursdays ... )
I telephoned, but there was no answer. (= ... not an answer.)
NO SMOKING
(1) Put in not or no.
1 I work hard, but
at weekends.
2 She was ............. able to understand him.
3 They had .............. butter left in the shop.
4 They repaired my watch, but

```
\(\qquad\)
```

        properly.
    5 We've got
    ```
\(\qquad\)
```

                time to talk now.
    6 \text { I can come round, but}
    ```
\(\qquad\)
``` tonight.
7 They did
``` \(\qquad\)
```

                        want to help.
            8 'Do you smoke?' '.
    ```
\(\qquad\)
``` usually.
9 She's a woman with
``` \(\qquad\)
``` sense of humour.
```

10 'Shall I put some music on?' 'OK, but

$\qquad$
too loud.'

## 2. Change not any/a to no.

- I haven't got any money. ..!'ve.got no..................

1 There aren't any newspapers.
2 There isn't any time.
3 There weren't any letters.
4 I didn't see a light.
5 He didn't give an answer.

We don't usually put not with the subject. Instead, we use a structure with it.
It wasn't Bill who phoned, it was Pete. (NOT Not Bill phoned ... )
NO-MAN'S LAND


# negatives with nobody, never etc Nobody loves me. 

We can make negative sentences with nobody, nothing, nowhere, never, no, hardly ( $=$ 'almost not') and similar words. With these words, we do not use not or do/does/did.

Nobody loves me. (NOT Nebody Geesf't tove.me:)
He said nothing. (NOT Hedidfit seynothing:)
She never writes to me. (NOT Shedoesffit never write toffe.)
I've got no money. (NOT thaven't get no-ffoney:)
I can hardly understand him. (NOT tearit harelhy understand hima:)
1
Put the words in order to make sentences.

- up father early my gets never ..My.fathernever gets up earty.

1 lives house nobody that in
2 my understand I'll dog never
3 children me the nothing told
4 money Ino have
5 the could road I see hardly
(2) Change the sentences.

- She didn't say anything. (nothing) ........said nothing.

1 I didn't see anybody. (nobody)
2 We didn't have any trouble. (no)
3 My parents don't go out. (never)
4 I looked for the dog, but it wasn't anywhere in the house. (nowhere)

5 I didn't eat anything yesterday. (nothing)
6 It didn't rain for three months. (hardly)
7 John didn't speak, Mary didn't speak, Bill didn't speak. (nobody)
(3) Make the sentences negative.

- I drink coffee. (not) ..!.don't drink coffeee
- I drink coffee. (never) ........ver drink coffee
- Somebody telephoned. (nobody) .........dy telephoned

1 My grandmother drives fast. (never)
2 Andrew plays the guitar. (not)
3 When she talked, I understood. (nothing)
4 I like Ann's new shoes. (not)
5 Something happened this morning. (nothing)
6 There's somewhere to sit down in the station. (nowhere)

7 I watch TV. (hardly)
8 Somebody wants to play tennis. (nobody)

I never hated a man enough to give him diamonds back.
(Zsa Zsa Gabor)

I have nothing to say, and l am saying it, and that is poetry.
(John Cage)

Sometime they'll give a war and nobody will come.
(Carl Sandburg)

## questions and negatives: more practice

(1) Questions with and without do/did. Ask about the words in italics.

- She said something. .....ho said something?
- She said something. ....What did she say?

1 Julia cooked dinner.
2 Julia cooked eggs.
3 The ball hit Joe.
4 The ball hit Joe.
5 Sarah plays the guitar.
6 Sarah plays the guitar.
7 Beth speaks eight languages.
8 Beth speaks eight languages.
9 Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
10 Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
2 Prepositions in questions. Write questions for these answers.

- I was thinking about you. ..Who were you thinking about?

1 I went with Henry.
2 I'm writing to Margaret.
3 I bought it for my mother.
4 The letter's from my uncle.
5 We were talking about life.
6 I carried it in a paper bag.
71 sold my car for $\in 1000$.
8 She hit him with her umbrella.
9 I sent the flowers to Caroline.
10 She comes from Denmark.
(3) Long subjects. Put in auxiliary verbs to make questions.

- why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year .......y. did jake and his wife go.to Moscow. la. tsyear?
- the 7.15 train / run on Saturdays ..Does the 7.15.......................................ys?

1 why / all those people / looking at me
2 Anna and Oscar / have lunch together / yesterday

3 that man in the dark coat / work / for the government
4 the football team / playing / in Scotland / next Saturday

5 what / those children / doing / in the garden
6 what / the first word in this sentence / mean

7 Tom and his sister / staying / at your house / this week
8 when / Emma's teacher and her class / going / to Paris

9 what / that strange woman / say to you
10 when / Mary and Phil / get married
(4) Not, nobody, never etc. Make negative sentences.

- I read newspapers. (not) ....don't.read wewspapers
- I read newspapers. (never) ..!never read newspapers.........................
- Somebody spoke. (nobody) .....oboody.spolee.

1 My father eats meat. (never)
2 Peter likes jazz. (not)
3 There's something to do in this town. (nothing)
4 I understood everything. (nothing)
5 Sally plays the piano. (not)
6 I go to the cinema. (hardly)
7 Something happened. (nothing)
8 Somebody wants to talk to you. (nobody)
9 l've got some money. (no)
10 l've got enough money. (not)
(5) Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself.

## Just you wait and see

I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't speak German or climb mountains.
I can see
I'm not going to be a ballet dancer or an opera singer.
I'll never discover a new planet or run a two-hour marathon or write the novel of the century.
But I'll do something good.
Just you wait and see.

## Your poem

I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't
or
I can see
I'm not going to
or
I'll never
or
or
But I'll
Just you wait and see.
6. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know the words in the box, Use a dictionary if necessary. Then read statements 1-6 and correct the five that are wrong.

| cat dinosaur elephant grizzly |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| bear hunt insect penguin |  |
| spider | tiger |




7 Internet exercise. Get information from the internet (in English) about some of the animals in Exercise 6, or about some other animals. Then write some negative information about the animals, using can't, don't, aren't etc.

## questions and negatives: revision test

(1) Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

- Spazkyou English?
.Do.you speak.
- Did you understand? ..correct

1 Does your brother living with you?

2 Are coming to the party all your friends?

3 Did you see Tom yesterday?
4 Play you football?
5 Why you are tired?
6 What time does the lesson start?
7 What is your boss like?
8 Where I can pay?
9 Who did tell you that?

10 Did Sarah phoned yesterday?
11 Not speak English.
12 I couldn't find my glasses nowhere.

13 I'm no ready yet.
14 I had no money.
15 At what are you looking?
16 I never work at weekends.
17 She didn't say nothing.
18 This sentence is no right.
19 Nobody didn't help me.
20 She works in China, but no in Beijing.
$\qquad$

## 2 Complete the questions.



| 7 '..................... music do you like?' 'Pop.' |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 8 |  |
|  | 100 m in 12.4 seconds.' |
| 9 | . are your shoes?' '42.' |
| 10 | John's new girlfriend |
|  | 'She's very nice.' |

## (3) Make negative sentences.


1 Kelly is at home. (at work)
2 I've forgotten your name. (your face)
3 Peter drives buses. (taxis)
4 We went to Spain. (Portugal)
5 You must use this phone. (that one)
6 Henry eats fish. (meat)
7 These people play rugby. (soccer)
8 Luke broke his arm. (his leg)
9 I'll be at home in the morning. (the afternoon)
10 Elisabeth reads magazines. (books)

## 4) Make questions with she and her sisters.

- live in England? ..Do.she and her sisters Live in England?

1 been to America?
2 like dancing?
3 can swim?
4 be here tomorrow?
5 go to the party yesterday?
6 ever studied history?
7 can drive?
8 phone last night?
9 talking to Philip when you saw them?
10 get married soon?

## SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms

## grammar summary

INFINITIVES: (to) go, (to) break, (to) see etc -ING FORMS (ALSO CALLED 'GERUNDS'): going, breaking, seeing etc

We can use both -ing forms and infinitives as subjects (but-ing forms are more common). Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)
We can use infinitives to say why we do things. I got up early to catch the 7.15 train.
After some verbs we use infinitives; after others we use -ing forms. l expect to pass my exams. (NOT texpect passing ...) I'll finish studying in June. (NOT I'll finish to study ...)
We can use infinitives after some adjectives and nouns. She's ready to leave. I'm glad to see you. l've got work to do.
After prepositions we use -ing forms, not infinitives.
You can't live without eating. (NOT ... witheuttoeat.)
I usually watch TV before going to bed. (NOT ... before to goto bed.)
Infinitives often have to before them; but not always. I want to go home, but I can't go now.

## How I stopped smoking

Istarted smoking when I was 16. I didn't really want to smoke, but at that age it's important to imitate your friends. Once I had started, of course, it was hard to stop. And smoking gave me something to do with my hands. Whenever I met strangers, I couldn't help reaching for a cigarette to give me confidence, to make me look (I thought) cool and sophisticated. Soon I couldn't get through a day without smoking twenty or thirty cigarettes. But smoking made me feel ill and smell bad, and I was tired of feeling
ill and smelling bad. And I realised that it was stupid to spend so much money on a ridiculous habit. So I tried to stop. Hundreds of times. I kept on giving up. I became an expert on giving up smoking. Nothing worked: I always started again.

At last I had a piece of luck. I got terrible bronchitis - so bad that I simply couldn't smoke. It lasted for months. And when I finally recovered, I realised that I had broken the habit. I didn't have to start smoking again.
And I never did. $\because$


## infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go?

We usually put to with infinitives. I want to go home. (NOT I want go heme:)

It's important to get enough sleep.
I telephoned my sister to say sorry.
But we use infinitives without to after do/does/did in questions and negatives (see pages 104 and 113).

## Does John speak Russian? (NOT Does Johnte speak ....?) I didn't understand.

We also use infinitives without to after modal verbs (can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, must - see Section 6).
I can't swim. (NOT tean't fo swim:) Must you go now? We should find a hotel.
(1) Put in to or nothing ( - ).

|  | I don't want ..to........ stay at school. | 4 It may ....... snow this weekend. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - | What time does the train ........... leave? | 5 I must ....... remember ....... phone Andy. |
| 1 | Do you ....... play golf? | 6 Do we ....... have ....... buy petrol? |
| 2 | It's nice ....... be at home again. | 7 Jane seems ....... be tired today. |
| 3 | Sorry - I can't ....... help you. | 8 I hope ....... see you again soon. |

(2) Put in words from the box, with or without to.

| ask $\checkmark$ buy go hear help learn lend $\checkmark$ see send stop |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |


|  | I'm writing .......................... for your help. | 4 | Where did you | those boots? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Can you ........................ me some money? | 5 | 1 expect | from my family soon. |
|  | Maria went to America .................... English. | 6 | I don't want | by bus. |
|  | Can you ................... me with the cooking? | 7 | 1 must | Tom some money. |
|  | I'd like ......................... you for a moment. | 8 | You really shour | . s |

We make negative infinitives with not (to) + verb.
Try not to forget your keys. (NOT ... tonetferget ...) Be careful not to wake Paul up.
I told you not to telephone me here. I'm sorry not to stay longer.
The company did not make any money last year. You must not park in front of the school.
(3) Put in not to with infinitives from the box.

|  | break go to sleep | have | have | laugh $\checkmark$ make | play | see |  | tell | wake |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - Please try ..not to Laugh |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | It's nice ............................................. a headache any more. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | Be careful ............................................. those glasses. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Please try ............................................. in the lessons. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | Tell the children .......................................... so much noise. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5 | I'd like ....................................... so so much work. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6 | Hannah must learn ............................................. about herself all the time. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7 | Remember ...................................... me up tomorrow morning. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8 | It's important ............................................ Sheila about Peter and Sandra. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9 | We'll be sorry ............................................ you tomorrow. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Please tell Amir ........................................... the trumpet after midnight. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## infinitive of purpose She went to Paris to study music.

## We use an infinitive with to to say why we do something.

I turned on the TV to watch the news. Joanna went to Paris to study music.

1) Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

|  | ask for buy catch drive | finish | hear | learn | meet | relax | turn on $\checkmark$ | wait for |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - Use this button ..tot urno n ................... the computer. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | Oliver got up early .................................... Mark to the station. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 | I was late, so I ran ..................................... my bus. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | Ann wrote to me ..................................... Joe's address. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | I sat in the waiting room .................................... the doctor. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5 | Bob's gone to the airport ..................................... his uncle. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6 | I went to town on Saturday ................................. a present for my cousin's birthday. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | I stayed up late last night .................................... my English homework. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8 | Alice went to Beijing ..................................... Chinese. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9 I turned on the radio ..................................... the latest news. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | I listen to music .. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

2 Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

| buy clean earn get get up go $\int$ | go | make | open | tell | wish |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

- Mum gave us some money ..to.9............ to the cinema.

1 I stood on a chair ....................................... the top of the fridge,
2 Roger's gone to town ......................................... a book.
3 We moved closer to the fire warm.
4 Use this key ....................................... the front door.
5 I left a note
George about the meeting.
6 Jane got a part-time job some pocket money.
7 I bought some good boots walking in the mountains.
8 Alice phoned Sue $\qquad$ her a happy birthday.
9 I put the kettle on a cup of tea.
10 I set the alarm clock early.
3) Put the beginnings and ends together, using verbs from the box with to.

| buy cut dry open see wash $\checkmark$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |


| 0 | You use soap | A | .towash...... yourself. ..... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | You use a knife | B | .................. things in shops. |
| 2 | You use a torch | C | .................. and close doors. |
| 3 | You use money | D | .......... ......... yourself. |
| 4 | You use a key | E | ................. things into pieces. ...... |
| 5 | You use a towel | F | .................. in the dark. |

## verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.

After some verbs we use infinitives, usually with to.
I hope to go to Ireland later this year. Did Jeremy agree to help you with your work?
Read the texts, and write down the verbs that are followed by an infinitive with to.
I'm eighteen, and I hope to be an airline pilot. My parents have agreed to pay for lessons if I do well in my exams. My brother says girls shouldn't be pilots, but I refuse to listen to him.

When I started to work here, my boss promised to give me interesting work, travelling to Europe and Asia. I expected to enjoy my job. But all my work is boring, and I don't do any travelling. I've tried to talk to my boss, but she doesn't listen. Now l've decided to look for another job.

I've always been afraid of water. Then one day last year I thought, 'I don't want to live like this'. So I found some special lessons for people like me. I'm learning to swim, and next summer I plan to take water-skiing lessons.


I needed to be at work early this morning. But I forgot to set my alarm clock, and I woke up at 7.30 instead of 6.30 . Then everything seemed to go wrong. I had no clean shirts, the bus was late, ...
7
7
8
8
9
9
$\square$

I began to learn karate four years ago, and l've continued to go to lessons twice a week since then. I love it. I've visited some other karate clubs, but I prefer to learn at my own club, because the teaching is so good.
13
14
15

| 2 | $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 3 | $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ |
| 4 | $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ |
| 5 | $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ |
| 6 | $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ |

```
- nopeto
- agreed to
....o..e........
1
```

```
10
11
12
```

After begin, start, continue and prefer we can also use -ing forms with the same meaning.

## When did you begin to leam / begin leaming karate?

I started to have / started having these headaches about a month ago.
The President continued to speak / continued speaking for an hour and a half.
I prefer to live / prefer living in the country - the city is too noisy.
$\rightarrow$ For -ing forms after try and forget, see page 308.

Love . . . Everyone feels it, has felt it, or expects to feel it.
(Anthony Trollope, 1883)

We must learn to live together as brothers (Martin Luther King, 1964)

He prefeared to be good
rather than to seem good.
(Sollust, of Coto, 54 B.C)

War will stop when men refuse to fight.
(Pacifist slogan, 1936)

Gentlemen always seem to remember blondes.
(Anita Loos, 1925)

Stop the world, I want to get off!
(Anthony Newley, 1961)
2. Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes and to.
1-4: agree decide expect $\checkmark$ need plan $\checkmark$ try

- ALICE: 'The exam seemed easy. I was surprised when I got a low mark.'

Alice .. expected to pass the exam; she was surprised when she got a low mark.

- David and Cathy have got plane tickets and hotel reservations for Corsica.

David and Cathy are ..Planning to go to Corsica.
1 Annie is going to Singapore. A visa is necessary, and she hasn't got one. Annie get a visa.
2 JANE: 'Could you possibly lend me $£ 5$ ?'
ANDY: 'Sure.'
Andy has lend $£ 5$ to Jane.
3 JOE: 'Shall I go to the cinema or stay at home? Cinema, perhaps? No, I'll stay at home.' Joe has stay at home.
4 Lizzie was expecting a call from Sarah. Sarah rang the number, but it was engaged. Sarah phone Lizzie, but the number was engaged.

5-10: forget learn promise refuse start want

5 Oliver lives in the US, but he took all his driving lessons in France.
Oliver
drive in France.
6 PATRICK: 'I will write to you every day, Barbara.' Patrick has write to Barbara every day.
7 BOB: 'I was going to post a birthday card to my mother, but I didn't remember.' Bob post his mother's birthday card.
8 PHILIP: 'Please, please lend me your car.'
AGNES: 'No, no, no and no.'
Agnes has lend her car to Philip.
9 Helen's parents are sending her to England for two weeks. Helen is not happy. Helen doesn't $\qquad$ go to England.
10 Susan said her first word when she was seven months old. Susan
talk when she was seven months old.
11-15: begin continue hope prefer seem

11 Mark plays the piano and the trumpet. The trumpet is his favourite. Mark can play the piano, but he $\qquad$ play the trumpet.
12 Ling usually stops work at 5.00, but yesterday she didn't stop until 7.00. Ling $\qquad$ work until 7.00 yesterday.
13 John swims every day; he's going to try for the national team next year. John $\qquad$ be in the national swimming team next year.
14 'I'm not sure, but I think Rebecca was worried yesterday evening.' Rebecca $\qquad$ be worried yesterday evening.
15 Irene sat down to write a letter to her brother yesterday, but she didn't finish it. Irene $\qquad$ write a letter to her brother yesterday.

[^8]
## verb + object + infinitive He wants me to cook.

We often say that we want somebody to do something.
My boyfriend wants me to do all the cooking. (NOT . wants that tdo at the Eooking:)
We can use would like in the same way.
I'd like you to listen to this song. (NOT l'd like that youtlisten ...)
1
Make sentences with want or would like.

- MRS LEWIS: Ann, can you post my letters, please? (want)
Mrs Lewhs wants Ann to post her letters
1 SARAH: John, could you cook tonight? (would like)
2 POLICEMAN: Please move your car, sir. (want)
the man
3 MOTHER: Helen, please wash your face. (want)Helen's motherher.
4 BILL: Andy, can you help me? (would like)
BiL: Andy, can you help me? (would like) ..... him.
5 ROGER: Karen, could you lend me some money? (would like)
lend him
6 JESSIE; Be quiet for a minute, Peter. (want)
7 DAVID: Alice, can you have dinner with me? (would like)
8 MIKE: The government should put more money into schools. (would like)
9 LUCY: Bill, stop playing that terrible music. (want)
10 MARY: Gordon, could you make the bed for once? (would like)
(2) Different people want Alice to do different things. Complete the sentences.
buy a better guitar buy him do something $\checkmark$ go to America with him go to Russia with her lend her spend every weekend stop study take him for work
- Everybody ..wants herto do something
1 Her boss ..... harder.
2 Her little brother ..... a walk.
4 Her boyfriend
5 Her friend Martha ..... a blue dress.
6 Her guitar teacher
7 Her mother ..... at home.
8 Her sister
9 The people downstairs ..... playing loud music at night.
10 Her father ..... economics.

We can use some other verbs like this. For example: ask, expect, help, need, tell.
l asked Peter to go to America with me. The doctor told me to take a holiday.
We don't expect you to work at weekends. I need you to translate this letter.
3 Change the sentences.

- They thought that we would be late. (expect)

They expected us to be late
1 I didn't say to Alan 'Go home.' (tell)
2 I said to Fred 'Please be quiet.' (ask)
3 Do you think she'll phone? (expect)
4 I carried the books with Joe. (help) I helped
5 The policewoman said to me 'Show me your driving licence.' (tell) ................................................ me
her
6 Ann finished the work with me. (help) Ann
7 I said to the shop assistant 'Can you help me?' (ask)
8 You must stay with me. (need) I need
9 I think she'll pass her exam. (expect)
10 Some people must help with the party. (need) I need
4. Dan's family wanted different things from him. Write sentences.

- His mother:'Be happy'. .....................................................
- His grandfather:'Don't be a politician'. .....s. Dandfather didn't want him to be a.politician

1 His father: 'Get rich'

2 His sister Isabel: 'Be good at sport'.

3 His brother Andy: 'Go to university'.

4 His sister Nicole: 'Don't got to university'.

5 His brother Henry: 'Be a racing driver'.

6 His grandmother:'Be a doctor'.

7 His friend Anthony: 'Have an easy life'.

8 His maths teacher: 'Study maths'.

9 His literature teacher: 'Study literature.'

10 His music teacher: 'Don't study music. Please.'
(5) What do/did people want you to do/be in life?

```
- ..My.parents want me to be a doctor
- My teacher wanted me to study engineering
```


## it with infinitive subjects It's nice to be here with you.

We don't often begin sentences with infinitive subjects (like To be here with you is nice).
More often, we begin with it and put the infinitive later.
The structure It is/was etc + adjective + infinitive (with to) is very common.
It's nice to be here with you. It was good to see you again. It's important to remember people's names.
1 Change these sentences to make them more natural.

- To take your passport is necessary. ..t's.necessary to take your passport

1 To phone John was not necessary.

2 To understand that woman is impossible.

3 To stay in bed late on Sundays is nice.

4 To say 'No' is sometimes difficult.

5 To make our children happy was easy.

6 To tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.

7 To eat out in restaurants is expensive.

8 To learn a foreign language perfectly is almost impossible.

9 To travel is nice.

10 To visit my parents was good.

2 Complete these sentences about a summer holiday. Use It was and words from the box.

```
a bit hard to understand dangerous to swim expensive to eat impossible to be
interesting to see nice to have really good to get away \ very easy to make
```


(3) What do you think? Make sentences beginning It's, using words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
always often sometimes never right wrong good
bad necessary stupid dangerous
take exercise ..It's always good to take exercise
1 tell the truth
2 relax
3 save money
4 give money to beggars
5 drive fast
6 fight
7 be polite to older people
8 dress well
9 smoke
10 work very hard
(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: learning and using a language: what is important?

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
Then make sentences with It's important to ... , It's not necessary to ... or It's important not to Different answers are possible: for ours, see the answer key.

| bilingual | comprehension <br> regularly | results $\quad$ correctness | immediate | mistake practise pronunciation |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| translate | vocabulary |  |  |  |

## LEARNING

- study regularly ...t's important to study reaularly.
- study six hours a day ...t's not necessary to study six hours a day
- expect immediate results. ..t's important not to expect immediate results

1 practise grammar
2 translate everything
3 read a lot
4 read things that interest you

## PRONUNCIATION

5 have perfect pronunciation
6 have good enough pronunciation

## GRAMMATICAL CORRECTNESS

7 make too many mistakes
8 speak without mistakes

## COMPREHENSION

9 practise listening to English

## VOCABULARY

10 know 3,000-5,000 words
11 know 50,000 words
12 have a good English-English dictionary
13 have a good bilingual dictionary

## adjective + infinitive glad to find you at home



We can use infinitives (with to) after adjectives to say what we think of things that people do. We do this with adjectives like clever, crozy, right, silly, stupid and wrong.
You're crazy to think you can get there in an hour. You were clever to bring an umbrella.
(2) Write sentences with infinitives.

- Angela carries all her money in one bag. She's wrong.
..Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one bag
- Annie got to the airport early. She was clever.
. Annie was clever to get to the airport early
1 Eleanor listens to Mark. She's silly.

2 Elizabeth took the train without a ticket. She was wrong.

3 I sat on my glasses. I was stupid.

4 I washed a white shirt with a red one. I was wrong.

5 You believe Luke. You're silly.

6 You eat a good breakfast. You're right.

7 You lent money to Chris. You were crazy.

8 I thought the new Prime Minister was a good man. I was stupid.

9 Rebecca told Peter she loved him. She was wrong.

10
I stayed in bed until lunchtime. I was right.

## adjectives with enough/too + infinitive too tired to sing

After adjective + enough, we can use an infinitive (with to). Note the word order - see page 176. Julie's old enough to drive now. (NOT fulie's efeugh eld ...) John isn't strong enough to carry that.
(1) Make sentences with is/isn't old enough to ..
Alice is $13 . \quad$ Mark is $16 . \quad$ Cathy is 17.
John is $18 . \quad$ Liz is 21.

- John ..is old enough to drive ............ a car.
- Alice ..isn't old enough to drive......... a car.

2 Alice ................................................. home.
3 Mark............................................... school.
4 Cathy .................................................. home.
5 Cathy .................................................. vote.
6 John ........................................... his name.
7 Liz .................................................. abus.

| IN BRITAIN - AT WHAT AGE CAN YOU ...? |  |
| :---: | :--- |
| When you are | you can |
| 13 | work part-time |
| 16 | leave home |
| 17 | leave school |
| 18 | drive a car |
| 18 | vote |
| 18 | change your name |
| 21 | drive a bus |

(2) Rewrite these sentences using ... enough ... to ...

1 Laurie is not very tall, so he can't play basketball. He's
2 Annie's only 14, so she can't vote.
3 I'm not very strong. I can't open this bottle.
4 My French is good. I can read a newspaper.
5 Peter isn't very old. He can't go out by himself.
6 Rob is intelligent. He will do well at university.
ter too + adjective, we can use an infinitive (with to).
I too tired to sing. Alice was very afraid - too afraid to speak.
(3) Change two sentences into one. Use too ... to .

- I'm very sleepy. I can't drive. .!!'m..too.s.e.eep.y.to. drive.

1 Helen is very ill. She can't work.
2 My grandfather is very old. He can't travel.
3 I'm very bored. I can't listen any longer.
4 Cara's very hot. She can't play tennis.
5 I'm very hungry. I can't work.
6 I'm very tired. I can't drive.
7 I was very afraid. I couldn't move.
8 Molly was very ill last week. She couldn't go to school.
9 Our dog's very fat. It can't run.
10 My mother's very deaf. She doesn't understand what people say.

Middle age: the age when you are too old to play tennis and too young to play golf.

## noun/pronoun + infinitive some letters to write

```
We can often use infinitives with to after nouns.
I've got some letters to write. Sorry - I haven't got any money to lend you.
```


## (1) Complete the sentences with the expressions from the box.

```
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline & dress to wear letters to post & film to watch shopping to do & friend to see homework to d stories to tell & \\
\hline \multicolumn{5}{|l|}{\multirow[t]{7}{*}{\begin{tabular}{l}
My uncle always has very interesting .storics to.tell! about his year in Nepal. \\
Please can I go out tonight, Dad? I've got no \(\qquad\) \\
I'm going to the post office - have you got any \(\qquad\) \\
3 I think l'll stay at home tonight. I'm a bit tired, and there's a good \(\qquad\) on TV. \\
4 Have you got a \(\qquad\) to the party, or will you have to buy one? \\
If you've got any \(\qquad\) , we can go to the supermarket later. \\
6 I'll be home a bit late tonight - I've got a \(\qquad\) after work.
\end{tabular}}} \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```


## We can use infinitives with to after words like somebody, anything and nowhere (see page 172).

Would you like something to drink? I haven't got anything to read; can I borrow this book? There's nothing to eat in the fridge. Those poor people have nowhere to live.

Complete the sentences with somebody etc and the verbs in italics.

- POLICEMAN: Move on, please. There's (see) ....................e.

1 I can't go to the party: I don't have (wear)
2 Could I possibly use this table? I need (work)
3 When I arrived, there was (do) ................................................. - all the work was finished.
4 Everyone in our class was ill today, so our teacher had (teach)
5 I'll be with you in a few minutes - I have (finish)
6 All my friends are out of town tonight, and l've got (go)
7 Everybody needs (love)
8 My brother couldn't find (stay) ......................................................... Bristol.
9 I'm looking for (help) me with the disco on Saturday.
10 Your arms are full - give me (carry)

## NOTHING TO EAT

She had nothing to eat.
They made a film about her because she had nothing to eat.
Her husband
was killed in the war.
They wrote a book about how he was killed in the war.
Her mother and brother were executed by the revolutionaries.
There was an opera about it.

Both her children died
(there was no hospital).
You can see the photographs at an exhibition in London.

Then somebody wrote a poem.
Still
she had nothing to eat.

## -ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you.

We often use -ing forms (also called 'gerunds') as subjects - more often than infinitives.
Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)
Swimming is good exercise. Driving makes me tired. Travelling takes a lot of my time.

1) Complete the sentences.

(2) Make three more sentences like the ones in Exercise 1. Use some of the words in the box.

| cycling learning running | shopping | sleeping teaching thinking writing |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

1
2
3

We can put objects after -ing forms.
Learning languages is difficult and takes time. (NOT ... aredifficult ... earning is singular.)
Eating chocolate does not make you slim.
3. Complete this list of activities with verbs from the box (u: -ing forms). Then number them in order of interest: $\mathbf{1}=$ most interesting (for you); 8 least interesting.


In notices, you often see NO before -ing forms.

## NO SMOKING NO WAITING

(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: public notices

Which words go with which notice?
Use a dictionary if necessary.
NO PARKING ..1.. NO SMOKING
NO FISHING ...... NO CYCLING
NO CAMPING ......


## After prepositions, we use -ing forms of verbs.

The children are tired of going to the same place every summer. (NOT ... are tired of to goto ...)
She spoke for an hour without using notes. (NOT ... without to tise ...)
Thank you for coming. I worry about spending too much money.
We're thinking of going to Jamaica for Christmas.
$\rightarrow$ For spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.
(1) Put the beginnings and ends together.

(2) Add -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

| ask be $\boldsymbol{l}$ close get go hear ski smoke wash watch work |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

Alice dreams of ..being................... an opera singer, but she can't sing very well.
1 I'm tired of ........................... the same old stories; doesn't John realise he's boring us?
2 Which British Prime Minister was famous for ............................. big cigars?
3 I'm thinking of $\qquad$ to Greece next summer - have you ever been there?
4 Eric's interested in ..............................football on television, but not in playing it.
5 Don't worry about .............................. the dishes - I'll wash them in the morning.
6 She ran out without the door.
7 They didn't pay me much for in their garden.
8 Jessica and Rob are talking about married.
9 I'm not very good at $\qquad$ , but I like it.
10 She took my bike without

> People talling without speaking
> People hearing without listening, ...
> 'Fools', said I, 'You do not know
> Silence like a cancer grows.'
> (from Sound of Silence', song by Paul Simon)
(3) Make sentences with very / quite / not very good at ...ing or bad at ...ing.

|  | RUN | SWIM | CYCLE | DRAW | SING |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JANE | $\star$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\lesssim$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\cdots$ |
| BOB | \% | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\star$ | \% |
| SUE | $\star$ | $\star$ | $\cong$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\Sigma$ |
| MARK | $\star$ | T | $\star$ | $\aleph$ | $\bigcirc$ |


| KEY |
| :--- |
| $\star$ VERY GOOD |
| QUITE GOOD |
| NOT VERY GOOD |
| BAD |

- (Jane/run, swim) Jane is very good at nunning but bad at swimming.
- (Sue/run, cycle) ..Sue is verygood at nunning, and guite good at cycling.

1 (Bob/run, cycle)
2 (Sue/draw, run)
3 (Mark/swim, run)
4 (Bob/swim, sing)
5 (Jane/run, cycle)
6 (Mark/sing, draw)
7 (Jane / draw, sing)
8 (Sue/sing, swim)
4. What are you good or bad at? Write some sentences about yourself.

We use by ...ing and without ...ing to say how people do something.
l earn my pocket money by working in a petrol station. She passed her exams without studying.
(5) Make sentences with by ...ing or without ...ing.

- When I left the house this morning, I didn't close the windows.
! Left the house this morning without closing the windows
- Ali got a wonderful job. He was in the right place at the right time.

Ali got a wonderful job by being in the right place at the right time.
1 Ellie stayed awake. She drank lots of coffee.

2 Paul drank three glasses of water. He didn't stop.

3 Charles woke us up. He turned the TV on.

4 You can find out the meaning of a word. Use a dictionary.

5 Mike paid for his new house. He didn't borrow any money.

6 Helen lost her driving licence. She drove too fast, too often.

7 Carl did all his homework. He didn't ask for any help.

8 Teresa cooks all her food. She doesn't use any salt.

Sometimes to is a preposition (for example Ilook forward to your answer).
In this case we must use -ing forms of verbs after to.
I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT Hook forwardto hearfrom you.)

After some verbs we use -ing forms.
Some of these verbs are: keep (on) (='continue', 'not stop'), finish, stop, give up (= 'stop', for habits), go, can't help (= 'can't stop myself'), spend (time), mind, suggest, practise, enjoy.
I can't help feeling unhappy. Do you mind sharing a room? Alex has gone swimming.
(1) Complete the sentences with -ing forms. (For spelling rules, see page 23. )

- We enjoy ..Playing.............. tennis in the morning. (play)

1 Has Julia finished her photos? (take)
2 Robert's given up sweets. (eat)
3 'Where's Helen?' 'She's gone ' (shop)
4 I have to practise so I can pass my test. (drive)
5 Alec suggested at the supermarket. (stop)
6 On Sunday I spent three hours in the garden. (work)

2 Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.

| He can't help She enjoys $\mathbb{\ell}$ | They've just finished He's given up They're going |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| All that week, it kept $\quad$ She's practising $\quad$ She's suggesting $\checkmark$ It's just stopped |  |



3 Put in -ing forms of the verbs in the box.


4 Write about ten things you love/hate etc doing. Use expressions from the box or write about other things.
cooking dinner for friends dancing until $1 \mathrm{a} . \mathrm{m}$. $\quad$ eating out with friends getting up early
listening to loud music $\quad$ lying on a sunny beach reading novels swimming in the ocean
travelling to new places $\quad$ walking in the mountains walking in the rain watching old films

- ! lovewalking in the mountains

1
2
3
4
5
6

7

8
9
10


After love, like and hate we can also use infinitives with to with the same meaning.
I love to sing. = I love singing. Rachel likes to go out / going out with friends.
Mum hates to cook / cooking on an electric cooker.
(BUT NOT + distike to tisten to opera. AND NOT Do you mind to wait for $A$ few minties?)

## infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

(1) Adjective or noun + infinitive. Complete the sentences with infinitives.

- (I saw Daniel.) I was happy ..to. see Daniel.
- (I need to do some shopping.) I've got ..some.shopp.ing.to do...........................

1 (I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised
2 (She left her job.) She was wrong
3 (I can't buy a car.) I've got no money
4 (I gave Peter money.) I was crazy
5 (We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad
6 (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry
7 (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too
8 (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some
9 (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time
10 (I need a drink.) I need something
2) Infinitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives (with to) from the box.

| catch cut impress keep learn look for make $\Omega$ make pay stop watch |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers
1 Alicia went to America
2 I switched the TV on
3 I took two aspirins
4 Carolyn went to the kitchen
5 I'm wearing a hat
6 I have to work in the evenings
7 I used a small knife
8 Jack bought some new clothes
9 We all ran as fast as we could
10 The cat got up on the table

| A | ..to. make. .... her feel better. ..... |
| :---: | :---: |
| B | ................... coffee. |
| C | .................. my head warm. |
| D | .................. English. ...... |
| E | . . the news. ...... |
| F | .................. my headache. ...... |
| G | . food. ...... |
| H | .. for my new car. ...... |
| 1 | .. the potatoes into pieces. |
| J | .. his girlfriend. ...... |
| K | . . the train. |

(3) -ing form subjects. Put these activities in order of interest (for you) and make sentences with more interesting.

```
driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds watching TV cycling
```

- Driving is more interesting than watching birds watching birds is more interesting. than listening to music
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

Grammar in a text. Complete the text with expressions from the boxes.

```
1-4: glad to leave J happy not to have pleased to find sorry to say unhappy to think
```

Five years ago, I went to Australia to start a new job.I was • . glad to............................. London, but I was very 1 1.
$\qquad$ that I would be so far away. I was a bit afraid of my new life, so I was
$3 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ any problems when I arrived. Sydney was beautiful, and I was $4 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots .$. friendly people in the office, an interesting job and a lovely apartment.

```
5-7: happy to be pleased to see surprised to find
```

Everything went well in Australia, but I never felt really at home there, and in the end I decided to come back. Today l arrived in London, for the first time in five years. I was 5 so many changes, but I am really 6 here again. On the way from the airport I started to cry - I was so 7 a big red London bus.
(5) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: vehicles. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the advertisements and say what the advertisers want you to buy.
bike motorbike motorboat plane tractor $\mathcal{A}$ yacht

| 2 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |



Heathield H300 Hybrid


- 4130 Moiloy trame - 24 -speed Hrtalo gears



## CELGA 113A



1000 hours AF/E. CofA to November. New leather seats

6) Internet exercise. Find three advertisements on the internet. Write some words from each advertisement, and say what the advertisers want you to do or buy.

## infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

(1) Put in the correct form of the verb.

- I promise ..to.phone.... you every day. (phone)
- She suggested .. seeing........ a doctor. (see)

1 We agreed .................... together. (work)
2 I didn't expect .................... John there. (see)
3 I'm really going to stop .................... (smoke)
4 I can't keep ..................... - I'm too tired. (drive)
5 Iris has decided ................... a car. (buy)

6 The boss refused .................... to me. (talk)
7 I thought of .................... you a birthday card, but I forgot. (send)
8 They still haven't finished .................... (talk)
9 Bill doesn't want .................... with us. (come)
10 Your English is good, but you must practise
(speak)
(2) Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

- I want seeing you. .to. see.
- Can I help you? ..correct.

1 It's necessary to get a visa.
2 I hope to not have problems at university.

3 I went to Mexico for learning Spanish.

4 His parents wanted him to be a doctor.

5 You can get there faster by take the train.

6 I stopped to smoke last year.
7 She keeps telephoning me.
8 We decided going by bus.

9 I'm glad to see you.
10 Learning languages is difficult.
11 I don't want that you pay for me.
12 It's dangerous to smoke.
13 We need getting tickets.
14 You can't live without to eat.
15 I often think about change my job.

16 I was wrong to say that to her.
17 I would like see you again.
18 Is it necessary to buy a ticket now?

19 Try to not forget your keys.
20 You must pay now.

## (3) Write sentences with want.

- ROBERT $\longrightarrow$ PAUL: tell / everything ..Robert wants Paul to tell him everything:

1 ANNA $\rightarrow$ BETH: look after / children
2 JOE $\rightarrow$ JACK: lend/money
3 PETER'S MOTHER $\longrightarrow$ PETER: clean / room
4 SAM $\longrightarrow$ JOE: go shopping
Write sentences with would like.

- ALICE $\rightarrow$ OLIVIA: make/coffee

5 TOM $\longrightarrow$ SARAH: pass/newspaper

6 MIKE'S PARENTS $\longrightarrow$ MIKE: study / medicine

7 THE BOSS $\rightarrow$ EMMA: answer / phone

## Write sentences with not want.

CAROL $\rightarrow$ ROBERT: drive fast ..carol doesn't want Robert to drive fast
8 MARY $\rightarrow$ JACK: look / her / like that

9 HARRY $\longrightarrow$ JIM: say / anything / police

10
MARIA'S MOTHER $\longrightarrow$ MARIA: fall in love / pop singer

## SECTION 10 special structures with verbs

## grammar summary

Several different structures are practised in this section:

- structures with get

It's getting late. I got a letter. Get out!

- verbs followed by prepositions

Look at this.

- phrasal verbs

Hurry up - we're late.

- verbs with two objects

Can you lend me some money?

- have something done

I have my hair cut every week.

- let's

Let's go and see a film tonight.

- imperatives

Come in and have some coffee.

'Don't embarrass me again, spell-checker.'

Get has different meanings in different structures.
Get + direct object: 'receive, fetch, obtain, buy ...'
Get your coat - it's time to go. She got a letter from her mother.
Get + adjective: 'become'
It's getting cold. The problem is getting worse.
Get + adverb particle / preposition:'move, change position'
What time do you usually get up? It takes me an hour to get to work. I couldn't get on the bus because it was full.
(1) Complete the sentences using expressions with get.

- My English is ..getting better.

1 Ineed to ............... some ............... out of the bank.
2 Antonia ...................................... her car and drove away.
31
................ a long $\qquad$ from Arthur this morning.
4 What are you doing in my room? $\qquad$ .!
5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you'll
6 If you don't put on a sweater, you'll
7 We have to ...................................... the bus at the next stop.
8 If I don't have breakfast, I ................ really ................ about eleven o'clock.
9 I'm ............... ing ................ . I think I'll go to bed.
10 It $\qquad$ early in winter.

```
Get is often used with a past participle. Common expressions:
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost
get married get divorced getbroken
This structure can be similar to a passive verb.
Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= ... 'was arrested' ... )
We never get invited anywhere.
```

2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles).
break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send $\downarrow$ steal undress

- When he was 12 he .. got sent...........................................

1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it
2 Anna and Brian have only been married for a year, but they're
3 His glasses when he fell off his bike.
4 I'm going to and go to bed.
5 Every time he goes walking in the country he
6 If you leave your bag there, it'll
7 That child takes hours to $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ in the morning.
8 'Shall we go swimming?' 'OK. l'll just go and
9 Do you think we'll ......................................... to Roger's party?
10 Sarah and Oliver ........................................ in a beautiful little church in the country.

## verbs with prepositions Wait for me

With some verbs, we put a preposition (for, to, at etc) before an object.
Wait for me! (NOT Weit me.) I listen to a lot of music. (NOT Histen alot ofmusic.)
(1) Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in verbs from the box.
0-4: ask believe $\Omega$ belong laugh wait
5-9: happened listen look talks think

```
Do you ..believe.......
I know my English is bad, but please don't
If you're late, I'll
If you want anything, just
Does this coat
I've got something important to say: please
Their garden is wonderful.
7 Megan lives from day to day. She doesn't
8 ~ H e ' s ~ v e r y ~ b o r i n g : ~ h e ~ a l w a y s
9 Paula's an hour late. What's
```

$\qquad$
A my pronunciation. ......
for it and I'll give it to you.
for you. ......
in life after death? .....
to you? ......
about himself.
about the future.
at those roses! ......
to her?
to me.
2. Look again at Exercise 1, and write the preposition after each verb.

| ask for | believe ........... | belong | happen ............ | laugh |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| listen | look | talk | think ............ | wait |

You arrive at a place, or in a very big place (NOT * $\theta$ ).
The train arrives at Oxford Station at 17.15. When did you arrive in Britain?
You get into/out of a car; you get on/off a bus, train, plane or ship.
I got out of the taxi at Piccadilly Circus. We got off the bus at Trafalgar Square.
Look after = 'watch and take care of'; look for = 'try to find'.
Could you look after the children this evening? I'm looking for my glasses.
You pay a person or a bill; you pay for something that you buy.
'Have you paid Joe?' 'Yes, I paid his bill last week.' Can you pay for the drinks?
3 Put in the correct preposition or - (= no preposition).
1 Don't wait $\qquad$ me if I'm late.
2 What time did you arrive the airport?
3 Don't listen .......... him - he's being stupid.
4 I'm looking .......... John's house while he's away.
5 We're looking .......... a bigger house.
6 Did you ask .......... coffee?
7 We need to talk .......... money.
8 'Whose is that car?' 'It belongs .......... Carola.'
9 I forgot to pay .......... the tickets.
10 I don't want to think .......... the future.
11 She got her car and drove away.
12 |couldn't get $\qquad$ the bus because it was full.
13 'What's happened your hand?' 'I cut it on some glass.'
14 The children still believe .......... Father Christmas.
15 When I got .......... the train I realised I'd forgotten my ticket.
16 Can you pay .......... the taxi driver?
17 When did you arrive .......... Ireland?
18 She got .......... the car and went into her house.
19 Why are you looking .......... me?
20 We had to get .......... the plane because there was a bomb.
$\rightarrow$ For more about prepositions, see pages 273-286.

## phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down.

Some verbs have two parts. The second part is a small adverb (back, away, out etc).
These verbs are called 'phrasal verbs'.
The small adverbs are not the same as prepositions (but some of them look the same).

## SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS

be in/outlaway/back get out get up go away go/come back go on (='continue') go in/out hurry up lie down look out lookround sit down stand up turn round wake up
'Can I speak to Ann?' 'She's not in.' Come back soon. This headache won't go away.
Look out! Come in and sit down. It's time to get up.
(1) Complete the sentences.

- The door opened and I went $\qquad$
- ..come.... back and see us soon.

1 I usually $\qquad$ up at seven o'clock in the morning.
2 Shall we $\qquad$ out this evening?
3 I heard a noise behind me and turned $\qquad$ ...
4 I can't go $\qquad$ Can we stop for a minute?
5 I'm going home for a bit. I'll be $\qquad$ after lunch.
6 Hurry $\qquad$ We're late.
7 I'm not feeling well. I'm going to $\qquad$ down for an hour.
8 'I love you.' away!'
(2) Look at the pictures and complete the captions.


1 Wake


2 Please sit


3 Come

Some phrasal verbs can have objects.

## SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS THAT CAN HAVE OBJECTS

bring back fill in (a form) fill up give back give up (= 'stop doing') let in
look up (something in a dictionaryetc) pick up put down put on (clothes)
switch/turn on/off(lights, electrical appliances) take away take off (clothes)
throw away turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) wash up (cups, plates etc)

Please fill in this form and post it. I'm trying to give up smoking. I put on my best clothes for the interview. Shall I switch on the lights? Could you turn down the radio? Don't throw away the newspaper.
In phrasal verbs, up often means 'completely'.
I'll cut up the wood. Let's clean up the house. Fill up your glass. I tore up her letter.

3 Here are some sentences from books and conversations. Complete the phrasal verbs with words from the boxes.

break fill give let look pick take

8 If you want to know what grammar is, ............... up the word in the dictionary.
9 You can't ............... up a newspaper these days without reading about terrible things.
10 She got ill and had to $\qquad$ up her job.
11 He $\qquad$ in six goals in four games.
12 Why did you have to $\qquad$ in the form?
131 $\qquad$ off my shoes whenever I can.
14 up the firewood into little pieces, can you?

## The small adverb can usually go before or after the object.

Switch on the kettle. OR Switch the kettle on. He let in six goals. OR He let six goals in.
When the object is a pronoun (him, her, it etc), the small adverb must go after it.
Switch it on. (NOT Swittheftt.) He let them in. Take it away.

## 4. Change the sentences twice.

- She put on her coat. ..She.puther coat on She put it on
- I washed up the plates. .......................................................................................

1 Could you turn down the TV?
2 You can throw away the potatoes.
3 Why don't you take off your glasses?
4 Please put down that knife.
5 Shall I fill up your glass?
6 l'll switch on the heating.


## verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters.

SOME VERBS THAT CAN HAVE TWO OBJECTS

| bring | buy | cook | fetch | find | get | give | lend |  | make | offer | pass |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| pay | promise | read | send | show |  | teach | take | tell | w |  |  |

Some verbs can have two objects. Two different structures are possible:

| $\mathbf{1}$ VERB + PERSON + THING | $\mathbf{2}$ VERB + THING + TO/FOR + PERSON |
| :--- | :--- |
| Igave Peter lunch yesterday. | I gave lunch to Peter yesterday. |
| Could you take the boss these letters? | Could you take these letters to the boss? |
| I've made everybody tea. | l've made tea for everybody. |

Most often, we use verb + person + thing, especially with personal pronouns (me, you etc).
Can I show you my photos? I wrote her a long letter, but she never answered.
I'm going to put John to bed and tell him a story. I've bought you a present.

## (1) Change the structure.

- Send Alison the bill. ..Send the bill to Alison
- I'll make some tea for you. .!'ll make you some tea

1 I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday.
2 I often read stories to Lucy.
3 Carol teaches small children maths.
4 Ruth showed the photo to the others.
5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers.
6 Could you buy a newspaper for me?
7 I found a hotel room for my parents.
8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.
9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.
10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.
2 Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing.

```
JOE: chocolates }->\mathrm{ SALLY: a book }->\mathrm{ FRED: flowers }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ ANNIE: a picture }->\mathrm{ LUKE: a sweater
MARY: a camera }->\mathrm{ JOE
```

- Joe gave sally chocolates............... 3
1 Sally..............................................................................................
2 .......................................................... 5
(3) Can you complete these quotations with words from the box?


We don't use describe, explain, say, suggest or borrow in the verb + person + thing structure.
(NOT Explain me:this: NOT She said me'hetto! NOT Gantborfow youtastamp?)

If you have something done, you don't do it yourself; somebody does it for you. I have my hair cut every week. I have my car serviced at the garage every $10,000 \mathrm{~km}$.

(1) Ann is very practical: she likes doing things herself. Bill is not so practical: he has things done by other people. Complete the sentences.


- Ann checks her oil herself.

Bill ..has his oil checked................... . at the garage.
1 Ann checks her tyres herself.
2 Ann changes her oil herself.
3 Ann repairs her car herself.
4 Ann cleans her shoes herself.
5 Ann does the gardening herself.
6 Ann types her letters herself.
Bill at the garage.
Bill at the garage.
Bill at the garage.
Bill on the way to work
Bill for him.
Bill by his secretary.
(2) Make sentences with should have ..

- John's car is running badly. (check) .He should have it checked

1 Mary's watch isn't going. (repair)
2 Mike's trousers are dirty. (clean)
3 Steve and Helen's kitchen window is broken. (repair)
4 Pete's hair is getting very long. (cut)
5 Tom and Janet's new car has done $10,000 \mathrm{~km}$. (service)
6 Emma's eyes are giving her trouble. (check)
7 Jasper's roof lets water in. (repair)
8 Daniel's phone makes funny noises. (check)

## imperatives Come in. Don't worry.

Imperatives are like infinitives without to. We use them, for example, to tell people what to do, to give them advice, or to give them friendly invitations.
Turn left at the next crossroads. Always hold the tennis racket like this. (NOT Hold atwoys ...)
Pay here. Try again. Come and have dinner with us. Have some more meat.
Negative imperatives begin do not, don't or never.
Please do not park here. Don't listen to him. Never tell her that she's wrong. (NOT Fell her never ...)
(1) Which words go with which picture?

- DRIVE SLOWLY .....

1 TURN LEFT ......
2 DON'T TOUCH
3 DO NOT PICK FLOWERS ......
0
A
B

C

D
(2) How do you get from the station to Church Street? Complete the directions.
go go take turn turn turn

- .. GO out of the station, $\qquad$ right, and 2 ................ down Station Road 3 left into
Platt Street, then 4 $\qquad$ the first road on the right.
After the car park, 5 left, and Church Street is the second on the right.

(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common imperative expressions Make sure you know the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences.
1-5: Be careful! Have a good journey/holiday Help! Hurry up! Look out! $\checkmark$ Sleep well
6-11: Come in Don't forget ... Don't worry Follow me Have some (more)...
Make yourself at home Sit down Wait for me!

```
- ..cook out!
```



```
    There's a child crossing the road in front of you!
    1
    2
3
4
5 'I'm going to bed.' 'Goodnight
6 'I'll be home late tonight.' 'OK. ......................................................... your keys.'
7.
8
9 'I'd like to speak to the manager, please.' 'Of course, sir.
                                    please.
'Jill's gone into hospital.' '......................................................... She'll be all right.'
Hello.
                                in and
Please
```

We don't use imperatives, even with please, to ask for things politely (see page 86).
Could you tell me the time? (NOT Fell me-the-fime,-please:)
let's (suggestions) Let's go.

We can make suggestions with let's (or let us - very formal) + infinitive without to.
I'm tired. Let's go home. Let's eat out this evening. Let's see what's on TV.
The negative is Let's not ... or Don't let's ... (informal).
Let's not go camping this summer. Let's not tell John about Mary and Pete.
Don't let's invite that fool Raymond.
(1) Look at the pictures and complete the suggestions, using Let's (not) ...

- ...et's go.for a walk.

1 Let's not
2 play
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
5

## ing

go

6
7
watch
8
go

(2) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cities and countries Do you know the English names for cities and countries round the world? Complete the conversations using names in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
Athens Bangkok Beijing Copenhagen Istanbul Lisbon Marrakesh
Mexico City Moscow Prague Rio Vienna Warsaw

- 'I'd like to visit Portugal.' ...Let's go to Lisbon

1 'I'd like to visit Greece.' 'Let's go to $\qquad$
2 'It would be nice to see Denmark.' 'Let's go
3 'I want to see Austria.' 'Let's
4 'I've always wanted to see the Czech Republic.'
5 'I'm interested in seeing Poland.'
6 'What about a holiday in Russia?'
7 'Morocco sounds interesting.'
8 'I've never been to Turkey.
9 'What about Thailand this year?'
10 'I'd love to see China.'
11 'It's time to see Mexico.
12 'Brazil this summer, OK?'

## special structures with verbs: more practice

(1) Phrasal verbs. Put in the missing words.

- I'm really tired. I'm going to .. lie.......... down for half an hour.

1 Hurry ................! We're late.
2 Don't turn ................, but somebody is following us.
3 Can you ............... in this form?
4 The radio's too loud. Can you ................ it down?
5 It's dark. I'll switch ................ the lights.
6 It's cold. ................ on your coat.
7 Shall I wash ............... these plates?
8 She borrowed my shoes and never brought them
9 'I must talk to you.' 'No! ................ away!'
10 It's 6.30. Time to ................ up.
2 Phrasal verbs with objects. Change the sentences twice.

- He put on his glasses. ..tte.puthis.glasses on .......te. put them on
- I turned the radio down. ..!turned down the radio ......! turned it down

1 Could you wash up the cups?
2 You can throw away those papers.

3 Why don't you take your coat off?

4 You need to fill in this form.
5 Please bring my bicycle back.
6 Let me fill up your glass.
7 Please put down that gun.
8 l'll switch the TV on.
9 Can you cut up the onions?
10 Pick your coat up.
(3) Verbs with two objects. Change the structure.

- Send John this letter. ..Send this Letter to John
- Can you make some coffee for me? ..can you make me some coffee?

1 Alice sent her sister $€ 500$.
2 Sarah bought ice creams for the children.
3 Let's send Granny a postcard.
4 Ruth showed the photo to the others.
5 I gave some flowers to the secretary.
6 Can you find John's address for me?
7 I found a hotel for Aunt Patsy.
8 Take these papers to Mrs Lewis.
9 I've given George all the information.
10 I want to buy a nice present for my sister.
(4) Imperatives. Complete the sentences.

- Be ....areful. with those glasses - they break easily.

1 in and close the door.
Don't ............... Everything will be all right.
Goodbye! ............... a good journey.
Look ................! There's a car coming.
................ yourself at home.
! I can't turn the water off!
Goodnight. well.
'Where's the Director's office?' 'I'll show you. ................ me.'
' ................ a good holiday.' 'Thanks. I'm sure we will.'
Don't ............... to phone us when you arrive.

## Grammar in a text. Read the text and put in imperatives from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

| 1-5: fetch hold let pick put |
| :--- |
| 6-10: continue get get open throw |
| 11-16: blow drink find kneel |
| remove |
| telephone |

## Instructions for giving a cat a pill

I up the cat. 2 $\qquad$ it in your left arm like a baby.
3 your right forefinger and thumb at the sides of the cat's mouth and push the mouth open, holding the pill in your left hand. Put the pill into the cat's mouth.
$4 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. the cat close its mouth and swallow the pill.
Pick up the pill from the floor and $s$ $\qquad$ the. cat from behind the sofa. Pick up the cat. Hold it in your left arm like a baby and 6 $\qquad$ as before.
Fetch the cat from the bedroom and 7 the pill away. 8 another pill out of the packet. Hold the cat in your left arm, holding its back legs tightly with your left hand. 9 $\qquad$ the cat's mouth and push the pill to the back of the mouth with your right forefinger. Hold the mouth shut while you count to ten. 10 $\qquad$ the pill out of the goldfish bowl. Get the cat down from the top of the wardrobe. Wrap the cat in a towel. I $\qquad$ on the floor, holding the cat firmly between your knees. Put the pill in the end of a drinking straw. Force the cat's mouth open with a pencil and 12 $\qquad$ down the drinking straw.

Check the label to make sure the pill is not harmful to humans. 13 of water to take the taste away. Put a bandage on your arm and 14 the blood from the carpet with cold water and soap. 15 the fire brigade to get the cat down from the tree across the road.

16 $\qquad$ a new home for the cat. Get a dog.
6) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the following phrasal verbs: pick up, bring back, switch on, throw away, fill up. Write them here.

## special structures with verbs: revision test

(1) Which is/are correct? Circle the letter(s) of the correct sentence(s). One, two or more answers may be correct for each question.

1 A He picked up the plate.
B He picked the plate up.
C He picked up it.
D He picked it up.
2 Idon't repair my car myself. I ...
A repair it in the garage.
B let it repair in the garage.
C let repair it in the garage.
D have repaired it in the garage.
$E$ have it repaired in the garage.
$F$ have it repair in the garage.
3 A I sent some flowers to my mother.
B I sent some flowers my mother.
C I sent to my mother some flowers.
D I sent my mother some flowers.
4 A DO NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
B NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
C DON'T OPENTHIS WINDOW
D OPEN NOT THIS WINDOW
5 A Let's to play cards.
B Let's playing cards.
C Let's play cards.

6 A Let's not go home.
B Let's don't go home.
C Not let's go home.
D Let's go not home.
7 A I got out the bus at the station.
B I got off the bus at the station.
C I got on the bus at the station.
D I got down from the bus at the station.
8 A Don't listen to!
B Don't listen him!
C Don't listen!
D Don't listen to him!
9 A They're looking at a hotel.
B They're looking a hotel.
C They're looking for a hotel.
D They're looking to a hotel.
10 A I'm getting cold.
B Can you get some bread?
C Get out of here.
D Let's get married.
(2) Put in the correct preposition or - (= no preposition).
1What's happened
$\qquad$ Tom? He's an hour late.
I usually arrive $\qquad$ the station at 8.30.
3 'Have you lost something?' I'm looking $\qquad$ my keys.'
4 'You look happy.' 'Yes, I'm thinking $\qquad$ my holiday.'
5 I had to wait $\qquad$ the bus for half an hour this morning.
6 Have you paid $\qquad$ the tickets?
7 Could you look .................. the children for half an hour?
8 Who's paying $\qquad$ the bill for lunch?
9 My parents don't like me to ask $\qquad$ money.
10 I got $\qquad$ the bus and sat down.
11 Listen ................... this - it's really interesting.
12 Anna still believes ................... Father Christmas.
13 Do you belong .................... a political party?
14 I'll sing, but please don't laugh $\qquad$
15 I need to talk .................... the secretary.
16 Look....................! There's your brother.
17 I send money ................... my parents every week.
18 You can pay .................. the driver when you get $\qquad$ the bus.
19 They talked ................... sport all evening - it was very boring.
20 My girlfriend comes

- Ireland.


## SECTION 11 articles: $a / a n$ and the

## grammar summary

A/An shows that we are talking about one person or thing. We often use a/an:

- in descriptions

She's an interesting person. He's got a loud voice.

- when we say what something is, or what somebody's job is.

This is a return ticket. I'm an engineer.
The usually means 'You know which one(s) I'm talking about'.
Can l use the phone? (The hearer knows that this means 'your phone'.)
Nouns used without articles often have a special meaning.
I dislike cats. (This means 'all cats'.)
Most Western European languages have articles. So if you speak (for example) French, German, Spanish or Greek, you will not have too many problems with a/an and the: they are used mostly in the same way as your articles. There are a few differences: see pages 156-161. If you speak a non-Western-European language (for example Russian, Polish, Arabic, Chinese, Japanese), you may find articles more difficult. Study all of this Section, especially pages 154-155.

> There is a mountain far away.
> And on the mountain stands a tree.
> And on the tree there is a branch.
> And on the branch there is a nest.
> And in the nest there is an egg.
> And in the egg there is a bird.
> One day the bird will fly.
> One day we will be free.

## (old folk song)

An Englishman, an Irishman, a Scotsman and a Welshman went into a pub. The Englishman...

Shut the door and turn off the lights when you go, will you?

We've got offices in Australia, Canada and the United States.

He's a doctor and she's an engineer.


## a/an; pronunciation of the

We use a before a consonant sound (for example, the normal sound of $b, c, d, f, g, h$ ). abook a coat ahouse aletter anewidea

We use an before a vowel sound (for example, the normal sound of $a, e, i, o, u$ ).
anaddress an egg an idea anoldhouse

1) Putin a oran.

|  | > . . ... ticket | - . $\mathrm{A}^{\text {a }}$. afternoon | 1 ...... bicycle | 2 | ...... airport | 3 | ...... shop |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 4 ...... holiday | 5 ...... exercise | 6 ...... day | 7 | ..... American | 8 | ...... student |

We choose $a$ or an because of pronunciation, not spelling.

- a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /aus/ (the $h$ is silent, so hour is like our)
- an uncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'ou-ropean), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book
- an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun ...)


## 2. Put in adjectives.

| $\checkmark$ a car (expensive) | .an expensivecar........... | 5 an uncle (rich) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - an address (new) | .anewaddress | 6 a job (easy) |
| 1 a friend (old) |  | 7 an exercise (hard) |
| 2 an apple (big) |  | 8 a language (European) |
| 3 a child (unhappy) |  | 9 a book (small) |
| 4 a train (early) |  |  |

Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as / $\partial \boldsymbol{\partial} /$ (like the end of mother).
Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).

## 3 Pronounce:

the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the oldman the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform
(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: seven useful things

Complete the sentences with words from the box. Use $a$ or $a n$.
alarm clock calculator torch envelope hammer knife tin-opener

```
You use ..a t.........ener......... to open tins.
You can use ............................when you send a letter.
You can see at night with
You can put nails into wood with
........................ is useful for cutting things.
6 ....................... wakes you up in the morning.
```

2
5

Countable nouns are words like car, book, chair. They are the names of things that you can count: you can say 'one car, 'two books','three chairs'. They can be singular (a cat, one book) or plural (two chairs, lots of books).
Uncountable nouns are words like smoke, rice, water, petrol. These are things that you can't count: you can say 'smoke', but not 'one-smeke' or 'twe-fices' or 'three waters'. Uncountable nouns are only singular. (For more information, see page 198.)

(1) Singular countable, plural countable or uncountable? Write 'SC' (singular countable), 'PC' (plural countable) or 'U' (uncountable) against the words.


We use a/an only before singular countable nouns.
(A/An is a bit like one: you can't say efe houses or offeaif.)

| SINGULAR COUNTABLE | PLURAL COUNTABLE | UNCOUNTABLE |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| house <br> a car | houses (NOT aheuses) <br> cars | air (NOT aA aif) <br> petrol |

## (2) Put in alan or nothing (-).

- Jake's father makes ........... films.
- I need .......... new bicycle.

1 I never drink .......... milk.
2 Jane is ........... old friend.
3 Most ........... cars use $\qquad$ petrol.
4 I often listen to .......... music.
$\qquad$

5 The police are looking for him with $\qquad$ dogs.
6 My room has got .......... really big window.
7 That child wants ........... new shoes.
8 She was wearing .......... orange skirt.
9 They live in $\qquad$ very nice house.
10 I never have .......... sugar in .......... coffee.

We often use an uncountable noun (without a/an) to say what something is made of.
The walls in the house were all made of glass. This sweater is made of silk.
(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials. Put in words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
brick cotton glass leather metal plastic silk stone wood wool

- Shoes are made of ..eather or plastic.

1 Socks are made of
2 Cars are made of

3 Houses are made of $\qquad$
4 Shirts are made of
5 Tables are made of

We use one instead of a/an when the exact number is important. Compare:
Can I have a cheese sandwich? (NOT Ganthave one cheese sandwich?)
No, I asked for one sandwich, not two! I only want one sandwich.

## 4) Put in a/an or one.

- She's got .......... nice coat.
- She's only got .......... coat.
1 Can I have ........... boiled egg?
2 No, I said egg, not two.

3 l've got .......... problem. Can you help?
4 She's only got .......... child.
5 John's got .......... beautiful sister.
6 $\qquad$ girlfriend is enough.

## the and $a / a n$ Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.

We use the, not a/an, to talk about somebody or something, when the speaker and hearer both know about this person or thing; when they both know which one(s). In other cases we use alan.


Could you close the door?
(You know which door.)
I'm going to the post office.
(You know which one - the one near here.)
Can luse the phone? ( = 'your phone')
I didn't like the film. (= 'the one that we saw')
He looked at the moon. (There's only one.)
She's in the front room.
(You know which room - I'm telling you.)
She came on the 8.15 train.
(You know which train - I'm telling you.)
How much is the red coat?
(You know which coat - I'm telling you.)


A/AN
Could you open a window?
(I don't mind which window.)
Is there a post office near here?

Have you got a phone?
Let's go and see a film.
He looked at a tree.
I need a room for tonight.

She arrived in an old taxi.

I've just bought a new coat.

5 Where's .......... teacher? She's very late.
6 I want .......... long holiday in .......... sun.
7 Who's .......... man in your office?
8 I'm leaving on .......... 4.30 bus.
9 'Which is your coat?' '.......... green one.'
10 Claire's looking for .......... new job.
11 Why are you looking at .......... sky?
12 I'll meet you at 4.30 at .......... bus stop outside
.......... police station.

We use the before only; first, second etc; and superlatives like oldest, most (see page 223).
She's the only woman for me. Ilive on the second floor.
It's the oldest restaurant in Glasgow. He bought the most expensive one.
(2) Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an or the.

|  | Sarah's ..the.... |  | cup of coffee? ...... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | I've got .......... | B | first train tomorrow morning? ...... |
| 2 | John's.. | C | hottest day of the year. ..... |
| 3 | What time is . |  | most intelligent person in our family. ..... |
| 4 | Yesterday was .......... | E | only boy in the class. ...... |
| 5 | Would you like ..... | F | present for you. ...... |

We oft:n use alan to talk about a person or thing for the first time; and the when we talk about the person or thing again.

A man walked up to a policeman. Theman took out a map and asked the policeman ...
(3) Put in a/an or the.

## A BAGINABAG

 bag. $3 \ldots . . \ldots$..... assistant came up to me, and I told him what I wanted. $4 \ldots \ldots \ldots$. assistant brought me three different bags. I chose 5 $\qquad$ smallest one and paid for it. 6 $\qquad$ assistant put 7 bag in
$\qquad$ large plastic bag. I told him one bag was enough, and asked him to take 9 $\qquad$ bag out of $10 \ldots . . .$. . other bag. He did so, but he looked very unhappy as I walked out of $11 \ldots \ldots .$. ...... shop.

REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals. We can use the with plurals.
She's wearing black shoes. (NOT ... ablack shees:) She bought the shoes last week.GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: animals, birds and other creatures
Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the groups of pictures and complete the sentences. Put in a/an or the.

| ant camel d eagle frog monkey mouse (plural mice) | parrot | pigeon | snake | spider |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

## GROUP A

- This is a ..camel.... It's ..the........ biggest animal in ..the........ group

1 This is .............. It's ............... smallest animal in ............... group.
2 This is ............... It's ............... most intelligent $\qquad$

## GROUP B

3 This is ............... It's $\qquad$ fastest bird in $\qquad$ group.
4 This is ............... It's
It's
It's $\qquad$ smallest ..............
$\qquad$ in
5 This is $\qquad$ smallest

## GROUP C

6 This is $\qquad$ It's $\qquad$ only creature with eight legs in $\qquad$
7 This is ............... It's $\qquad$ creature with six legs in $\qquad$
8 This is ............... It's $\qquad$ with no legs $\qquad$
9 This is ............... It's ............... ................ green creature $\qquad$


In some answers, both contracted forms (for example l'm, don't) and full forms (for example Iam, donot) are possible. Normally both are correct.


ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE 155

We use a/an when we say what something is, or what job somebody does.
A pony is a small horse. Canada is a big country. My sister is an electrician. REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals.
Ponies are small horses. (NOT ... asmalt horses.)
(1) Say what these people's jobs are. Use the words in the box.

| builder <br> musician | cook dentist <br> photographer | doctor $\Omega$ driver hairdresser <br> shop assistant | teacher |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |

- She's a doctor.

1 He's a
2 He's
3 She's
4 He
5 She
6 She.
7 He.
8 She.
9 He

(2) Complete the sentences with your own ideas.
1 is a good film.
2 is a bad film.
3 is a terrible singer.
is an interesting book.
is a great man/woman.
are beautiful animals.
is a/an
(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: kinds of things Look up these words in a dictionary if necessary: building, (musical) instrument, vehicle, tool, container. Now change these to true singular sentences.

- Cars are buildings. .......................................
- Houses are instruments. .A...............................

1 Bags are vehicles.
2 Hammers are containers.
3 Pianos are buildings.
4 Buses are tools.
5 Screwdrivers are containers.
6 Guitars are tools.
7 Boxes are instruments.
8 Hotels are vehicles.

## a/an: describing people She's got a nice smile.

## We often use alan in descriptions.

She's got a quiet voice. (NOT ... the quiet voice:) He's got a friendly face.
REMEMBER: we don't use alan with plurals or uncountable nouns.
She's got blue eyes. (NOT ... abtueeyes.) He's got long hair. (NOT ... along half.)
1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the words in the box, and add alan if necessary.

| big beard | big ears | big nose $/$ | dark hair | long neck | loud voice | nice smile $/$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |


2) Here are two descriptions of the same person. Put in $a$ or nothing ( - ).


3 Write a short description (two or three sentences) of a friend of yours. Use some words from Exercises 1 and 2.

## DESCRIPTIONS WRITTEN BY ENGLISH 7-YEAR-OLDS

## My Friend

_by Mad
My friend is Annie Lydford. Annie's got short
He's got green eves ike the. He has got light brown hair in some places. hair and loves horses. Annie has blue eyes and a round head with a short haircut down to her furchead. Annies always happy and $6^{1}$. makes a really good friend.

## talking in general without the People are funny.

We do not normally use the to talk about people or things in general. The does not mean 'all'. We use the to talk about particular people or things (see page 154).

| GENERAL | PARTICULAR |
| :--- | :--- |
| People are funny. | The people in that house are funny. |
| I like music. | The music's too loud - can you turn it down? |
| Sugar is fattening. | Could you pass the sugar? |
| She's interested in dogs and horses. | 'Why are the dogs barking?' 'There's somebody outside.' |

1) Make some sentences from the words in the boxes.

| Artists Builders Cats | build don't eat don't like |
| :---: | :---: |
| Dogs Horses | eat learn like |
| Photographers Pianists | paint play sell take |
| Shop assistants | teach |
| Students Teachers |  |

cats dogs grass
houses meat
music photos
pictures things

```
D ...ogs don't like cats.........................................................
~ ...achers teach things.......................................................
1 ............................................................................
2 ......................................................................}
```


(2) Circle the correct forms.

- The old people Old people often forget the things/things.
- I like talking to the old ladies/old ladies who live in that house.

1 The books / Books are expensive in my country.
2 'Where shall I put the books / books?' 'On the floor.'
3 Japanese is a difficult language for the English people / English people.
4 The flowers / Flowers are beautiful. Thank you very much!
5 The life / Life is sometimes hard.
6 Idon't understand the words / words of that song.
7 The food / Food in this restaurant is very expensive.
8 The water / Water turns into the ice / ice at $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.
9 Why are the windows / windows open in this room?
3) Here are some common sayings about men and women (not all true!). Complete the sentences with words from the box, and give your opinion.

|  | drivers |  | money | thing | ing | in |  | derstand |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Men never ask the way when they're Lost $\qquad$ true / not true <br> Men are better $\qquad$ than women. true / not true <br> Women are more careful with $\qquad$ than men. true / not true <br> Women $\qquad$ men. Men don't $\qquad$ women. true / not true <br> Women $\qquad$ that men will change, but they don't. true / NOT true <br> Men don't $\qquad$ that women will change, but they do. TRUE / NOT TRUE <br> 6 Men pay too much for $\qquad$ that they want. Women buy $\qquad$ they don't want because they're cheap. true / not true |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |Read the two texts and then write one yourself.


(5)

Choose some words from the box to complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary. Don't use the!
art chess dancing football history music opera photography
poetry politics (singular) skating swimming tennis travel

```
| like
I don't like
I like ........................... better than
I love .........................., but I hate
I enjoy
I think .......................... is interesting, but
```

$\qquad$

```
m................... is difficult.
8 I'm good at ..........................., but l'm not so good at
I prefer ............................ to
                            to
I'm not interested in
Most people are interested in
Not many people are interested in
```

$\qquad$
7


## NAMES WITHOUT THE: PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, MOST PLACES

- people:

Mary works for Dr Andrews. (NOT The AAary ... the DfAAdrews:)
General Parker Prince Charles Aunt Elizabeth

- languages:

Sorry, I don't speak Russian. (NOT ... the Russian:)

- most place-names (for example continents, countries, states, lakes, mountains, towns, streets): 㴰

Barry's from Texas. (NOT ...the-Fexas:)
Africa Cuba Queensland Dublin Lake Geneva Mount Everest
Wall Street Piccadilly Circus Hyde Park Times Square
1 Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.
Lake Superior London Oxford Street Peru Queensland Spanish Uncle Eric
..Rueensland ....... is in Australia.
They speak .............................. in
Here's a postcard from .............................. He's been swimming in $\qquad$
3
is in the centre of

| Africa | France | Kilimanjaro | Napoleon | Switzerland |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

4 $\qquad$
5
is the highest mountain in
6 $\qquad$ is next to

## NAMES WITH THE: SOME PLACES

- deserts, rivers, seas and oceans (but not lakes!): the
the Sahara Desert the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic
plural names: the
the Netherlands the United States / the USA the Alps
- expressions with Republic/Kingdom/etc: the
the Czech Republic the United Kingdom
- large areas of the world: the
the West the Middle East the Far East
(2) Circle the correct answers.
- I once went on a boat on the Rhiney Lake Victoria.
- We're going to drive right across Europey Sahara Desert.

1 Ann's just come back from the Himalayas / Mount Everest.
2 My sister works in Netherlands / Denmark.
3 I'd like to learn Japanese / the Japanese.
4 My parents are on holiday in the South Africa / People's Republic of China.
5 Here's a photo of Max in USA / Trafalgar Square.
6 Alan's living in a small town near the Barcelona / Mediterranean.
7 We have friends in Ireland / Republic of Ireland.
8 Wales is the smallest country in the Great Britain / United Kingdom.
9 There are a lot of Spanish-speaking people in the USA / America.

BUILDINGS WITH THE

- most names of buildings: the the Hilton Hotel the Old Mill Restaurant the Globe Theatre the British Museum the Eiffel Tower the Taj Mahal the Great Pyramid


## EXCEPTIONS

- place-name + Airport, Station, Cathedral, University, Palace, Castle, School: the
Oxford Airport Glasgow Central Station Exeter Cathedral Cambridge University Buckingham Palace Didcot Junior School
- name + possessive 's:

St Paul's Cathedral McDonald's

the Globe Theatre

the Taj Mahal


3 Put the before five of these buildings, and nothing ( - ) before three.
$\qquad$ Taj Mahal $\qquad$ Halloran's Restaurant $\qquad$ Old Steak House
2.......... National Gallery of Modern Art 3 $\qquad$ Central Museum
$4 \ldots . . .$. . Birmingham Airport $5 \ldots . . .$. Sheraton Hotel 6 $\qquad$ New Theatre
7.
.......... Jenner's Hotel $8 . . . . . .$. . Canterbury Cathedral
(4) Put in the or nothing (-).


## special cases in bed; after lunch; a hundred;

## NO ARTICLE (DHE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (1)

- meals: bre
to nave breakiast/lunch/dinner; before/at/after/for breakfast etc
- days, dates, public holidays, months and years: the.
on Tuesday(s); on September 17th; at Christmas; in July; in 2006
- this/next/last + a day or longer period of time: the
this Monday; next Friday; last week; next month; this summer; last year
(1) Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.


| August 23rd | Christmas | last | September | 1616 | this |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

6 My holiday is in ............................. ................................ year.
7 Lindsay's birthday is on
8 Shakespeare died in
9 The whole family always comes together at $\qquad$
10 We went to California summer.

## NO ARTICLE THE COMMION EXPRESSIONS IVITHOUT THE 12!

- places and activities:
to/at/from school/university/college; to/in/out of church/prison/hospital/bed; at home; to/at/from work; on holiday
- transport: expressions with by: the
by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/underground/boat and on foot
(2) Complete the sentences with words from the box.
2 bed car church foot home holiday hospital prison school university work

1 I usually stay in ............................ late at the weekend.
2 Jake's going to ............................. to study business.
3 Most of the people in our village go to ............................... on Sundays.
4 I was in ............................. for a week when I broke my leg.

6 Uncle George comes out of ............................... in June.
7 I'm not going there on ............................... - it's raining.
8 'Is Kirsten at ...............................?' 'No, sorry, she's out.'
9 'Are you working in August?' 'No, I'm on
10 We had to learn Latin at

## A/AN (BEFORE SINGULAR COUNTABLE NOUNS)

- after with, without and as

I did the translation with a dictionary. (NOT ... with-dietionary.)
You can't get in without a ticket. (NOT ... witheut ticket.)
She's working as a bus-driver.

- after haven't/hasn't got

We haven't qot a fax. (NOT We haven't qot fax.)

- in exclamations with What ...!

What a crazy idea!

- before hundred/thousand/million a hundred days a thousand people a million dollars
(3) Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an.

| 0 | What | A | .......... American passport. ...... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | I didn't listen to the programme; I haven't got | B | .......... terrible day! ..... |
| 2 | I want a house with | C | .......... garden. ...... |
| 3 | I went to sleep on the sofa and used my coat as | D | .......... hundred times. ...... |
| 4 | I've told you | E | .......... million people in our city. ...... |
| 5 | There are about | F | .......... blanket. ...... |
| 6 | You can't work there without | G | .......... radio. ...... |
| 7 | Phil's working as | H | .......... stupid idea! ...... |
| 8 | What | 1 | .......... job. ...... |
| 9 | It's hard to live without | J | .......... tourist guide. ...... |

## THE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH THE <br> the same; the country/sea/mountains; on the right/left, at the top/bottom/side/front/back; in the middle; at/to the cinema/theatre; on the radio (BUT on TV <br> > Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is same eofour ...) We live in the country. I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea. Our house is the second on the right. Write your name at the top of the page. I don't often go to the cinema. <br> <br> Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is-same cotouf ...) We live in the country. <br> <br> Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is-same cotouf ...) We live in the country. I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea. Our house is the second on the right. I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea. Our house is the second on the right. Write your name at the top of the page. I don't often go to the cinema.

 Write your name at the top of the page. I don't often go to the cinema.}
## (4) Make sentences.

- Anne's house / the first / left Anne's house is the first. a the Left

1 Patrick and I work / same office
2 We / going / theatre / tonight
3 My room / top / house
4 Would you like / live / country?
5 We usually go / mountains / Christmas
6 Joe always sits / back / class
7 Suzie's office / right
8 I would like / live near / sea
9 Why are you driving / middle / road?
10 Please sign your name / bottom / this paper

## POSSESSIVES

We don't use a/an or the with my, your etc (see page 188).
your address (NOT the your address) my friend / a friend of mine (NOT amyfriend)

## articles: more practice

(1) Mixed article uses. Put in $a$, an, the or nothing (-).
1 My sister lives in $\qquad$ big flat.
2 'Where's phone?' 'In $\qquad$ kitchen.'
3 Andy's brother is .......... architect.
4 I'm taking .......... 10.15 train.
5 Most people like $\qquad$ animals.
6 Do you play tennis?
7 .......... music's too loud - please turn it down.
8 All our furniture is made of $\qquad$ wood.
9 Carola has got $\qquad$ beautiful brown eyes.
10 I don't want to be student for the next five years.
$\qquad$

11 I'm not interested in $\qquad$ politics.
11
12 Can I switch on .......... lights?
13
14

## 15

16
17 18

$$
19
$$

20 Perhaps. vegetarians don't eat . . meat.
$\qquad$ petrol is very expensive these days.
We haven't seen $\qquad$ sun for a week.
Where did you put .......... butter?
I often listen to $\qquad$ music when I'm driving. .......... life is sometimes hard.
I don't like $\qquad$ fish.
than people are more interesting grammar.
(2) Names and special article uses. Correct $(\mathcal{J})$ or not $(x)$ ?

1 The Canada is a big country.
2 Have you ever seen Eiffel Tower?
3 Andy works at Apollo Theatre.
4 The River Rhone runs into the Mediterranean Sea.
5 Hello. I'm at the Oxford Station.

6 Would you like to work as teacher?
7 He was in bed at 10.00.
8 We live in a small town in south.
9 Please write your address at the top of the page.
10 Idon't eat much for the lunch. ......
3) Countable or uncountable? How many countable and uncountable nouns can you find in these advertisements?


Learn to take better photos!
Por information, call 13462

## We have the best

coffee


COUNTABLE:

UNCOUNTABLE: $\qquad$
$\qquad$
4. Grammarin a text. Put in $a$, an, the or nothing ( - ).


(5) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials

## Learn some or all of the words in the box. Use a dictionary. Then write some sentences to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.

$$
\begin{array}{lccccccc}
\hline \text { brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper } & \text { cher } \\
\text { plastic } & \text { rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool }
\end{array}
$$

$\rightarrow$ Mu shoes aremade of leather and nubber. (NOT ......the teather......)
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
6. Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Britain, Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly.
1 a river
2 a lake
3 a mountain
4 a part of the country
5 a hotel
6 a station
7 an airport
8 a tourist attraction
9 a cathedral
10 a museum

## articles: revision test

1) Put in $a$ or an.

| 1 | .......... address | 5 | .......... bus | 9 | .......... one-pound coin |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | .......... student | 6 | ......... old woman | 10 | ......... uncle |
| 3 | .......... English student | 7 | .. house |  |  |
| 4 | .......... university student | 8 | .......... hour's lesson |  |  |

(2) Countable or uncountable? Put in a or nothing (-).
1 Idon't like beer.
I prefer $\qquad$ dogs to $\qquad$
2 Peter is .......... very good friend.
3 Does your car use petrol or $\qquad$
6 My flat has got $\qquad$ very small kitchen. diesel?
4 Do you listen to music while you're studying?
(3) Put in $a$, an, the or nothing (-).

1 Rob has got ........... very long hai
2 .......... books are very expensive.
3 .......... life can be difficult.
4 Ayesha's leaving on .......... 10.30 plane.
5 Do you drink .......... beer?
6 'Where's .......... toilet?' 'At the top of .......... stairs.'
7 I like watching sport on TV.
8 My second brother is $\qquad$ engineer.
9 It's hot in here. Can I open $\qquad$ windows?
10 She stood at her door for a long time looking at .......... moon.

12 John's very interested in $\qquad$ science.
13 I liked everything in the film except
$\qquad$
14 Why did you put $\qquad$ shoe in $\qquad$ fridge?
15 These socks are made of $\qquad$ silk.
16 I watch $\qquad$ football, but I don't play it.
17 I'd like to be $\qquad$ student again.
18 My mother thinks animals are nicer than people.

19 $\qquad$ children don't usually like vegetables.
20 Andy lives in $\qquad$ houseboat.

11 Most people like children.

## (4) Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

- I live in the France. France
- I was born in London. correct

1 Can I speak to the Professor Anderson?
2 Greek is a difficult language.
3 We've just been to Czech Republic.
4 The Soviet Union was founded in 1922.
5 She's from Texas.
6 Carol has just spent two months in hospital.
7 I'll see you the next Tuesday.
8 You can't go there without passport
9 Joe's studying to be doctor.
10 In Britain people drive on the left.

## grammar summary

this, that, these, those some, any, no enough all, each, every, both, either, neither much, many, a little, a few more, most a lot, lots (alan, the) (my, your etc)

Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before adjectives. Determiners help to show which or how many people/things we are talking about.
this old coat some strange ideas all English words enough people

Most determiners are explained and practised in this section. A/An and the have a separate section on pages 151-166. My, your etc are explained together with pronouns on pages 188-189.
Somebody, anything, nowhere etc are included here. These are not determiners, but it is more convenient to deal with them in this section.


TENTS AND SLEEPING BAGS


We can use this and these to talk about things that are here, near to us. We can use that and those to talk about things that are there, not near.

(1) Put in this or these.

- Do you like
this dress?
1 Do you like .................... shoes?
2 .................... cat sleeps all day.
3 ................... tomatoes are not very good.
4
letters are for you.
5 Idon't understand $\qquad$ word.

(2) Put in that or those.
- Ann lives in ..that ........... house over there.

1 Who are ................... people?
2 Could you pass me papers?
3 I don't think ............... train is ours.
4
.................... glasses look very nice.
5 Why is she running after $\qquad$ man?
(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cutlery and crockery

Use the words in the box to make ten or more sentences about the colours of the things in the picture. Use a dictionary if necessary.

| cup plate saucer knife $\Omega$ fork spoon | glass | napkin jug bowl |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

[^9]$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$


We can use this and these to talk about things that are happening now or starting now. We can use that and those to talk about things that are finished.

## Ilike this music. Listen to these sentences.

That lesson was boring. Did you answer those letters yesterday?

## 4) Circle the correct answer.

- Do Did you like that film?

1 I'm enjoying / I enjoyed these lessons.
2 This game was / will be hard.
3 These / Those potatoes weren't very nice.
4 That holiday is/was great!
5 Do you remember this / that funny hotel in France?
6 May I have this / that dance with you?
7 I'm going to enjoy this / that meal.
8 That political speech is / was really stupid.
9 Did you understand this / that explanation?
10 Listen to this / that letter from Karen.

We can use this, that, these and those without nouns.
I don't like this. Look at these. Who said that? Those are pretty.
We can use this to introduce people, and to introduce ourselves on the telephone.

## This is my friend Carla. This is Alex. Can I speak to Fred?

## 5) Put in this, that, these or those.

I don't like living in ..this.................. country.
Could you bring ......................... box to me, please?
Why did you say ..........................?
$\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. is Peter - is Mary at home?
Who are ......................... people over there?
Listen - you'll like .......................... story.
Wait - I can't walk fast in .......................... shoes.
'......................... is my sister Helen.' 'How do you do?'
8
was a wonderful meal - thanks.
9 I'm not enjoying conversation.
10 Do you remembe people that we met in Greece?
Let's leave party.
The meal was nice, but I didn't like wine much.
Could you take ........................ letters to the post office?
14 I thought Geoff looked silly in $\qquad$ shorts.
15 Is $\qquad$ your mother coming out of the police station?
16 Where are you? I can't see very well with $\qquad$ glasses.
17 We're going to win match. You wait and see.
18 What are birds on the roof?
19 I can't eat apple - it's too hard.
20 I'll never forget ten days with Barbara.


He's got some problems.


She hasn't got any problems.

We use some and any, not $a / a n$, with uncountable and plural nouns.
They mean'a limited number or quantity'.
We use some in affirmative ( + ) sentences.
We use any in negative ( - ) sentences, and in most questions.
l'd like some water. Here are some flowers for you.
I haven't got any money. There aren't any trains today.
Have you got any sugar? Do you speak any other languages?
(1) Circle the correct answers.

- I'd like some ' any help.

1 There aren't some / any letters for you.
2 Have you got some / any brothers or sisters?
3 We need some / any more milk.
4 She's got some / any interesting friends.

5 Are there some / any restaurants near here?
6 I'm having some / any problems with my car.
7 I didn't have some / any breakfast today.
8 He hasn't done some / any work for ten years.
9 Do you know some / any Americans?
(2) Complete the sentences with any and words from the box.

| English newspapers | games | foreign languages | help $\Omega$ more to drink sleep |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

- Harriet likes to do things by herself: she doesn't want ......y.help...

1 No, I'm not thirsty - I don't want
2 Joe doesn't speak
3 Our team hasn't won this year.
4 Ididn't get ................................................. last night.
5 Icouldn't find ....................................................... the shop.

We use some in questions which expect the answer 'Yes' - for example offers or requests.
Would you like some more coffee? Could I have some bread?
(3) Write sentences with some.

1 (Ask for coffee) Could I have
2 (Offer bread) Would you like
3 (Offer rice)
4 (Ask for tomatoes)
5 (Offer more potatoes)
6 (Ask for more milk)

We use any with words like never, without or hardly (='almost not'), which have negative meanings.
They never give me any help. I got there without any difficulty. You made hardly any mistakes.
(4) Put the beginnings and ends together.

| 0 | I finished the work without |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1 | I was tired, so I went to bed without |
| 2 | I'm going to do |
| 3 | Yesterday we had |
| 4 | In July we hardly had |
| 5 | She never does |
| 6 | You're hungry. I'll make you |

A any rain.
B some rain, at last. ......
C any work in the garden. ......
D some work in the house. ......
E any supper.
F some supper. ......
G any help. .

We can use some and any without nouns if the meaning is clear.
'Can you lend me some money?' 'Sorry, I haven't got any.' I need some more envelopes.' 'I'll bring you some.'
5 Complete the answers with words from the box and put in some or any.
buy good got $\checkmark$ more $\checkmark$ put tomorrow want you

- 'How many children has he got?' 'He hasn't .. aot any..........'
- 'This is wonderful soup.' 'Have . Some more .....'

1 'How much did the flowers cost?' 'I didn't
2 'We need light bulbs.' 'I'll get
3 'Where's the sugar?' 'There's in front of
4 'Why didn't you buy any cheese?' 'Because I didn't
5 'Shall we go to the cinema?' 'There aren't ..............................................................
6 'The car needs oil.' 'But l've just in.'

NOTE: Any is used in negative sentences, but is not negative. Not ... any (or no - see page 114) is negative.
Sorry, I haven't got any time / l've got no time. (NOT Serfy, f've got any time.)
6 Complete the sentences with negative past-tense verbs. Use words from the box.
ask be do find get $\Omega$ have

(7) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: possessions

Have you got any of the things in the box? Use a dictionary if necessary. Write some sentences with some or any.

| aspirins | ballpoint pens | dollars | jewellery | keys love letters |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| make-up | red shoes | stamps | string | ties | white socks |

I've got some ballpoint pens. I haven't got any red shoes

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
somebody someone something somewhere anybody anyone anything anywhere
nobody no one nothing nowhere everybody everyone everything everywhere

Somebody and someone mean the same; so do anybody and anyone etc.
The difference between somebody etc and anybody etc is the same as the difference between some and any (see pages 170-171). For every, see page 179.
Somebody telephoned for you. Has anybody seen my keys? She didn't speak to anyone. l've got something for you. Do you want anything from the shops? He lives somewhere in London. She never goes anywhere. Nothing happened. Everyone knew that.

## (1) Complete the words.

| - Is .any . body at home? | 7 'Where did you go at the weekend?' |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 'What did you say?' 'No..............' | ..............where - we stayed at home.' |
| 2 I haven't seen Amy ..............where. | 8 I want to tell you some. |
| 3 There's .............one at the door. | 9 Every............. in my family has blue eyes. |
| 4 Can I do any............ to help? | 10 Idon't know ..............body who plays rugby. |
| 5 You can find Coca-Cola every.. | 11 Every............. in this shop is expensive. |
| 6 No.............. understands me. | 12 I want to live ..............where warm. |

(2) These are sentences from real conversations. Can you complete them with somebody, anything etc?
1 Does $\qquad$ want to speak about that?
2 The poor woman has . to go.
5 Ten people in one room with no bath, no water,
6 What can you buy for a woman who has
3 It doesn't cost said 'thank you': not one man. $\qquad$

After nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything and nothing we use singular verbs.
Everybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.) Everything is OK. Nothing happens here.
(3) Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms.
agree be be happen have know

| 1 | Nobody ................ where she lives. | $4 \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . .$. everybody here? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Everything ................. to me. | 5 ................. everybody got a drink? |
| 3 | Everything .............. interesting to somebody. | 6 No one .................. with me. |

One negative word (like nothing, never, not) is normally enough (see page 115).
She never says anything. (NOT She fever says Aothifg. OR She doesf't faver ...)
(4) Correct $(\checkmark)$ or not $(x)$ ?

1 We couldn't find a hotel nowhere. $\qquad$
2 Does anybody know Penny's phone number? $\qquad$
3 Can lask you something? $\qquad$
4 Nobody want to go home. ......
5 Idon't want something, thank you. ......

6 Don't say nothing to Alan about Olivia. ......
7 Everybody needs help sometimes. ......
8 Do anybody want another drink?
9 Anybody doesn't understand me. ......
10 I don't never want to take nothing from nobody. ......

Note the difference between no one and none. No one means 'nobody'; none means 'not any'.
No one can help me. I wanted some plums, but there were none in the shop.

We use much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and many with plurals. Do you listen to much music? Do you go to many concerts?


Put in much or many.

- She doesn't speak ................... English.
- She doesn't buy .......ny........ clothes.

1 I haven't got .................... time.
2 Do you play .................... football?
3 There aren't ..................... people here.
4 Are there .................. Americans in your company?
5 We don't have ................... rain in summer.
6 I don't eat .................... meat.
7 Have you travelled to ..................... countries?
8 We don't watch .................... films.
9 Was there .................... traffic on the road?
10 Not .................... tourists visit our town.
11 Do you know .................... songs?
12 She doesn't have .................... trouble with English.
13 There aren't ................... birds in the garden.
14 She doesn't get ................... money in her new job.
15 There hasn't been .................... rain this year.
We use how much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and how many with plurals.
How much milk do you want? How many languages are there in the world?
2 Write the questions. Do you know the answers? (See the bottom of the page.)

- plays / Shakespeare / write .How many plays did Shakespeare write?
plays / Shakespeare / write $\ldots$.....
1 symphonies / Beethoven / write
2 cents/in a dollar are there
3 kilometres / in a mile
4 states / in the USA

6 air / we breathe / every minute .............................................. do we

8 food / an elephant / eat every day

So many worlds, so much to do, so little done.
(Alfred Lord Tennyson)

都
We can use much and many without nouns if the meaning is clear.
'Have you got any money?' 'Not much.' 'How many people were there?' 'Not many.'

Much and many are used mostly in questions and negatives. They are unusual in spoken affirmative ( + ) sentences. In an informal style, we prefer expressions like a lot of (see page 174).
'Do you get much snow in winter?' 'Not much, but we get a lot of rain.' (NOT ... we get muth-fain.)
'Have you got many English friends?' 'No, I haven't got many English friends. But l've got a lot of American friends.'
(NOT USUALLY ... t've got many Ameriean friends:)


## A lot of and lots of are common in an informal style. They mean the same.

 I haven't got a lot of time just now. He's got lots of money and lots of friends.We can use both expressions before singular (uncountable) or plural nouns.

- a lot of / lots of + singular subject: singular verb

A lot of his work is good. Lots of his work is good. (NOT tots of his-work are good.)

- a lot of / lots of + plural subject: plural verb

A lot of his ideas are good. (NOT A tot of his ideas is good.) Lots of his ideas are good.
If we use a lot or lots without a noun, we don't use of.
'Have you got a lot of work?' 'Yes, a lot.' (NOT Kes, a fotef.)

## (1) Circle the correct answer.

1 Lots of people have / has computers now.
2 There is / are lots of cinemas near here.
3 Lots of snow has / have fallen today.
4 'Problems?' 'Yes, a lot / a lot of.'

5 A lot of my friends work/works in London.
6 'Any letters for me?' 'A lot / A lot of.'
7 A lot of things need/needs to change.
8 There is / are lots of food in the fridge.

In affirmative ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ ) sentences in conversation, a lot of and lots of are more natural than much/many (see page 173).
We eat a lot of vegetables.
(NOT We eat many vegetables.)
This car uses lots of petrol.
(NOT This caf uses fluch petrot.)

a lot of / lots of teeth

Plenty of can be used in the same way as a lot of / lots of.

## 2 Put in plenty of with words from the box.

| eggs food ideas paint $\mathcal{A}$ patience time warm clothes water |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

What do you need:

- if you're painting a big house? ..plenty of.paint. 4 if you're in the Arctic?

1 if you're very hungry? .......................... 5 if you're making a big omelette?
2 if you've got a lot of work? ............................. 6 if you're crossing the desert?
3 if you work with small children? ......................... 7 if you're writing a novel?
(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: towns

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write four sentences about a town, using a lot of / lots of / plenty / not much / not many.

| bookshops cinemas hotels industry libraries markets nightlife <br> parks restaurants theatres traffic |
| :--- |

[^10]We use a little with singular (uncountable) nouns, and a few with plurals.
If you're hungry, we've got a little soup and a few tomatoes.


Put in a little or a few.



Little and few (without $a$ ) have a rather negative ( - ) meaning (like not much/many).
A little and a few have a more positive ( + ) meaning (like some).
We've got a little food in the house if you're hungry. (='some, better than nothing')
There was little food in the house, so we went to a restaurant. (='not much, not enough')
His lesson was very difficult, but a few students understood it. (= 'more than I expected')
His lesson was so difficult that few students understood it. (='not many, hardly any')
Circle the correct answer.

- I havelittley a little time to read newspapers and no time at all to read books.

1 Come about 8 o'clock; l'll have little / a little time then.
2 There was little / a little water on the mountain, and we all got very thirsty.
3 Foreign languages are difficult, and few / a few people learn them perfectly.
4 I'm going to Scotland with few / a few friends next week.
5 l've brought you few/a few flowers.
6 Life is very hard in the Arctic, so few / a few people live there.
7 She was a difficult woman, and she had few / a few friends.
8 'Would you like something to drink?' 'Little / A little water, please.'

## Little and few are rather formal; in conversation we use not much/many or only a little/few.

There wasn't much food in the house. OR There was only a little food in the house.
The lesson was so difficult that not many / only a few students understood it.

Make these sentences more conversational.

- I speak little English.
! only speak a little English OR ..... don't speak much English.
1 There was little room on the bus.
2 Few people learn foreign languages perfectly.
3 She has few friends.
4 We get little rain here in summer.
5 This car uses little petrol.
6 There are few flowers in the garden.
7 Our town gets few tourists.
8 We have little time to catch the train.

We can use (a) little and (a) few without nouns if the meaning is clear.
'Have you got any money?' 'A little.' 'Did you buy any clothes?' 'A few.'

## enough money; fast enough

## We put enough before nouns.

Have you got enough money for the bus? There aren't enough plates for everybody.
1 Look at the pictures and complete the descriptions.


1 not

strings


3
seats


4

2 Use enough with words from the box to complete the sentences.
buses $\int$ chairs girls money salt time work

- You need a car in our village, because there aren't ..enough buses.

1 Have you got to finish the work?
2 There were plenty of boys at the party, but not $\qquad$
3 We couldn't sit down because there weren't
4 I won't pass the exam because I haven't done
5 l've got just
for a ticket to America.
6 This soup isn't very nice. There's not in it.

We put enough after adjectives and adverbs.
This room isn't big enough. (NOT ... enoughbig) You're not walking fast enough.
3
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives
Check the words in the box with a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the list with not ... enough.
bright clear comfortable deep easy fresh interesting $\mathcal{J}$ loud

## POSSIBLE PROBLEMS

| - a book | not interesting enough. | 4 | an exercise |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 an alarm clock | . | 5 | an explanation |
| 2 a chair |  | 6 | eggs |
| 3 a lamp |  | 7 | a swimming pool |

POSSIBLE PROBLEMS
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
(4) Put enough with each word.


## We can use enough without a noun if the meaning is clear.

'More coffee?' 'No, thanks. l've got enough.'

## too, too much/many and not enough

We use too with adjectives and adverbs. We use too much/many with nouns. These give the opposite meaning to 'not enough'.
This coffee's too cold. (NOT ... toe much celd ...) He drives too fast. l've got too much work and not enough time. You ask too many questions.

1 Put in too, too much or too many.

| 1 | old | 6 | work |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | . trouble | 7 | hot |
| 3 | . problems | 8 | students |
| 4 | money | 9 | cars |
| 5 | ill | 10 | difficult |

(2) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then change the expressions.

| cheap | dry expensive fast $\Omega$ | hard heavy high light low |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| narrow | short | slow $\Omega$ | soft tall thick thin wet | wide |


|  | not fast enough = ..too.slow | 4 not hard enough = |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | too slow = ..not fast enough. | 5 too narrow |
| 1 | not high enough | 6 too expensive |
| 2 | not tall enough = | 7 too dry $=$ |
|  | not heavy enough = | 8 too thick = |

3) A man is going walking in the mountains for three days. Look at the things that he is taking and give your opinion, using (not) enough or too much/many. Use a dictionary if necessary.

| HE IS TAKING |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| 1 packet of soup |  |
| 1 camera |  |
| 8 maps |  |
| 5 pairs of socks | 1 |
| 1 pair of boots | 2 |
| 3 pocket torches | 3 |
| 1 tube of sun-cream | 4 |
| 2 waterproof jackets | 5 |
| 2 pairs of sunglasses | 6 |
| 10 kg of bread | 7 |
| 2 kg of cheese | 8 |
| 100 cl of water | 9 |
| 1 orange | 10 |
| 1 bar of chocolate | 11 |
| 1 small bar of soap | 12 |
| 3 toothbrushes | 13 |



## all all my friends are here; my friends are all here

## All can go with a noun or with a verb.

All the trains stop at Cardiff. The trains all stop at Cardiff.

## All the courses begin on Monday. The courses all begin on Monday.

All birds lay eggs. Birds all lay eggs.
All my clothes need cleaning.
My clothes all need cleaning.
(1) Change the sentences.

- All my family like travelling.

My family all like travelling

- The buses all run on Sundays

All the buses mun on sundays
1 All the films start at 7 o'clock.
2 Our secretaries all speak Arabic.
3 The children all went home.
4 All these coats cost the same.
5 All languages have grammar.
6 The people all voted for the Radical Conservatives.

7 All my friends live in London.
8 These houses all need repairs.
9 All those shops belong to the same family.

10 Children all need love.

Note the word order when all goes with a verb. All goes:
1 before one-word verbs
The guides all speak German. The visitors all arrived this morning. We all got up late.
2 after auxiliary verbs (will, have, can etc) and after are and were.
The guides can all understand Spanish. (NOT ...all ean thderstend Spanish.)
The visitors have all arrived. (NOT ... all have arrived.) We were all tired. (NOT We all-were-tired.)
(2) Put all with the verb.

- Cars break down sometimes. cars all break down sometimes

1 The offices close at weekends.
2 The lessons will start on Tuesday.
3 These children can swim.
4 Our windows are dirty.
5 Sorry, the tickets have gone.
6 We went to New York for Christmas.
7 The shops will be open tomorrow.
8 We stopped for lunch at 12.30 .
9 These watches are too expensive.
10 The lights have gone out.

We don't normally use all without a noun to mean 'everybody' or 'everything'.
Everybody knows that. (NOT Alt kfow 执at:) l've forgotten everything. (NOT l've.forgotea. att.)

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights.
(Universal Declaration of Human Rights)

Justice is open to all people in the same way as the Ritz Hotel.
(Judge Sturgess)

## all and every; each

## We use every with singular nouns and verbs. Compare:

## All people are interesting. $\quad$ Every person is interesting. (NOT Every person are ...) All teachers make mistakes. Every teacher makes mistakes. <br> We can use other determiners (the, my, this etc) after all, but not after every. Compare: <br> All the shops were closed. | Every shop was closed. (NOT Every the shep ...) <br> Rewrite the sentences with every.

- All the buses were late. .. Every bus was late

1 All animals breathe air.
2 She's read all the books in the library.
3 I paid all the bills.
4 All the computers are working today.
5 All languages have verbs.
6 All London trains stop at Reading.
7 l've written to all the customers.
8 All the glasses are dirty.
9 All children can be difficult.
10 All the roads were closed.

Each and every are similar. We use each for two or more, but we use every for three or more.
She had a bag in each hand. (NOT ... in-evefy hafd.) She had a ring on each/every finger.
2. Can you change each to every in these sentences?

- He's got six earrings in each ear. ......:
- I work each day except Sunday. ..〕.........every...................................

1 There's a pub on each side of the road.
2 She wrote a careful answer to each letter.
3 He works in London and Paris, and he's got a girlfriend in each city.

4 She wears a watch on each wrist.
5 My parents are strange, but each one is strange in a different way.

6 Each house in this street looks the same.

Note the difference between every day (= 'on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays etc') and all day
(='from morning to night').
The restaurant is open all day, every day except Sunday.
'Behind every successful man
is a good woman.' (Traditionan
'Behind every successful woman stands a good man, looking rather confused.' (E Stabetsi)
'Behind every successful man stands a surprised mother-in-law.' (Hubert Humphrey)
'Behind every successful man is a woman, behind her is his wife.' (Groucho Marx)

```
    We use both, either and neither to talk about two people or things.
    Both ( = 'one and the other') has a plural noun.
    Either ( }\sigma=\mathrm{ 'one or the other') has a singular noun.
    Neither ( }=\mathrm{ ='not either, not one and not the other') has a singular noun.
    'Are you free on Monday or Wednesday?' I'm free on both days.'
    'Which day is better for you?' 'Either day is OK.'
    'About four o'clock?' 'No, sorry, I'm not free on either afternoon.'
    'What about Thursday or Saturday, then?' 'No, neither day is any good.'
1) Put in both, either or neither.
    1 ............. children are very tall.
    2 I'm busy on
```

$\qquad$

``` afternoons.
3 'Which room can I have?' 'You can have ............... room. ............... rooms have a view of the sea.'
4
students tried the exam, but  student passed.
5 I'm lucky - I can write with
``` \(\qquad\)
``` hand.
It's very heavy: use ............... hands to carry it.
7
``` \(\qquad\)
``` coat will look good on you. Why don't you buy one of them?
8 I don't like
................ coat. And
``` \(\qquad\)
``` coats are very expensive.
9 'Do you want your holiday in July or August?' :
``` \(\qquad\)
``` month will be fine.'
10 .............. my brothers studied medicine, but
``` \(\qquad\)
``` brother works as a doctor.
11 I paid for
``` \(\qquad\)
``` tickets - Ann's and mine.
12 'What do precipitate and recursion mean?' 'I don't know word.'
```

(2) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that come in twos

Make sure you know all these words. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences, using both.

| ankle d direction earring end eye knee parent sex side sock team |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

I hurt ..both ankles ................ playing football.
1 Cars are parked on
2 .................... her of the road.

3 Traffic on the road was very slow in
4.

5 She hurt are playing really badly.

6 I've lost ................... my ................... - have you seen them anywhere?
7 Police were stopping cars at $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$ of the bridge.
8 That child has got holes in of his
9 I need new glasses. Both
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

10 His shop sells clothes for $\qquad$

We use determiners (some, any, much, many, more, most, few, enough etc) with of before other determiners (the, this, my etc) and before personal pronouns (it, us etc).

## DETERMINER + OF

- before the: some of the people here
- before this etc: too many of those books
- before my etc: a few of our friends
- before it, us etc: enough of it most of them


## DETERMINER WITHOUT OF

```
some people (NOT some ef people)
too many books l'vegot too many.
a few friends She has a few.
enough milk moststudents
```


## (1) Change the expressions.

| - some houses (those) | . some of those houses. | 6 most mistakes (these) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 not much milk (the) |  | 7 too many students (the) |
| 2 any friends (my) |  | 8 more potatoes (those) |
| 3 enough meat (that) |  | 9 not much money (my) |
| 4 some big plates (the) |  | 10 not enough work (his) |
| 5 a few ideas (her) |  |  |

## 2 Put in of or nothing (-).

|  | Some ........ people don't like her. | 6 There wasn't enough ........ food for everybody. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Some ..of... the people in the class don't like her. | 7 I didn't have much ........ time to talk to her. |
| 1 | Can you lend me some more ........ money? | 8 A few ........ us want to change things. |
| 2 | I've lost some ........ the addresses. | 9 I spend a lot ........ my time in Scotland. |
| 3 | I don't like many ........ his books. | 10 We haven't got any more ....... eggs. |
| 4 | She knows a few ........ those people. | 11 I've got some ........ bread, but not much |
|  | 'Do you like jazz singers?' 'Some | 12 She didn't understand much ........ it. |

Note the difference between most people/things (in general) and most of the people/things ( particular ones).
Most people like dancing. Most of the people at the party were dancing.
You can pay by credit card in most shops. Most of the shops here are open on Sundays.
Put in most or most of the.


NOTE: we often drop of after all and both. After a lot / lots / plenty we always use of with a noun or pronoun (see page 174).
All (of) my friends. Both (of) her parents. a lot of problems, (NOT a tet problems)

## determiners: more practice

(1) Demonstratives; some and any. Put in the correct forms.

- Have you got ..any. shampoo? (some / any)
1 Listento You'll love it! (this / that)
2 I didn't like film yesterday. (this / that)
3 Who are people in John's car? (these / those)
4 is my friend Beth.' 'How do you do?' (this / that)
5 'Look at earrings.' 'Where?' 'On my ears, of course!' (these / those)
6 You never tell me about your work. (something / anything)
7 Ididn't have breakfast this morning. (some / any)
8 'This is good ice cream.' 'Would you likemore?' (some / any)
9 'What are you thinking about?' : (Anything / Nothing)
10 We got to London any difficulty. (with / without)

2) Mixed determiners. Put in all, each, every, everybody, everything, both, either or neither.
1 Has ..... student arrived?
2 Hold the string at ..... end.
6 ‘Tea or coffee?’No,thanks.'
3 Tell me
$\qquad$
7 I can write with ..... hand.
4 She stayed in bed day yesterday
8 I can write with ..... hands.
5 We're open day except Tuesday.
9 Do you know ..... here?
10 Not animals can swim.
(3) Mixed determiners. Circle the correct forms.
1 Can I give you my answer tomorrow? I need little / a little time to think.
2 His ideas are so difficult that few / a few people understand them.
3 There were only a little / a few people at the meeting.
4 I'd like to ask you few / a few questions, if I may.
5 Too much work, too little / few time.
6 James always has much / lots of money.
7 Were there much / many girls at the party?
8 A lot of my friends think / thinks l'm wrong
9 Am I driving too / too much fast?
10 Are those shoes big enough / enough big?
3) Of with determiners. Put in the correct forms.
1 the children enjoyed the show. (Most / Most of)
people like animals. (Most / Most of the) ..... 2
3 us are meeting at Joe's tomorrow evening. (A few / A few of)
4 Have you seen good films recently? (any / any of)
5 l've invited my friends to come round this evening. (some / some of)
6 She finished the work, but not ..... it.
(most / most of / all / all of)
7 Have you got milk? (enough / enough of)
8 You ask questions. (too many / too many of)
9 'How many books have you got to read?' '.$\therefore$ (A lot / A lot of)
10 Idon't like these books. (many / many of)

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives with somebody etc. Check that you know all the adjectives in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.


## Now find these in the picture. Write the letters.

- something high .....

1 something big
2 something small $\qquad$
something red

4 something round $\qquad$
5 something fast
6 somebody old
7 somebody young $\qquad$

## Now write your own examples for:

## - something sour a lemon

1 somewhere very hot
2 somewhere warm
3 something sweet
4 something useful

5 somebody intelligent
6 something interesting
7 something useless
8 something boring
9 somebody nice
6) Grammar in a text. Circle the correct forms.

## SOME STATISTICS

Those who always know better: perhaps half us / half of us.

## مرجغنبانايانيان

Those who are not sure: most the rest / most of the rest.
Those who don't know how to be bad: very few / few of.
Those who think they are important: a lot / a lot of.
Those who are always afraid of someone or something: most us / most of us.
Those who are glad to help, if it doesn't take too long: nearly half / half of.
Those who can be happy: some us / some of us, not very many.
Those who are kind alone but cruel in crowds: half or more.
Those who will kill you if they think they have to: it's best not to know how many / how many of.
Those who only take from life and give nothing: maybe $30 \%$ (I wish I were wrong).
Those who are lost and ill in the dark: nearly everybody, sooner or later.
Those who are good: a lot la lot of.
Those who are good and understanding: hardly anybody.
Those that we should feel sorry for: almost everybody.
Those who are dead at the end: all us / all of us.
adapted from a poem by Wistawa Szymborska
Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google).
How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?
"too much fast" . . 40,700
"everybody is"
"everything are"
"most people"
"too fast" .10,900,000: Correct
"everybody are"
"everything is"
"most of people"

## determiners: revision test

## (1) Correct the mistakes and rewrite the sentences.

- Would you like little more coffee?

1 He spoke fast, but I understood all.
2 I'm hungry, but there isn't nothing to eat.
3 She has much money.
4 A lot of us was at the party last night.
5 Most of people think I'm right.
6 He was carrying a heavy bag in every hand.
7 Everything are very difficult.
8 I like every kinds of music.
9 I think you're driving too much fast.
10 If everybody are ready, we can go.

## 2 Circle the correct forms.

1 I'm enjoying this / that game.
2 This / That lesson was really hard.
3 I've had a postcard from these / those people we met in America.
4 What's this / that thing in the tree over there?
5 Hello. This / That is Mike. Can I speak to Anna?
6 There's somebody / anybody on the phone for you.
7 Ineed / Idon't need some help.
8 Could I have some / any more coffee?
9 Anna hardly said anything / nothing all evening.
10 We never go somewhere / anywhere interesting.
(3) Put in the correct forms.

1 Let me tell you
................ my problems. (all / every / each)
2
3
4
Not everybody ready to leave? (/s /Are) her parents are doctors. (Either / Each / Both) time alone, sometimes. (a little / little / a little of / little of)
9 l've been to Scotland times. (a little / a few / a little of / a few of)
10 'Do you speak Russian?' '. $\qquad$ .' ( A little / A little of / A few / A few of)

## 16 There's

 There's a pub at ................... end of our street. (each / every / all / both)17 She thinks she knows ................... (all / all of / everything)
$\qquad$
She thinks she knows .................... (all / all of / everything)
18 I practise karate day except Tuesday. (all / either / every)
18 I practise karate .................... $\qquad$ car is free.' (neither / either / any / both)
20 I'd like
I practise karate ...................
Children ask ................... questions. (lots / lots of / much / many)
I don't go to ................... parties. (a lot / many / many of)
I've got .................... problems. (too / too much / too many / too many of)
She didn't eat .................. breakfast. (much / many / many of)
There .................. lots of time before the shop closes. (is / are)
mething of)

## SECTION 13 personal pronouns; possessives

## grammar summary

> 1, you, he, she, it, we, you, they me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them
> my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves each other

We use pronouns when it is not necessary, or not possible, to use a more exact noun phrase.
Mrs Parker phoned. She said ... (The speaker uses the personal pronoun she because it is not necessary to repeat Mrs Parker.)
Ann talks to herself all the time. (It is unnecessary to repeat Ann.)
In this section we explain personal pronouns (1,me, you etc); possessives ( $m y$, your etc and mine, yours etc); reflexive pronouns (myself, yourself etc); and each other.
Indefinite pronouns (somebody, anything etc) are explained in Section 12, together with some and any. Relative pronouns (who, which etc) are explained in Section 19.

when you buy your
furniture from us!

Your next car!
LET US use our experience
to find you a first-class
second-hand car


CANADIANS BELIEVE WHEN YOU
LOSE YOURSELF you find yourself.

Presents for him, her,
you and theml



## KENzO FOR HIM. FOR HER.

FIND YOURSELF IN ONE BITE luxury Belgian chocolates

a new idea in banking:
it's your money, not ours

## personal pronouns: I and me etc



We use it to talk about times, dates, distances and the weather.
It's five o'clock. It's Tuesday. It's December 17th today. It's my birthday. It's 20 miles from my house to the centre of Oxford. It's cold today. It's raining.
4. Write true answers to these questions beginning It's


1 What time is it? It's
3 What's the date?
2 What day is it?
4 How far is it to London?

We don't usually leave out personal pronouns. (For exceptions in spoken English, see page 293.)
Jan arrived in America in 1976. He found a job in a clothes shop. (NOT Foufde ajob ...)
'What languages do you know?' I can speak some German.'(nOT 'Caf speak ...)
'Is your room OK?' 'Yes, I like it.' (NOT 'Yes,-Hike.)
(5) Write answers, using $I$, you etc.

- 'What time is the next train?' ( 8.30 / leaves / at) It Leaves at 8.30.

1 'Where's John?'(has/London/to/moved)

2 'Have you seen my glasses?' (on / chair / are / that)

3 'What do you think of my new shoes?' (like)

4 'What's Elisabeth going to do?' (medicine / study / going to / is)

5 'I'm learning Greek.' 'Is it easy?' (No / difficult / is)

6 'Where's my bicycle?' (put / in / the garage)

7 'What do you do at weekends?' (play / tennis)

8 'Do you like my picture?' (is / beautiful)

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: weather
Make sure you know the adjectives and verbs in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.
Then label the pictures.

```
ADJECTIVES: cloudy cold foggy }\checkmark\mathrm{ hot sunny warm windy
VERBS: hail | rain snow
```



## possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.

| $l$ | $\rightarrow$ my | This is my coat. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| you $\rightarrow$ your |  |  |
| he | $\rightarrow$ his | That's your problem. <br> John's visiting his mother. |
| she $\rightarrow$ her | Ann looks like her brothers. |  |
| it | $\rightarrow$ its | The club has its meetings on Tuesdays. |
| we $\rightarrow$ our | Our friends Joe and Pat are staying with us. |  |
| they $\rightarrow$ their | The children have spent all their money. |  |
| who? $\rightarrow$ whose? | Whose coat is this? |  |

Possessives don't change for singular and plural.
our friend our friends (NOT oufs ffriends)
Note how we use his and her: if a boy or man has something, we use his; if a girl or woman has
something, we use her.
I saw John and his sister yesterday. (NOT ... John and hef sister ...)
Mary and her brother are students. (NOT AMary and his brothef ...)
We often use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.
Phil has broken his arm. (NOT Phil has broken the arm:)
She stood there with her eyes closed and her hands in her pockets.
Put in the correct possessives.

- Would you like to wash ..your hands?
- We're taking ..our....... holiday in June.

1 Tina's lost $\qquad$ keys.
2 Peter says wife is ill.

3 $\qquad$ car is that outside?
4 My bank has changed $\qquad$ name.
5 I'm going to sell $\qquad$ motorbike.
6 My students have got ................ exam next week.
7 Stephen writes to ................ girlfriend every day.
8 Maria lives with $\qquad$ father in Portugal.
9 Come in and take coats off.
10 Robert broke $\qquad$ leg skiing last winter.
11 'What film did you see?' 'Sorry, l've forgotten $\qquad$ name.'
12 Elizabeth did well in $\qquad$ exams.

'Your loving son,'
(2) Who sold what to who? Make sentences.

```
AMY: car }->\mathrm{ JAMES: bike }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ CARLOS: dog }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ SARA: house }->\mathrm{ PAT AND SAM: motorbike }
HARRY: piano }->\mathrm{ ALICE: coat }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ MICHAEL: camera }->\mathrm{ HELEN: guitar }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ MARILYN: hair dryer }
TOM: dictionary }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ AMY
```

- Amy sold her car to James....................... 6

1 James sold ................................... to Carlos. 7
2 Carlos ............................................................ 8
3 .................................................................... 9
4
5 $\qquad$
(3) Look at the picture and complete the text.

- Anna................ and .............................................................................

 get on with Lucy. Mark asked $6 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . \ldots \ldots$........................... she said no, because she doesn't like Frank. Then Mark asked 7 $\qquad$ but he wasn't free. However, $\qquad$ was happy to go with them, so everything was OK.


We don't use alan, the, this or that before possessives.
my car (NOT the flytar) this idea OR my idea (NOT this myidea)
Don't confuse its (possessive) and it's (= 'it is' or'it has' - see page 301). Compare:
The company had its annual meeting yesterday. It's losing a lot of money.

| DETERMINER | PRONOUN |
| :--- | :--- |
| my coat <br> your car | mine <br> his chair <br> her book | | hours |
| :--- |
| hers |


| DETERMINER | PRONOUN |
| :--- | :--- |
| its price <br> our house <br> their problem | ours <br> theirs |

```
We use mine, yours etc without nouns. Compare:
That's not my coat. This is mine. (NOT This-is-themine.) Is that your car?I thought yours was a Ford.
Their garden is much bigger than ours. (NOT ... ours garden)
```

We can use the question word whose with or without nouns.
Whose coat is that? Whose is that coat?

1 Rewrite the sentences with possessive pronouns.

- That's my newspaper. ...That's. mine.

1 I prefer our house to their house. I prefer our house to
2 Her hair looks better than your hair. Her hair
3 Your hair looks terrible.
4 That dog looks like our dog.
5 That car's not her car.
6 This coat isn't my coat.
7 My cooking is better than his cooking.
8 Is this bike your bike?
(2) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: the bathroom

Look at the pictures of David and Natasha's bathroom, and use the words in the box to make sentences with his, hers or theirs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

| dressing gown hairdryer make-up razor shampoo soap toothbrush <br> toothbrush toothpaste towel washcloth $\boldsymbol{A}$ washcloth |
| :--- |

- The red washoloth is his..............................................................................

1 The ........................................ is not theirs. 7
2 ................................................................... 8
3 ........................................................................... 9
4 ................................................................... 10
5 ................................................................. 11


| $l \rightarrow$ myself | you $\longrightarrow$ yourself | he $\rightarrow$ himself |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| we $\rightarrow$ ourselves | you $\longrightarrow$ yourselves | they $\longrightarrow$ themselves |$\quad$ she $\rightarrow$ herself $\quad$ it $\rightarrow$ itself

We use myself, yourself etc when an object is the same person/thing as the subject.
I cut myself shaving this morning. (NOT Heut me ...) We must ask ourselves some questions.
He tried to kill himself. (Different from He tried to kill him.)

## (1) Circle the correct answer.

1 She doesn't love him / himself.
2 She likes looking at her/herself in the mirror.
3 Old people often talk to them / themselves.

4 I'm going out tonight, so you will all have to cook for yourself / yourselves.
5 I like Bill, but I don't understand him / himself.
(2) Put in myself, yourself etc.
1 I'm teaching to play the guitar.
2 'Who's John talking to?'
5 Mary talks about $\qquad$ all the time.
3 Get a drink for $\qquad$
6 Find chairs for and sit down.
4 We really enjoyed last night.

We can also use myself etc to emphasise - to say 'that person/thing and nobody/nothing else'. It's best if you do it yourself. I want to speak to the manager himself, not his secretary.
(3)

Put in myself, yourself etc.
1 Did you cut your hair $\qquad$
$\qquad$
2 Peter and Ann built their house
3 I answer all my letters
Note the difference between ourselves etc and each other.
$\qquad$?

4 Can you repair this, or must we do it
5 We got a letter from the Queen


They're looking at themselves.


They're looking at each other.

## (4) Each other or -selves?

1 Henry and Barbara write to every week.
2 Joe and Pat have bought a flat for
3 Do you and Julia tell $\qquad$ everything?
4 You'll need photos of .............................. for your passports.
5 Ruth and I have known $\qquad$ for years.

## personal pronouns and possessives: more practice

(1) Forms. There is one mistake in each column. Find the mistakes in columns 2-5 and correct them.

| $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | me | my | mines | myself |
| you | you | your | yours | yourself |
| he | him | his | his | himself |
| she | her | hers | hers | herself |
| it | it | its | - | itself |
| we | our | our | ours | ourselves |
| you | you | your | yours | yourselves |
| they | them | their | theirs | theirselves |

2) Mixed structures. Correct the mistakes.

-     - didn't say 'Hello'. . She ....

1 John and her wife have gone to Greece.
2 This coat is my.
3 Their house is much bigger than our.
4 That dog has hurt it's ear.
5 'What about this music?' I like.'
6 There are five miles to the nearest station.
............
7 We are Tuesday.
8 Where's the station?' 'He's over there.' $\qquad$
9 Their were all late. $\qquad$ ...
10 'Did you like France?' II thought was wonderful.'

11 'Where are your gloves?' 'l've lost its.'
12 'Who did that?' 'It was I.'
13 'Which girl is your sister?' 'That's she in the red dress.' $\qquad$
14 Is cold again today.
15 'What's her name?' 'Have forgotten.'
16 Lucy broke the leg skiing.
17 'What's the date?' 'Is December 17th.'
$\qquad$
18 Is that the my coat? $\qquad$
19 Who's car is this?
20 'Who's that?' I am.'
3) Reflexives and each other. Complete the captions.


2 She's talking to
3 They're talking to
(5) Reflexives. (ircle the right pronouns.

1 Of all my wife's relations I like myself / herself the best. (Joseph Cook)
2 Novels are about other people and poems are about themselves / yourself. (Philip Larkin)
3 An egotist: a person more interested in himself / yourself than in me. (Ambrose Bierce)
4 'How do you know you're God?' 'Simple. When I pray to Him I find I'm talking to myself / himself'. (Peter Barnes)
5 We grow neither better nor worse as we get old, but more like ourselves / themselves. (May Lamberton Becker)
6 You can always get someone to love you - even if you have to do it ourself / yourself. (Tom Masson)

6 Grammar in a text. Choose words from the boxes to complete the text.
each other her his its themselves they your

My brother and 1 $\qquad$ girlfriend have known 2 $\qquad$ for about five years,
but 3 . 've only been going out together for six months.
he her him she their they we

Before that, he didn't like 4 $\qquad$ and 5 $\qquad$ didn't like him, but later 6 $\qquad$ became good friends, and started going out together.
her hers his its it's our their they they're
7. $\qquad$ both have small flats. His flat is in the town centre, and 8 $\qquad$ very comfortable.
9. . is a long way out, and it's not so nice. So they spend most of 10 free time at 11
place.
he her hers herself him himself its it's she's

He works in a garage, and 12 $\qquad$ a teacher, but she doesn't let 13
touch 14
car - she looks after it is
each other I my they them their themselves they're
 $\qquad$ so 19 . hope 20 $\qquad$ will stay together.
(7) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of these three expressions gets most hits? Can you see why?
"She broke her arm." $\qquad$
"She broke the arm." $\qquad$
"She broke his arm." $\qquad$

## personal pronouns and possessives: revision test

(1) Complete the table.

| I | me | my | mine | myself |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | you |  |  |  |
| he |  | his |  |  |
|  |  |  | hers |  |
|  | it |  | - |  |
|  |  | our |  |  |
|  |  |  |  | yourselves |
| they |  |  |  |  |

## 2 Correct the mistakes.

- Inimhavea't-seen today. .haven't seen him

1 'Is the soup OK?' 'Yes, I like.'
2 There are 20 miles to the shopping centre.
3 We are Friday.
4 Peter and her sister are in Brazil.
5 I like our garden better than their.
6 Olivia and Karl are nice. But theirs children!
7 Who's is this bag?
8 Ann and I write to ourselves every week.
9 I really enjoyed at your party.
10 I'm teaching me to play the guitar.
11 Where's the my bike?
12 Is April 1st today.
13 James fell off his horse and broke the arm.
14 'What's Joe's phone number?' 'Have forgotten.'
15 I sat down, made me comfortable, and waited for her to say something.
3) Put in a personal pronoun (me, you etc), a possessive (my, your etc), a reflexive (myself, yourself etc), or each other.

- ..t.......................... is five o'clock.

1 Idon't like .............................. and he doesn't like $\qquad$
2 Don't help ............................. She must do it by
3 Oliver and his girlfriend phone $\qquad$
4 Thanks for yesterday evening. We really enjoyed
5 I like cooking for other people, but I don't much like cooking for $\qquad$
6 Let's work together: the work will go much faster if we help
7 Hi , Paul. Help ........................... to coffee. I'll be with ............................... in a minute.
8 'Will you teach
the piano?' 'No, sorry, you'll have to teach $\qquad$
9 'Who broke the cup?' 'It wasn't
.'
10 'Which is your mother?' 'That's
over there by the window.
11 My parents don't understand and my boyfriend doesn't understand and sometimes I don't understand

12 That girl keeps losing shoes.
13 Bill's coming this evening with .............................. three sisters.
14 I don't like looking at photos of ............................................ always look so old.
15 Mary's mother's really nice, but I don't like father much.

## SECTION 14 nouns

## grammar summary

Nouns are mostly words for things and people - for example house, tree, driver, child, water, idea, lesson. Most nouns can come after the.

English nouns can be countable (we can say two houses) or uncountable (we can't say wo refs).
Countable nouns have plurals (houses), and we can use alan with them (a house, an idea).
Uncountable nouns have no plurals, and we can't use alan before them.
Some English uncountable nouns are countable in some other languages (like furniture).
We can join two nouns:

- with a possessive 's or s' (for example my brother's wife, my parents' house).
- with a preposition (for example a piece of cake).
- directly one after the other (for example chocolate cake, a shoe shop).



## singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, boxes

Countable nouns have different forms for singular and plural.
one car four cars one day ten days one baby fourbabies one child six children

## HOW TO MAKE PLURALS

- most nouns: $+-s \quad$ book $\rightarrow$ books home $\rightarrow$ homes car $\rightarrow$ cars
- -s,-sh,-ch, -x: +-es bus $\rightarrow$ buses wish $\rightarrow$ wishes church $\rightarrow$ churches $\quad$ fox $\rightarrow$ foxes

1) Write the plurals.
$\left.\begin{array}{|lllllllll|}\hline \text { apple } \Omega & \text { boss } \Omega & \text { box } & \text { brush cat chair church class dress garden gas } \\ \text { glass } & \text { hotel } & \text { plane } & \text { ship } & \text { table } & \text { time } & \text { tree } & \text { watch } & \text { wish }\end{array}\right]$
+-5 :
$+-E S:$

## apples......... <br> bosses

$\qquad$

## NOUNS ENDING IN $-\boldsymbol{\gamma}$

- -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy:+-s day $\rightarrow$ days monkey $\rightarrow$ monkeys toy $\rightarrow$ toys
- -by,-dy, -fy, -gy, etc: $-y \rightarrow$-ies baby $\rightarrow$ babies lady $\rightarrow$ ladies lorry $\rightarrow$ lorries
(2) Write the plurals.
boy $\Omega$ city $\Omega$ copy country family guy holiday key party way

```
+-s: ..boys
-Y}->\mathrm{ -IES: .cities
```


## COMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS

| mouse $\rightarrow$ mice | child $\rightarrow$ children | half $\rightarrow$ halves | shelf $\rightarrow$ shelves |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| foot $\rightarrow$ feet | penny $\rightarrow$ pence | knife $\rightarrow$ knives | thief $\rightarrow$ thieves |
| tooth $\rightarrow$ teeth | person $\rightarrow$ people | leaf $\rightarrow$ leaves | wife $\rightarrow$ wi |
| man $\rightarrow$ men |  | life $\rightarrow$ lives |  |
| woman $\rightarrow$ women | potato $\rightarrow$ potatoes | loaf $\rightarrow$ loaves | sheep $\rightarrow$ sheep |
|  | tomato $\rightarrow$ tomatoes | self $\rightarrow$ selves | fish $\rightarrow$ fish |

Simple present verbs have different forms after singular and plural nouns (see page 16).
This bus runs at weekends. Most of the buses run at weekends.
My brother has a small flat. Both my brothers have good jobs.
3 Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.

| Their homes .................. in Scotland. (be) | $7 \mathrm{My} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots .$. are giving me trouble. (tooth) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 Our ................ play a lot of football. (child) | 8 Those .................. cost too much. (watch) |
| 2 Those .................. don't look English. (student) | 9 Most .................. cry at night. (baby) |
| 3 Some people ................. to talk to you. (want) | 10 The ................ are all wet. (match) |
| 4 Big ................. are always dirty. (city) | 11 Who are those ..................? (guy) |
| 5 Their .............. are travelling with them. (wife) | 12 My parents ................. at home. (work) |
| 6 These knives ...................n't cut very well. (do) | 13 How many ................. live here? (person) |

## singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors

Words for groups of people can have singular or plural verbs in British English.
We often use plural verbs when we talk about personal actions (for example play, want, think).
The team is/are playing badly. My family want/wants me to study.
The government think/thinks taxes are too low.
Note the difference between England (the country) and England (the football team).
England has got a new prime minister. England have got a new manager.
Police is always plural.
The police are looking for a tall 30-year-old woman. (NOT The potice is tooking ...)
( Group nouns ( $(x)$ or not $(x)$ ?


2 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in plural verbs from the box.
are have haven't need $\Omega$ play say want

| 0 | The club | A | .............. her to go to university. ...... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | The company | B | only .............. classical music. ..... |
| 2 | Her family | C | ............... scored a goal this year. ..... |
| 3 | The orchestra | D | $\ldots . . . . . . . . .$. that they're losing money. ...... |
| 4 | This team | E | ....eed..... a bigger room for their meetings. .... |
| 5 | England | F | ............... asking for information about the accident. ...... |
| 6 | The police | G | ............... just lost against Germany. ...... |

Some nouns are always plural. Some common examples:
trousers jeans tights shorts pants pyjamas glasses scissors Those trousers are too short. (NOT Thet trouser ...) Where are my glasses?

3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

black trousers blue jeans $\checkmark$ dark glasses scissors shorts silk pyjamas tights

- Every time I see her she's wearing ..blue jeans

1 I can't see very well with these
2 It's hot today. I'm going to put on
3 These $\qquad$ don't cut very well.
4 You'd better put on your best $\qquad$ for the interview.
5 She always sleeps in
6 l've got a hole in my again.

We can also use the expression a pair of with these nouns.
There is a pair of scissors on your chair. (NOT ... aseissors ...)
three pairs of jeans (NOT fhreejeans) two pairs of pyjamas (NOT fwopyjamas)

## countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns are words like car, book, chair. They can be singular or plural.
Uncountable nouns are words like petrol, rice, water. They are only singular.
1
Circle the uncountable nouns.
cup dog flower guitar love meat music ear oil photo river
salt snow sugar women wool

The following words are uncountable in English (but countable in some other languages). They are normally only singular. We can use some with them, but not a/an. (NOT a $\ddagger$ ravel, a fuffiftre)
advice baggage bread furniture hair information knowledge luck
luggage news spaghetti(andmacaronietc) travel work
I need some advice. This furniture is too expensive.
His hair is very long. Travel teaches you a lot.
(2) Put $a$ with the countable nouns and some with the uncountable nouns.

(3) Put in suitable uncountable nouns from the box.


To give a countable meaning, we usually use a longer expression or a different word.

## Can you give me a piece of advice? Did you have a good journey?

(4) Put in words or expressions from the box.

```
a piece of advice a piece of baggage }\checkmark\mathrm{ a piece of information
a piece of news a job a journey
```

- a suitcase a piece of baggage

1 selling cars
2 driving from London to Edinburgh
3 'Don't marry him, dear.'
4 'The next train leaves at 10.15.'
5 'There has been a big train crash.'
$\rightarrow$ For articles with countable and uncountable nouns, see page 153.

Some words can be countable or uncountable, with different meanings.
A light was on in the house. ( = 'a lamp') Light travels at $300,000 \mathrm{~km}$ a second. l've seen that film three times. Time goes fast when you're having fun.
I had a strange experience yesterday. We need a secretary with experience.
Three coffees, please. (='cups of coffee') I drink too much coffee.
(5) Look at the pictures and put in descriptions from the box.
a chicken chicken a chocolate chocolate a glass glass
an iron iron a paper paper

1

6

8
9
10

6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: containers
Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then use them to complete the descriptions under the pictures.


## one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair

We often use one instead of repeating a countable noun.
'What sort of car would you like?' 'A big one.' (= 'A big car.') (NOT 'A big.)
That was a great party. Let's have another one soon.
The plural is ones.
'Which are your gloves?' 'The ones on the chair.'
(1) Complete the sentences with one(s), using words from the box.
another green $\checkmark$ blue last new this small


2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use words from the box.

We say one, not when there is no adjective.
'What sort of cake would you like?' 'One with a lot of cream.' (NOT 'A ene with...-)
'Is there a garage near here?' 'There's one in Weston Street.'
(3)
big black blue fast glass $\ell$ green red
slow small white wooden $\Omega$ yellow

- Which table do you prefer? .......g.ass.one.

OR The wooden one.
1 Which house do you prefer?
2 Which sweater do you prefer? $\qquad$
Which car do you prefer?
Which dog do you prefer?
Which flower do you prefer?


3 Write some true sentences. Use the expressions in the box.
I've already got one. I haven't got one. I need one. I need a new one.
I don't need one. I'd like one. I don't want one.

| - a computer | ! don't need one. | 4 a cup of coffee |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 a bicycle |  | 5 a tennis racket |
| 2 a fast car |  | 6 a raincoat |
| 3 a camera |  | 7 a rich uncle |

We only use one for countable nouns (see page 198).
'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, black (coffee), please.' (NOT 'Yes, black ene...-)

## 's and s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men's

## HOW TO MAKE POSSESSIVE FORMS

- singular nouns: +'s myson's car John and lris's flat the cat's leg
- most plural nouns: +' those boys' passports the babies'toys our wives' stories
- plurals withouts +'s most children's poems three men's names the people's voices
(1) Make possessive forms by adding's or '.
- my mother.'..... nose
- my sisters...... names

1 Alice and John...... house
2 artists...... ideas
3 my dog...... ears
4 those dogs...... ears
5 those men...... faces
6 his girlfriend...... piano
7 their grandchild...... birthday
8 their grandchildren...... school
9 ladies...... hats

10 my aunt and uncle...... shop
11 Patrick...... books
12 a photographer...... job
13 our postman...... cat
14 postmen...... uniforms
15 Joyce...... pen
16 the thief...... bag
17 the thieves...... car
18 that woman...... brother
19 most women...... desks
20 your mum and dad...... bedroom

2 Correct the mistakes and write the correct sentences.

- This is the chitdrens' room.

This is the children's room.
1 That big building is a girl's school.
2 Is this your mothers' office?
3 May I speak to the bosses secretary?
4 What's Jane and Peters' address?
5 This is a picture of my grandparent's wedding.
6 Do you know John' new girlfriend?
7 She writes for a womens' magazine.
8 Is that Roberts' car?
9 Let me have Ruth's and Jack phone number.
10 What's your wive's job?

We can use more than one possessive noun together.
John's mother's cat Helen's boss's car My father's secretary's sister's baby
(3) Write the possessive expressions.

- My son has a teacher. She has a husband.
my son's teacher's husband
1 My sister has a secretary. She has an office
2 Jane has children. They have bicycles.
3 Rob has a family. They have a holiday flat.
4 Olivia has a boyfriend. He has a cat.
5 The Prime Minister has a wife. She has a problem.
6 Luke has an uncle. He has a farm.
7 Mr Patterson has a doctor. She has a car.
8 The President has a niece. She has a business.
9 Charlotte has a boss. He has a wife.
10 The Director has a husband. He has a friend. She has a mother. She has a cousin.


## 's and s' possessive: use lan's car; the boss's car

```
Possessive nouns with 's or s' take the place of the.
    the car that belongs to lan \(\rightarrow\) Ian's car (NOT tan's-khe ear) the shoes that belong to Jo \(\rightarrow\) Jo's shoes
But a possessive noun can have its own article.
    the car that belongs to the boss \(\rightarrow\) the boss's car
    the shoes that belong to the children \(\rightarrow\) the children's shoes
```

(1) Make 's or s' possessive structures.
- The dog belongs to Joe. . لloe's. dog.
- The dog belongs to the postman. ..the postman's............
1 The house belongs to Astrid.
2 The house belongs to the doctors.
3 The book belongs to Oliver and Carla.
4 The car belongs to the teacher.
5 The money belongs to the girls.
6 The money belongs to Susan.
2 Change the sentences.
- The classes are using the new books. (the French teachers)
The French teachers' classes are using the new books
1 The car is parked in front of the house. (the builder; Anna)
car is parked in front of
house.
2 Do you know the address? (the tall woman)
3 Their bedtime is eight o'clock. (the children)
4 The brothers are all in the army. (Alice and Pat)
We use possessive 's and $s$ ' mostly to talk about people and animals, not things: for example their possessions,
experience, relationships (family, friends etc), parts of the body.
Ann's purse Ann's English lessons Ann's holiday Ann's husband Ann's friend
my dad's book (NOT the book of my dad) my horse's ears (NOT the ears of my horse)
BUT the roof of the house (NOT thehouse's-foof) the top of my desk (NOT mydesk's-top)

3 Write two sentences for each item.

- Is the door open? (Paul; the library)

Is paul's door open? Is the door of the library open?
1 What's the name? (your brother; that book)

2 is there anything in the pockets? (the children; that coat)

3 You can see the church from the window. (Emma; the living room)

4 Why are the arms so dirty? (John; your chair)

With some common time words, we add's to say how long something takes. a second's thought
a minute's silence
4) Choose a time expression for each sentence. Use the words in the box.
second $\curvearrowleft$ minute hour day week year

1 After university, Les took $a$ course to become a teacher.
2 Lin had a holiday with her mother earlier this year.
3 Oxford is nearly 600 km from Edinburgh - that's a journey.
4 Sita's new job will mean a drive to work every morning.
5 There was a wait while the computer started up.

We can use noun + 's or s' without another noun, if the meaning is clear.
'Whose coat is that?' 'Harry's.' My hair is dark, but my children's is fair.
We also use noun + 's or s' without another noun for offices, churches and some shops.
Ibought this at Sainsbury's. Ihate going to the dentist's. She sings at St. John's.
(5) Look at the picture. There is some confusion. Complete the sentences as in the example.



Texas Joe


Queen Lobelia


Oleg

- The rope is probably ...T....as loe's

1 The handbag is probably
2 The gun
3 The crown
4 The big shoes
5 The document case

We often use noun + 's or s' without another noun to talk about people's homes. I saw Monica at June and Barry's on Friday. Lee is going to his sister's next weekend.
6) Other people's homes: write about two or more things in your past. Use at ...'s or at ...s'. ! met my girlfriend at Judy's.... went to my. grandparents' for Easter
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

## noun + noun Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate.

We can put one noun before another when we are talking about a kind of thing or person. The first noun is usually singular, even if it has a plural meaning.

> milk chocolate =a kind of chocolate, with milk in it chocolate milk =a kind of milk, with chocolate in it flower shop = shop that sells flowers (NOT flowers shep) corner shop =a shop on a corner hotel receptionist =a receptionist in a hotel history teacher =a teacher who teaches history
(1) Use the words in the box to make noun + noun structures. You can use some of the words more than once.

| army | aspirin | business corner email flower garden home |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| jazz | kitchen | milk opera perfume police pop prison village |

- 3 kinds of shop ..flower shop corner - shopvillage shop.

13 kinds of address
23 kinds of bottle
33 kinds of singer
42 kinds of wall
53 kinds of uniform
62 kinds of chair
2 Change the expressions in the box to noun + noun structures, and put the beginnings and ends together. Remember: don't make the first noun plural.
clothes for babies make-up for eyes $\checkmark$ building with offices in it food for dogs engineer who works on computers school of languages drawer for knives

| 0 | Judy wears too much ..eye make-up..... to the office |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | They're going to put a big |
| 2 | Our dog won't eat ...........................; |
| 3 | The ......................... looked at my printer, |
| 4 | Do you know of a good ...........................? |
| 5 | My aunt made some lovely |
| 6 | Why are the spoons in the ..........................? |

A but he couldn't repair it.
B I want to learn Japanese.
C - does she think she's at a party? ...
$D$ he only wants fresh meat or fish.
E when my brother was born.
F at the corner of our street.
G And who put them there?

We often use noun + noun structures to talk about what things are made of.
(3) Write noun + noun names for these.
b soup with chicken in it chicken soup.
1 a box made of metal
2 cakes with chocolate in them
3 a fork made of plastic
4 soup made of vegetables
5 a jacket made of leather
6 shirts made of cotton
7 a plate made of paper
8 salad with tomatoes in it
9 a wall made of stones

We often use noun + noun structures when the second noun is made from a verb +er. $a$ truck driver $=a$ person who drives $a$ truck $\quad a$ hair dryer $=a$ machine for drying hair
4. What do we call these people or things?

- This person drives a bus. ..abus........................

1 This person manages an office.
2 This machine makes coffee.
3 This person drinks coffee.
4 This person loves animals.
5 This stuff cleans floors.
6 This person plays tennis.
7 This thing opens letters.
8 This person smokes cigars.
9 This person climbs mountains.

## NOUN + NOUN STRUCTURE OR 'S / S' POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE

We mostly use 's or s' when the first noun possesses, experiences or has a relationship with the second noun. We use a noun + noun structure for other kinds of meaning. So things do not usually take 's/s'. Compare:
the dog's name (possession: the dog has a name) Rita's accident (experience: Rita had an accident) Ed's brother (relationship: Ed has a brother) Annie's secretary is Ellen's best friend. (relationships) BUT a shoe brush (the shoe doesn't possess or experience the brush; shoes don't have relationships)
(5) Circle the correct answers.

1 Could I borrow your telephone's book / telephone book for a minute?
2 Is that your teacher's book / teacher book, or is it yours?
3 Elizabeth's journey / Elizabeth journey took her to five continents.
4 The train's journey / train journey from Huntsville to Victoria was very boring.
5 My aunt's home / aunt home is full of beautiful furniture.
6 Our holiday's home / holiday home is in the French Alps.
7 My brother's interview / brother interview with the president will be on the radio today.
8 I was very nervous about my job's interview / job interview.

## GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: one-word noun + noun structures

Some short noun + noun structures are so common that we write them as one word, for example: armchair bathroom bedroom bookshop businessman businesswoman hairbrush handbag raincoat postman postwoman schoolchild suitcase toothbrush toothpaste


## nouns: more practice

1) Countable or uncountable? Put in a/an or some.

- We need ...
new bed.
5 l've got
difficult job to do today.
- We need some new furniture.
1 Can you give me advice?
2 I found ............... money in the street this morning.
3 Can you buy bread while you're out?
4 l've got work to do this evening.

6 Ann gave me
7 I need a taxi, because l've got heavy luggage.
8 Did you have ............... good journey?
9 l've just had good idea.
10 I must give you important information.
2) Special plurals. Put in three different plural nouns which have no singular.
1 a pair of
2 a pair of
3 a pair of $\qquad$
(3) Singular or plural? Correct $(\mathcal{})$ or not $(x)$ ?

1 The team are playing well. ......
2 The police don't usually carry guns in Britain.
3 My family have moved to Manchester.
4 He buys too much clothes.
5 I bought two new blue jeans yesterday.

6 People are all different
7 Are those your pyjamas?
8 I need a new pair of glasses.
9 I don't like that people very much.
10 The government are in trouble again
(4) Possessive forms. Correct the mistakes.

- What's your methens' phone number? .....ther's

1 That's the Peter's house.
2 She writes childrens' books.
3 That building is a boy's school.
4 This is my fathers office.
5 I want to talk to the boss secretary's.
6 We're going round to Jane's and Peter place.
7 Here's a photo of my parent's wedding.
8 is this the teachers book?
9 Johns'friends are all here.
10 He only reads mens' magazines.
(5) Noun + noun. Write shorter descriptions of these people and things.

- chocolate with fruit and nuts in it ..fruit and nut chocolate.
- a person who makes toys .a.ay.maker.

1 a shop that sells shoes
2 juice taken from oranges
3 a jacket made of leather
4 a person who drives trains
5 a table where you can drink coffee
6 a person who cleans windows
7 people who read the news (on TV)
8 a magazine about computers
9 a market in the street
10 a watch made of gold
6) Noun + noun. What are these people? Put together words from the two boxes and write the descriptions.

| bird bus butterfly computer dog glass hockey <br> maths mountain road tennis |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

blower climber collector driver player $\neq$ player
programmer sweeper teacher trainer watcher


- a hockey.player.


4

8

$\qquad$ 9

1


5

............................. 10


2


6


7

7 Grammar in a text. Read the text and circle the correct forms.
In the centre of Mappleford/ Mappleford centre there's a large ancient covered market with all sorts of interesting shops: 1 shops of clothes / clothes shops, butchers, grocers, jewellers etc etc. But my favourite place in the market is Joe's Café. It's a real 2 business of family / family business: Joe, 3 the wife of Joe / Joe's wife, his sons, his 4 son's/sons' wives, his daughter and his 5 daughter's / daughters' boyfriend all work there at different times. It's not luxurious - there are 6 tables and chairs of plastic / plastic tables and chairs - but it's excellent value. Joe's café is the best place in town for a full English breakfast. For a few pounds, you get a big plate of eggs, bacon and sausages, as much toast and butter as you can eat, and an enormous cup of tea. All sorts of people 7 have / has breakfast at 8 Joe / Joe's, from professors to 9 drivers of buses / bus drivers / bus's drivers. When they've all gone off to work, Joe and his family have time for a short rest, and then the café starts filling up with tourists who have come to try Joe's famous 10 cake of chocolate / chocolate cake. If you're ever in Mappleford, take my advice and visit Joe's Café.

8 Internet exercise. Checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following expressions get most hits? So which are correct?
"a heavy baggage" ..322.........
"a coffee table"
"the President's birthday" $\qquad$
"a bus driver" ................. "a bus's driver" .................. "a driver of bus"
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
"a bus driver" ................. "a bus's driver" .................. "a driver of bus"
"a watch of gold"
"some heavy baggage" . 9200.
"a table coffee"
"the birthday of the President "
"a gold watch " $\qquad$
$\qquad$

## nouns: revision test

(1) Write the plurals.


## 2) Which nouns can be plural? Write the plural or x .


3 idea
4 duck
7 furniture
8 government
9 class
2 bread

5 knowledge
6 journey

10 traffic

## Circle the correct forms.

1 My cousin is a tennis player / player of tennis / tennis's player.
2 The police is / are looking for a tall thin man.
3 I'm going to have a sleep of an hour / an hour sleep / an hour's sleep now.
4 Do you read woman's / womans' / women's / womens' magazines?
5 I like travelling to other countries / countrys / countreys.
6 'Coffee?' 'Yes, please. One large / Large one / A large one / A large.'
7 Could you give me some information / informations?
8 England is / are leading by 4 goals to 2 .
9 My sister works in a flower shop / flowers shop / shop flower / shop's flower.
10 I can't find her number in the phone book / phone's book / book of phone / book of the phone.

## 4. Correct the mistakes.

> He's bought two new trousers. ..pairs of trousers
1 Ilike eating chocolate milk.
2 My parents lived all their lifes in Dublin.
3 I like looking round books shops.
4 Who was the people who came to see you?
5 Peter is my son's sister.
6 I like those gloves. How much are the blue?
7 It's a nice jacket, but l'd like a one with pockets.
8 You will never be a player of football.
9 Marco Polo wrote a book about his journies.
10 'Where did you buy it?' 'In the market of street.'
11 We spent the weekend at my brother.
2 A vet is a doctor of animals.
13 The mother of Anna speaks good Spanish.
14 My father gave me earrings of silver for my birthday.
15 Can I have some oranges juice?
16 Birmingham, Liverpool and Manchester are three important citys in England.
17 I couldn't open the house's door
18 There's the Peter's house
19 Do you have the address of Emma?
20 I've got a big work to do today.

## SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs

## grammar summary

Adjectives are words like easy, slow, sorry, important. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after some verbs (e.g. be, seem, look).
an easy job a slow train l'm sorry. This letter looks important.
Adverbs are words like easily, slowly, yesterday, there. Adverbs tell you, for example, how, when or where something happens.

I won the game easily. Please speak slowly. She arrived yesterday.

> 'A wonderfully funny and moving book' ||||||||||||||||||||||||||||

DELICIOUSLY CREAMY
‘AN UNFORGETTABLE NOVEL’

the perfect way to warm cold feet and make you feel good

Adjectives go before, not after nouns.

(2) Put the words in the correct order and continue the story.
'good little, girl morning', said big the bad wolf. 2 'going you where are that with bag heavy 4 day this fine on?' 5 'going my see to grandmother l'm old' 6 girl the said little. 7 'lives small she in house a 8 new the supermarket near.'

1 'Good 3

5
6.

7
8
9
(3) Put in adjectives from the box to finish the story.

| big friendly | stupid | little |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |


(from an idea by James Thurber)

'I don't think so,' said the little girl.

Adjectives can go after be, become, get, seem, look (= 'seem') and feel.
The water is cold. Everything became clear. It's getting late. You seem tired. She looks happy. I feel hot.
After these verbs, we put and before the last of two or more adjectives.
He was tall, dark and handsome. (NOT He-was-tat,-dafk,-handsome:) You look well and happy.
4. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, using words from the box.
and and beautiful cold hungry intelligent tired


1 She is


2 He looks
(5) Make sentences.

- Jack / very / tall / be' . Jack's. very tall.'......................................................... 'Yes, he's nearly 2 metres.'

2 'seem / happy / Adele' ...................................................................... 'She's in love again.'
3 'ill / tired / and / feel / I' ........................................................................... 'Shall I call the doctor?'
4 dark / very early here in winter / get / it
5 getting/my parents/old

6) Make sentences with adjectives from the box.
Australian bad beautiful hot $\Omega$ late rich
[^11]We don't usually use adjectives without nouns.
'Polly's ill.' 'The poor girl.' (NOT 'The

## adverbs of manner He ate quickly.

## ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Adjectives are connected with nouns and pronouns. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after be, seem, look etc (see pages 210-211).
Adverbs are connected with other words - for example verbs.
Some adverbs tell you how something happens. These often end in -ly.

It's an easy language.

The music is slow.


Joe looked hungry.

You can learn this language easily.
The pianist is playing slowly.

She spoke interestingly about her ideas.
Joe ate hungrily.

1 Choose an adjective or an adverb.
Could lhave quick word with you? (quick / quickly)

- She walked away ..quicklely: $\qquad$ (quick / quickly)
1 This is a train - it stops everywhere. (slow / slowly)
2 He talked very ............................ about his work. (interesting / interestingly)
3 You've cooked the meat $\qquad$ (beautiful / beautifully)
4 I've got an .............................. job for you. (easy/ easily)
5 She writes in .............................. English. (perfect / perfectly)
6 I sing very ............................... (bad / badly)
7 I feel ............................... today. (happy / happily)
8 You seem very (angry / angrily)
9 Anne's a $\qquad$ swimmer. (strong / strongly)
10 Could you talk more $\qquad$ please? (quiet / quietly)


## HOW TO MAKE -LY ADVERBS

- usually: adjective +-ly quick $\rightarrow$ quickly real $\rightarrow$ really (NOT complete $\rightarrow$ completely
- $-\boldsymbol{y} \longrightarrow$-ily $\quad$ easy $\longrightarrow$ easily happy $\longrightarrow$ happily
- -ble $\rightarrow$-bly $\quad$ possible $\rightarrow$ possibly

2) Write the adverbs.



Some adverbs tell you when, where or how much something happens.

> I'm going away tomorrow. We ran downhill. The accident happened there.
> We don't go out much. I watch TV a lot. I play the guitar a bit. He sings a little.

These adverbs often come at the end of a sentence. They do not come between the verb and the object.

|  | VERB | OBJECT | ADVERB |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| She | speaks | English | well. | (NOT She speaks-wett English.) |
| They | make | very good bread | here. | (NOT Fhey make here-very good tread:) |
| 1 | bought | a lot of clothes | yesterday. | (NOT + bought yesterdey atoteftethes:) |
| We | didn't enjoy | the holiday | much. | (NOT We didrit enjoy ntuchinetmolitor.) |
| 1 | like | sport | very much. | (NOT + like-vers'muth spert:) |

(1) Make sentences with adverbs from the box. (Different answers are possible.)


## (2) Write about six things that you like very much.



Adverbs can go before adjectives, and before past participles (for example broken, finished).
terribly sorry (NOT ferfible seffy) nearly ready completely finished
Complete the sentences with words from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

|  | badly | beautifully | completely | extremely | happily $\checkmark$ nearly | terribly | very well |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - Joe and Ann have been ...happilu.............. married for twenty-five years. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| I'm .......................... sorry to tell you that we have no more tickets. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 There's nothing to eat - the fridge is ........................... empty. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 The book's ....................... written but it's not very interesting. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4 | After walking all day, David was .......................... tired. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5 The food here is .......................... cooked but they don't give you enough. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 6 'Is your new house ready yet?' 'No, but it's ........................... finished.' |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7 Languages were .......................... taught at my school, so I didn't learn much French. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | .. pleased | ll you th | u've passed your |  |  |

## adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc

Some adverbs, for example always or certainly, usually go with the verb.

| how often: always often usually sometimes ever hardly ever (='almost never') never |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| how certainly: certainly definitely probably |  |
| other: | already also just still even only |

These adverbs go before most verbs, but after auxiliary verbs (have, will, can, must etc) and after am/are/is/was/were.

BEFORE MOST VERBS
lalways read in the evenings.
Andy often goes to New York.
She hardly ever sees him.
I certainly like London.
We only want to see Barbara.
Jack already knows Sophie.

## AFTER AUXILIARY VERBS AND AM ETC

I have always enjoyed reading.
He can often get cheap flights.
He is hardly ever at home.
It will certainly rain tomorrow.
We are only here to see Barbara.
Jack has already met Sophie.

## 1 Put the adverbs in the correct places.

- I speak French, but people know that I'm English. (often; always)
! often speak French, but people always know that !'m English
1 Jake eats fish. He eats fish for breakfast. (always; even)

2 Ann plays tennis, but she plays in the evenings. (often; only)

3 Edward puts tomato sauce on everything. He puts it on ice cream. (usually; probably)

4 I forget names. I forget faces. (sometimes; never)

5 Jane gets angry, and she shouts at people. (hardly ever; never)

6 I get to the station on time, and the train is late. (always; always)

7 I will phone you tomorrow, and I will write next week. (definitely; probably)

8 I drink tea. I drink coffee. (usually; sometimes)

9 Your sister is a good singer. She is a very interesting person. (certainly; also)

10 My mother is asleep. I think she is ill. (still; probably)

In questions, these adverbs usually go after auxiliary verb + subject.
Do you ever write poems? Has Mary always lived here? Are you often in London?

## 2) Put the adverbs in the correct places.

1 Do you play cards? (often)
2 Have you been to Tibet? (ever)
3 Are you happy? (always)
4 Does the boss take a holiday? (ever)
5 Do you eat in restaurants? (usually)
6 Is Bethany ill? (still)

Longer expressions usually go at the end of a sentence. Compare:
She often plays tennis. She plays tennis two or three times a week.
She hardly ever wins a game. She wins a game once or twice a month.
She always practises. Does she practise every afternoon?
3 Look at the table and make some sentences with often, once a day etc.

| ACTIVITY | EVA | TOM |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| goes swimming | $1 / d^{*}$ | $1 / m$ |
| plays football | - | $3 / w$ |
| plays tennis | $1 / w$ | $1 / y$ |
| goes skiing | $5-6 / y$ | - |
| goes to the theatre | $1 / w$ | $2-3 / y$ |
| goes to the cinema | $3-4 / y$ | $2 / m$ |
| goes to concerts | - | $1 / w$ |

Eva often goes swimming
Eva goes swimming once a day l every day .....
Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
*1/d = once a day;
2/m = twice a month; etc
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: go with spare-time activities Look at the pictures, and put the correct numbers with the activities. Use a dictionary if necessary.

IN YOUR SPARE TIME YOU CAN:
go walking .....
go climbing go swimming go sailing go wind-surfing go skiing go skating go fishing

go shopping go to the opera go to the theatre go to concerts


2


9


10



4


8


12
(5) Write some sentences about your spare-time activities. Use words from Exercises 1-4.

- ! never go climbing...................................................................... 4
- !.goswimming every day........................................................... 5

1 ........................................................................... 6

$3 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . .$.

## interested and interesting etc

Interested, bored, excited etc say how people feel. Interesting, boring, exciting etc describe the things (or people) that cause the feelings.

She's very interested in the lessons. (NOT She's-very interesting in-the tessons:)
The lessons are always interesting. (NOT Fhe tesseas are always-ifterested.)
I'm often bored at work, because l've got a boring job.
1
Write these words under the pictures: interested, interesting, bored, boring.


1
2
3
4

## (2) Put in words from the box.

| annoyed ( $=$ 'a little angry') $\downarrow$ annoying frightening surprised surprising | excited | exciting | frightened |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |


(3) Here are the beginnings of five books. Write what you think of the books. Use very interesting, quite interesting, not very interesting, quite boring or very boring.
1 After King Leofric died in 1342, ...
I think this book is probably
2 The moment Olga walked into Alan's office, he realised his-life had changed for ever I think
3 Since the beginning of history, cats

4 The man in black had already killed five people that morning. The sixth

5 Four billion years ago, our world

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: adverbs of degree; subjects of study Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write how interested you are in some of the subjects. You can use extremely ( $=+++$ ), very, quite, not very, not or not at all ( = - - ).

| art biology economics history literature mathematics philosophy physics politics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

$\qquad$

Fast, hard, late, early, daily, weekly and monthly are adjectives and adverbs.
He's got a fast car. He drives fast. I got an early flight. I went home early.
It's hard work. She works hard.
It's a weekly paper. I buy it weekly.
The train was late. Trains are running late.
Hardly and lately have different meanings from hard and late.
Hardly = 'almost not'; lately = 'recently', 'not long ago'
He hardly works these days - maybe one day a week. Have you heard from John lately?
Well can be an adjective (the opposite of ill) or an adverb (the opposite of badly).
'How are you?' 'Very well, thanks.' The team are playing well.


These are sentences from real conversations. Put in words from the boxes.
early hard hardly weekly well

1 And I really understand Italian quite
2 You've got no playschool tomorrow so you haven't got to get up have you?
3 Why should I work $\qquad$ when you never do anything?
4 Departures from the UK are $\qquad$ mid-morning on Sundays from Dover.
5 She was really, you know, nervous, and $\qquad$ came out of her flat at all.

## (2) Choose the best answer.

- You look ..well............. Mike. (early / lately / well)

1 Your father read the .................. Express when he was alive. (hardly / Daily / Iately)
2 You haven't seen the window cleaner ..................... have you? (lately / hard / weekly)
3 I ran as .................. as I could, along the Tottenham Court Road. (early / fast / hardly)
4 I ................... sleep - an hour at a time. (well / hard / hardly)
5 I got up ................... to finish some work. (well / hardly / early)
6 My daughter cooks really (hardly / well / lately)
I went to bed very ................... last night. (late / lately / hardly)
8 I go to Cambridge .................... for a business meeting. (well / hardly / weekly)
9 I need a rest. I've been working .................... all week. (lately / hard / hardly)
10 My grandfather hasn't been very well
(early / lately / daily)

Friendly, lonely, lovely, silly are adjectives, not adverbs.
She gave me a friendly smile. (BUT NOT she smiled friendly.)
He was very lonely. (BUT NOT He-watkedtonely-thfotththe streets.)
Her voice is lovely. (BUT NOT She singstevely:) Don't be silly.
There are no adverbs friendtly, fovetily etc. Instead, we use other words or expressions.
She spoke in a friendly way. She sings beautifully.

## 3 Correct ( $\mathcal{\prime}$ ) or not ( $x$ )?

1 He spoke very friendly, but I didn't like him.
2 You have a lovely smile. $\qquad$
3 He's not stupid, but he sometimes talks really silly.
4 He doesn't speak English very well, but he writes it lovely.
5 I gave her a friendly look, but she turned away. ......

## adjectives and adverbs: more practice

(1) Word order.

## Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- She's a/cook. (good)

1 She was driving a fast car. (red)
2 She speaks Chinese. (perfect)
3 She speaks Chinese. (perfectly)
4 I lost my keys. (yesterday)
5 l've got a meeting tomorrow. (very important)
6 Anna read Peter's letter. (slowly)
7 Tim plays the piano. (brilliantly)
8 Lucy is unhappy. (terribly)
9 They make very good ice cream. (here)
10 She's been unmarried for 15 years. (happily)
(2) Adjective or adverb?

Circle the correct answers.
1 You are making a terrible / terribly mistake.
2 She walked up the steps slow / slowly.
3 It was raining very hard / hardly when I got up.
4 The boss is a really friend / friendly person.
5 I cook very bad / badly.
6 Amelia looks very unhappy / unhappily.
7 I'm extreme / extremely sorry I arrived so late / lately.
8 I drove very careful / carefully on the snow.
9 I was late / lately because of a problem with the trains.
10 I've complete / completely forgotten his name.
11 Your hair looks beautiful / beautifully.
12 He doesn't work very hard / hardly.
13 I can't understand her. She talks very unclear / unclearly.
14 The President spoke in perfect / perfectly French.
15 This letter isn't very good / well written.
4. Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct words for the caption.

'Be careful / Be carefully, these plates are extreme / extremely dirty.'
3) Adverbs with the verb. Write sentences about yourself.

1 I often
I never
I am sometimes
I usually
5 I have often
6 I have never
7 I have always
8 I am certainly
9 I will probably
10 I will definitely
(5) Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

- She was wearing afed beautifutcoat. ..a beautiful red coat

1 There are films interestings on TV tonight.
2 There's a good and cheap restaurant in Dover St.
3 He's tall, dark, good-looking.
4 I am very interesting in the lessons.
5 I like very much this music.
6 'Emma's got appendicitis.' 'The poor!'
7 I'm terrible sorry!
8 l lost yesterday my glasses.
9 She smiled happy when I walked in.
10 I often have thought of changing my job.
11 There were some difficults questions in the test.
12 The boss always talks to us friendly.
13 My mother speaks very well Arabic.
14 You look beautifully in that dress.
15 You're walking too fastly for me.
16 Please drive careful.
17 The manager welcomed us in perfectly English.
18 John always is ready to help people.
19 We speak usually Spanish together.
20 I worked hardly, but I failed the exam.
6) Grammarin a text. Put in adjectives or adverbs from the box.

| daily early fast friendly hard hardly late lonely silly |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |



7 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: nouns and adjectives. Find the answers. Use a dictionary to help you. Different answers are possible.

| a bed alight apples children coffee hair holidays milk skin water $\Omega$ water |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

- It can be cold, warm or hot. ................... 6 It can be hard or soft.

1 It can be strong or weak. $\ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . .$.
2 It can be deep or shallow. ................... 8 It can be fresh or sour.
3 They can be long or short. ................... 9 They can be sweet or sour.
4 It can be dark or fair. ................... 10 They can be quiet or noisy.
5 It can be bright or dim.
8. Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with hard and some with hardly. Write three of each.
$\qquad$

## adjectives and adverbs: revision test

(1) Write the adverbs.

(2) Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- It's a/day. (nice)

1 I saw a good film. (yesterday)
2 Andy can help you. (definitely)
3 You speak Russian. (very well)
4 She smiles. (never)
5 Alice had some ideas. (really interesting)
6 They sell very good clothes. (here)
7 I have been to Norway. (never)

8 Karl plays the violin. (very badly)
9 I have paid. (already)
10 He was wearing a new suit. (blue)
11 We see Annie and Seb. (often)
12 Emma read the report. (slowly)
13 Judy and Simon are late. (always)
14 You are right. (probably)
15 I go to the cinema. (hardly ever)
(3) Correct $(\alpha)$ or not ( $x$ )?

- I had a headache very bad. . $x$...

8 Fill in this form very carefully.

- Read this now.

1 She makes wonderfully soup. $\qquad$
9 I complete forgot to phone Paul.
10 She studied very hardly for the exam.
2 I spoke to them very slow and clear.
11 Everybody spoke perfect English.
3 It snowed very hard yesterday
12 This fish isn't very well cooked.
4 That secretary isn't very friendly.
13 They asked some difficults questions.
5 I sing terribly bad.
14 Do you know a hotel good and cheap?
6 Your baby looks really happy.
15 I never have understood maths.
7 I'm sorry I got here so lately.
4. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

- He was wearing blackeld beots. ..old black boots.

1 He's short, fat, stupid-looking.
2 We usually are at home on Saturdays.
3 I am boring in the science lessons.
4 People never will stop fighting.
5 I listen always to the news at breakfast.
6 'Jenny's in hospital.' 'The poor!'
7 We often have been to India.
8 We're terrible late.
9 They stood up slow when we walked in.
10 The weather already is getting better.
11 Never you tell me what you are thinking.
12 Your hair looks beautifully today.
13 John probably has forgotten my name again.
14 I don't like you driving so fastly.
15 Please speak slow.

## SECTION 16 comparison

## grammar summary

We can compare people and things with each other using as ... as, er than or more ... than.
Joe's as tall as me. Jane's taller than me. She works more carefully than me.
We can use -est or most to compare people and things with all of their group.
John is the oldest of Mary's children. Nasima's the most intelligent person in the class.
We use -er and -est with shorter adjectives and some short adverbs; we use more and most with other adjectives and adverbs.

## London's wildest nightclub

## 'Best sports car of the year'

- it's bigger, lighter, stronger and faster.


## 100\% Organic Soup

Nothing could be more comforting

The world's longest running musical:

## Les Misérables

The sooner you come to us, the sooner you'll find the job you want.

For smaller kitchens,

the smallest dishwasher in the world


We can make your car go faster.


The finest vegetables you've ever tasted

BETTER

## comparative and superlative adjectives: forms

## Comparative adjectives are forms like colder, more famous <br> Superlative adjectives are forms like coldest, most famous.

- most short (one-syllable) adjectives: + -er, -est old $\rightarrow$ older, oldest
- short adjectives ending in $-\boldsymbol{e}:+-r_{\text {, }}-s t \quad$ nice $\longrightarrow$ nicer, nicest

1 Write the comparative and superlative adjectives.

| - cold | colder coldest | 5 strange |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - late | Later latest | 6 fine |
| 1 green |  | 7 high |
| 2 safe |  | 8 wide |
| 3 rich |  | 9 near |
| 4 small |  | 10 white |

- short adjectives ending in one vowel + one consonant: $\begin{array}{ll}\text { double consonant }+ \text {-er, est } & \text { fat } \rightarrow \text { fatter, fattest } \\ \text { BUT don't double } w: & \text { low } \rightarrow \text { lower, lowest }\end{array} \quad$ thin $\rightarrow$ thinner, thinnest
2 Write the comparative and superlative adjectives.
- red ..redder.reddest
3 new
- slow .slower, slowest
4 wet
1 big
5 slim
2 hot
- two-syllable adjectives ending in $-\boldsymbol{y}: y \rightarrow i+-e r_{\text {, -est }} \quad$ happy $\rightarrow$ happier, happiest
(3)

Write the comparative and superlative adjectives.

- friendly .friendliere friendliest.

1 lazy
2 hungry

3 sleepy
4 angry
5 dirty

- most other longer adjectives: + more, most hopeful $\rightarrow$ more hopeful, most hopeful
(4)

Write the comparative and superlative adjectives.

- famous ..more famous most famous....... 4 dangerous

1 careful
5 important
2 beautiful
6 boring


## - irregular adjectives: good $\rightarrow$ better, best bad $\rightarrow$ worse, worst $f a r \longrightarrow$ further, furthest OR farther, farthest

## 5 Put in irregular comparative adjectives.

- I know that my handwriting is bad, but Jenny's is worse
1 I'm so tired. Is the bus stop much ..?
2 I don't enjoy train travel here, but I do in France - the trains are there.
3 'How's your toothache today?' 'It's
'You should see a dentist.'


## comparative or superlative?

We use comparatives to compare people and things with other people and things.
$\boldsymbol{A}$ is bigger than $\boldsymbol{B}$. $\quad \boldsymbol{A}$ is bigger than $\boldsymbol{B}$ and $\boldsymbol{c}$. John is a more careful driver than Robin.


4 Dawn is taller than all the other players.


We use superlatives (usually with the) to compare people and things with all of the group that they are in.
$\boldsymbol{A}$ is the biggest of the three letters $\boldsymbol{A}, \boldsymbol{B}$ and $\boldsymbol{c}$. John is the most careful driver in the family.


4 Dawn is the tallest player in the team.

## (1) Circle the correct answer.

- Dawn is older/ the oldest than all of her sisters.
- Leah is taller / the tallest person in her family.

1 All of the players are nice, but Sarah is certainly the nicer / the nicest.
2 This is the better / the best women's basketball team in the country.
3 Basketballs are more expensive / the most expensive than footballs.
4 Ice hockey is a more dangerous / most dangerous sport than basketball or tennis.
5 Of all the sports in the Olympics, which sport is more dangerous? / the most dangerous?
6 A basketball court is usually bigger / the biggest than a tennis court.
7 Which is the faster / the fastest game? Not chess.
8 Which is the more / most expensive game? Poker?
2 Choose a comparative or a superlative. Remember to use the before the superlatives.

|  | 'The Marriage of Figaro' is .the most.beautiful........ of all Mozart's operas. (beautifu) My new car is faster than my old one. (fast) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | My mother and her sisters are all .................................. than their children. (short) |
| 2 | I think Annie is ................................... person in our class. (intelligent) |
| 3 | Let's meet in the library - it's .................................... than all the other rooms. (quiet) |
| 4 | My bedroom is ................................... room in the house. (cold) |
| 5 | A 3-year-old's voice is ................................... than 200 people in a busy restaurant. (loud) |
| 6 | Brazil is .................................. South American country. (big) |
| 7 | My computer is much ................................... than me. (intelligent) |
| 8 | Which is .................................. thing to study? (boring) |

## comparatives: use brighter than the moon

## We use than after comparative adjectives.

Russia is bigger than China. (NOT ... thet-Ehifat:) Rob and Tina are older than Emma.
1 Compare each pair of things in the box. Write two sentences for each pair. More than one answer may be possible.

> COMPARE: the sun and the moon $\checkmark$ dogs and cats train travel and air travel the Sahara and the Himalayas English and Chinese Canada and Ireland ADJECTIVES: big bright $\checkmark$ cheap cold easy difficult fast friendly hot intelligent small $\checkmark$ small

- ...ne sun is brighter than the moon.......... 5
- ....nemoon is smallerthan thesun.......... 6
$\qquad$
2 .................................................................. 8
3 ................................................................ 9
4 10

2 Use comparative adjectives with ... than all the other ...

- Alaska's area is $1,518,700 \mathrm{~km}^{2}$. No other US state is so large. Alaska is larger than all the other us states
1 The Amazon is $6,670 \mathrm{~km}$ long. No other river in South America is so long.

2 Blue whales can weigh 120 tonnes. No other whales are so heavy.

3 Mont Blanc is 4,807m high. No other mountain in the Alps is so high.

4 Cheetahs can run at $110 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{h}$. No other big cats are so fast.

5 The Atacama desert has no rain. No other deserts are so dry.

6 Redwoods can grow up to 110 metres. No other trees are so tall.

whales

big cats

> With comparatives, we can say ... than Iam / than you are / than John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... than me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

## 3 Write two endings for each sentence: one with than me, than you etc and one with

 than I am, than you are etc.
1 John's very careful with money, but Maria
2 I'm hungry, but you must be
3 You're not very short. Tony's
4 We're excited, but our children
5 My girlfriend is so beautiful. No other woman

We can use a lot / a bit (more conversational) or much / a little before comparatives.
Your cooking is much better than my sister's. (NOT ... verybettef... AND NOT ... . This book is a lot more interesting than that one. You sound a bit happier today.

abit longer

much longer
4. Use the table. Write sentences about Mark and Simon with a bit / a little and a lot/much with the adjectives from the box.

| short $/ /$ tall old /young rich fast/slow comfortable quiet/noisy |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |


|  | How tall? | How old? | How rich? |  | How fast? | How comfortable? | How quiet? |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mark | 1 m 95 | 35 | €900,000/year | Mark's car | 190km/h | $\star \star \star$ | $\star \star$ |
| Simon | 1 m 85 | 36 | €250,000/year | Simon's car | 130km/h | $\star \star$ | $\star \star \star \star \star$ |

- .. Simon is a bit (OR a little) shorter than Mark.

1
2
3
4

5
6
7
8
9
$\qquad$


We can use more than and less than without adjectives.
Liz spent more than a week's pay on that dress. It took us less than ten minutes to get home.

## superlatives the highest mountain in the world

```
After superlatives, we normally use in before the names of places.
Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (NOT ... of the wortd.)
Jamal is the most intelligent person in the office.
Sirius is the brightest star in the sky.
After superlatives, we also use in before singular words for groups of people.
Sam is the youngest player in the orchestra.
Wilkins is the oldest minister in this government.
In most other cases, we use of after superlatives.
Anna's the tallest of the three sisters. This is the shortest day of the year.
1 Put the beginnings, middles and ends together.
```

| 0 Jonathan is | A the biggest state ...... | k in the group. ..... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 My great-great-aunt is | B the longest river ...... | 1 in my family. ... |
| 2 London is | C the best musician ..... | m in the team. ..... |
| 3 Alaska is | D the fastest runner ..... | $n$ in Africa. ...... |
| 4 The guitar player is | E the biggest city ...... | o in Britain. ...... |
| 5 The Nile is | F the oldest person ...... | p in the USA. ...... |
| 6 My parents' room is | G the most expensive ...... | q of the four bedrooms. ...... |
| 7 The Mercedes is | $H$ the longest day ...... | $r$ of the five girls. ..... |
| 8 Sarah is | I the youngest ...... | $s$ of the three cars. ...... |
| 9 June 21st is | J the biggest ...... | $t$ of the year. ...... |

## 2 Write sentences with superlatives.

- In my job, Friday / busy day / week
.In my job Friday is the busiest day of the weeke
1 In the 1970s, the Beatles / rich musicians / world

2 Eric says that Eleanor / good singer / group

When I was a child, my father / tall man / our town

4
In this country, February / cold month / year

Who / old / your three aunts?

6 Helen is very intelligent, but she / quiet person / my class

7 Which / good / these three bikes / ?

8 Which / big city / Argentina / ?

There is so much good in the worst of us, and so much bad in the best of us.
(Author unknown)

## comparison of adverbs More slowly, please.

To make the comparative of most adverbs: more + adverb (... than)
Can you speak more quietly, please? I'm working more slowly today than yesterday.
Angela writes more clearly than Ellie.
(1)

- Jacob drives / dangerously / Sam
lacob drives more dangerously than sam
1 Lee talks to people / politely / Ben

2 Liam works / carefully / John

3 Simon goes swimming / often / Karen

4 My car runs / quietly / my sister's car

5 Annie talks / slowly / Rob

6 Olivia thinks / clearly / most people

7 Jack dresses / expensively / me

8 I live / cheaply / my friends

Some short adverbs have comparatives with -er, like adjectives. Examples: early, late, fast, hard, high, long, near and soon.
Igot to the station earlier than Mary. Bill lives nearer to school than Pete, so he gets up Iater.
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { Irregular comparatives: } & \begin{array}{l}\text { well } \rightarrow \text { better } \\ \text { little } \rightarrow \text { less }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { badly } \rightarrow \text { worse } \\ \text { alot/much } \rightarrow \text { more }\end{array}\end{array} \quad$ far $\rightarrow$ further/farther
My mother drives better than my father. He sings badly, but I sing worse.
She talks less than he does, but she thinks more. Ilive further from the centre than you.
2
2 Use the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.

| early fast hard $\Omega$ high late little long much near |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

'I want to earn more money.' 'Work ..harder:
1 'I want to eat my breakfast slowly in the morning.' 'Get up
2 'I want to get more sleep.' 'Get up
3 'I want to be stronger.' 'Exercise
4 'I hate driving to work.' 'Live to your work and walk:
5 'I get a lot of headaches.' 'Try to worry
6 'I'm afraid I'm going to miss the train!' 'Walk
7 'I'm no good at basketball.' 'Practise jumping
8 'I want to learn everything there is.' 'Live $\qquad$

Sentences with superlative adverbs (for example John drives the most dangerously) are not very common.

We use (not) as ... as to say that people and things are (not) the same in some way.
Idon't think Tom is going to be as tall as his sister. Your hands are as cold as ice.
Can you read this for me? My eyes aren't as good as yours.

1) Read the sentences and decide: which picture is Jenny and which picture is Cassie?

Jenny isn't as old as Cassie.
Jenny's hands aren't as small as Cassie's.

Cassie's hair isn't as long as Jenny's.
Jenny isn't as fair as Cassie.


Picture $A$ is
Picture $B$ is
Now write some more sentences about Jenny and Cassie with not as ... as.
1 slim
2 tall
3 skirt/long
4 bag / big
5 coat/heavy
6 glass/big

With as ... as, we can say ... as I am / as you are / as John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... as me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

2 Change the sentences in two ways, but keep the same meaning.

- Nicole's prettier than her sister. Nicole's sisterisn't as pretty as her. Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as she is.
1 You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor

2 He's more interesting than his boss.

3 I'm slimmer than my mother.

4 We're more careful than the Browns.

We can put just, nearly, not quite and half, twice, three times etc before as ... as.
He's just as handsome as his brother. My hair is not quite as fair as my sister's hair. The twins are nearly as tall as their mother. Brazil is half as big as Russia.


3 Think of a member of your family. Compare yourself to him or her, using as ... as and some of the words and expressions from the box. Write five sentences.

| BEFORE AS: just | nearly | not quite half twice three times etc |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADJECTIVES: dark | fair friendly handsome happy intelligent kind | nice |  |  |  |
| old | pretty | quiet | short slim tall |  |  |



## We can use as much as and as many as with nouns.

Deborah doesn't work as many hours as Ido, but she makes just as much money as me.
(4) Make sentences with as ... as or not as ... as, and some of the expressions from Exercise 3.

- Alice has $\$ 200$ and Matt has $\$ 100$. Alice has twice as much money as Matt

1 Eric has 20 cousins, and Tony has 10. Eric

2 Ben eats 3 sandwiches every day; Jo eats 1.

3 Helen has 23 computer games and Adrian has 25.

4 Liz drinks 6 cups of coffee a day; Chris drinks 12.

5 Mike has 600 books, and David has 600 too.

6 Rebecca only has a little free time; Fred has a lot.

## comparison: more practice

(1) Mixed structures. Put in the correct words.
7 I'm not $\qquad$ tall $\qquad$ my sister.
2 This is the . expensive restaurant $\qquad$ the town.
3 Anna is a bit older $\qquad$ her husband.
4 Who's best player $\qquad$ the family?
5 Smith is good, but Jones is and Ericsson is the $\qquad$
6 Please drive slowly.
7 How much fruit can I have? Take $\qquad$ much $\qquad$ you want.
8 Texas is bigger ............ France.
9 You're beautiful than I
10 A metre is more $\qquad$ a centimetre and $\qquad$ than a kilometre.

2 Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong ( $x$ ). Can you correct the mistakes?

- You're the beautifulllest woman I have ever seen. most beautiful
1 She's the best pianist of the world.
2 My sister is much taller that me.
3 Katie is the more beautiful person here.
4 Please drive slowlier.
5 This is the more expensive hotel in London.
6 You drive much faster of me.
7 My hands are cold like ice.
8 James is much older as his wife.
9 Everest is more high than Mount Fuji.
10 We all sing badly, but l'm the worse.
11 My sister is the intelligentest person in the family.
12 I'm happyer this year than last year.
13 Tokyo is the biggest city of Japan.
14 Robert is the youngest from the three children.
15 Sunday is best day of the week.

3) Mixed structures. Look at the pictures and make sentences.

```
A £17,999
Maximum speed \(120 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{h}\)
```



B £62, 999 Maximum speed $200 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{h}$

```
- B/fast/A Bis fasterthan A.
1 B/fast/C
2 A/fast/B \(A\) is not as
3 C/fast/B
\(4 \mathrm{~B} /\) fast \(B\) is the
\(5 \mathrm{C} /\) expensive / A
6 A/expensive / \(B\)
\(7 B /\) expensive \(B\) is the
8 B/big/C
9 C/big/A
10 C/big
```



C $£ 24,300$
Maximum speed $150 \mathrm{~km} / \mathrm{h}$
(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: time. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then answer the questions, using more and less.
century day decade hour minute month second week year

- How much is a minute? ..Morethan a second and less than an hour

1 How much is a decade?
2 How much is a month?
3 How much is a week?
4 How much is an hour?
5 How much is a day?
6 How much is a year?
(5) Grammar in atert Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.

John lives in Birmingham. He is a bus driver. He is very interested in history. He is taller than Tom, and betterlooking, but he doesn't have as much money as Tom. Tom works in an import-export firm in Liverpool. He collects antique furniture. He is deeply in love with Julia. He's much older than she is, but not as tall as she is, and he's really not very good-looking. Julia's friend Hannah lives in Birmingham, near her cousin Pete. She's exactly as old as he is, and they're both very interested in information technology. Pete runs a very successful computer business. He has much more money than Tom, but not nearly as much as Hannah. He has dark hair and blue eyes, and he's better looking than Tom, but not as tall as Tom. Pete and John are old friends. They often play tennis together. John is twice as old as Pete (he's nearly as old as Tom), but he usually wins when he and Pete play. They are both deeply in love with Julia. Julia works in a travel agency. She likes fast cars, travel, horse-riding and fashionable clothes. She often goes on holiday with Hannah. Hannah usually pays for the holidays, because Julia doesn't have as much money as Hannah. Hannah is taller than Julia, (but not as tall as John) and very beautiful. Hannah is deeply in love with the tallest of the three men. Julia is deeply in love with the oldest.

1 Who is Hannah in love with?
2 Who is Julia in love with?
3 Who is the richest of the five people?
6) Than, that or as? Complete the caption.

'There, dear! I think we've left the world a better place $\qquad$ we found it!'
(7) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?
"beautifuller" . 8,100
"more beautiful" ..5,880,000.
"more happy"
"happier"
"older that"
"older than"
"the highest mountain of Britain"
"the highest mountain in Britain"
"the best player of the team"
"the best player in the team"

## comparison: revision test

(1) Write the comparatives and superlatives.
b tall ..taller, tallest
1 interesting
2 thin
3 cheap
4 easy
5 bad
6 beautiful
7 lazy
8 far
9 good
10 old

11 fat
12 happy
13 late
14 hot
15 slow
16 big
17 expensive
18 dirty
19 important
20 strong
(2) Put in as, than or that.

1 My feet are ................. cold................... ice.
2 She looks older ..................... her sister.
3 I think
4 Alice is much stronger .................. her brother.
5 Can't you eat faster that?

6 He's as funny .................... toothache.
7 The car ................... I saw was too small.
8 The cat seems worse $\qquad$ yesterday.
9 It's not as cold
10 She's got a more interesting job ................. me.
last week.
(3) Put in the correct words.

1 A kilogram is less .................. a tonne and ................... than a gram.
2 Jake is bad at languages, but he's not as bad as I
3 I get up early, at 6.30; George gets up .................... at 6.15, and Pam is the at 6.00 .
4 Please speak slowly.
5 Karl is .................. oldest player .................... the team.
6 'How many people can I invite?' ' ................... many ..................... you like.'

8 She's not .................... nice ..................... her brother.
9 Siberia is bigger .................... Europe.
10 Phil is a bad teacher, and Annie is .................. and Douglas is the
(4) These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

- He's the intelligentest man I have evermet. .........intelligent.

1 Which is the highest mountain of Europe?
2 We all play badly, but I'm the worse.
3 Julie has the more interesting job in our office.
4 Your house is much nicer as ours.
5 Please walk quicklier.
6 His eyes are hard like stones.
7 London is more big than Paris.
8 My sister is the beautifullest of the three girls.
9 Paul is the oldest from the three children.
10 Monday is worst day of the week.

## SECTION 17 conjunctions

## grammar summary

after although and as soon as because before but so until when while both... and either... or neither... nor (For if, see Section 18.) (If necessary, use a dictionary to check the meanings of these conjunctions.)

We use conjunctions to join sentences together.
I went to Germany because Emma was there. We went home after the concert finished.
I phoned as soon as I got the news.
Some conjunctions (and the words that follow them) can go in two places.
I cleaned my room before I went out. Before I went out, I cleaned my room.
We use present tenses to talk about the future with time-conjunctions.
I'll phone you when I arrive. Let's wait here until somebody comes.
She'll pay you as soon as she has the money.
We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words. We don't need to repeat unnecessary words with and.

I went downstairs and (I) opened the door. I've got friends in Canada and (in) Australia.
Could I have a knife and (a) fork?


## conjunctions: introduction and, but, because



2 Choose the best conjunction to join the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- I lived in Liverpool. I left school. (if, although, until) !. lived in liverpool until ! left school

1 We'll be glad. This job is finished. (when, or, while)

2 I'll be very angry. You do that again. (and, if, but)

3 I'd like to talk to you. You go home. (before, and, although)

4 Sue watched TV. John came home. (if, until, or)

5 We'll see you again. We come back from holiday. (while, after, and)

6 I like her. She's a difficult person. (because, before, although)

7 Henry didn't like working in a bank. He changed his job. (if, or, so)

8 They think they can do what they like. They're rich. (because, although, until)

9 I want to stop working. I'm 50. (if, before, and)

10 You look beautiful. You're smiling. (or, so, when)

# position of conjunctions If you need help, ask me. 

When we use conjunctions, there are often two possibilities.

1 Start with the conjunction (and the part that follows it).
CONJUNCTION bbbbb, aaaaa
IF you need help, please ask me. WHEN you are in London, phone us. ALTHOUGH it was raining, I went out. AS SOON AS she could, she went to bed.

2 Put the conjunction between the two parts of the sentence.
Aaaaa(,) CONJUNCTION bbbbb
Please ask me IF you need help.
Phone us WHEN you are in London.
I went out, ALTHOUGH it was raining hard. She went to bed AS SOON AS she could.

Note that we often put commas (,) in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences.
We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.

1) Put these sentences together in two ways.

- I enjoyed the film. The beginning was boring. (although)
! enjoyed the film although the beginning was boring
Although the beginning was boring: ! enjoyed the film
1 I put on two sweaters. It was very cold. (because)

2 I'm going to work in Australia. I leave school. (when)

3 I go and see Felix. I want to talk to somebody. (if)
$\qquad$
4 Ann made coffee. Bill fried some eggs. (while)

5 I was interested in the conversation. I didn't understand everything. (although)
$\qquad$
6 We went to a restaurant. There was no food in the house. (because)
$\qquad$

7 We'll have a big party. John comes home. (when)
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
8 I stayed with friends. My parents were travelling. (while)
$\qquad$

9 I go for long walks at the weekend. The weather's fine. (if)
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
10 Come and see us. You arrive in Scotland. (as soon as)
$\qquad$

[^12]We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when and as soon as.
I'll see you before you go. (NOT ... before you witl go.) We'll talk about it after I get back.
You can use my car while l'm in Ireland. Don't move until / tell you.
He'll phone when he gets home. (NOT ... when he will get home.)
We'll start the party as soon as Alice arrives.
1
Put in verbs from the box. Use the simple present.

(2) Put in verbs from the box (simple present or will).

| come find get give $\boldsymbol{f}$ help look after look start stop tell travel |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |

- I..'l. give.................. you my address before I say goodbye.

1 Lisa's going to live here until she ............................. a job.
2 We're going to look after Sue's flat while she ................................ round America.
31
you to clean the flat after I get back from work.
4 We're early - we've got half an hour before the lesson
5 I ............................. you the price as soon as I know myself.
6 Can I go and see Maggie while you the kids?
7 When I get time, I for a new place to live.
8 Mum's going to move to Scotland after she .....................................
9 I'll bring you a present when I home.
10 Things worse before they get better.
(3) Write five or more sentences about yourself, using some of the beginnings in the box.
When I leave school, I'll... When I finish university, I'll... When I get married, I'll ...
When I have children, l'll... When my children leave home, I'll... When I stop work, I'll ...
When I have time, I'll... When I'm $20 / 30 / 40 / 50 / 60 / 70 / 80 / 90 / 100$, I'll...

1
2
3
4
5
6
7 $\qquad$

For tenses with if see page 245 .

## because and so; although and but

```
We can say why things happen with because or so (but not both).
Because Sue was tired, she went to bed. / Sue went to bed because she was tired.
OR Sue was tired, so she went to bed. (BUT NOT Begause Sue was-tired, so she went to bed.)
We usually put a comma (,) before so. For more about commas with conjunctions, see page 235
1) Join the sentences with because (twice) and with so.
```

- He passed the exam. He had a good teacher.
Because he had a good teacher he passed the exam
He passed the exam because he had a good teacher
He had a good teacher so he passed the exam
1 I changed my hotel. The rooms were dirty
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

2 The taxi was late. We missed the train.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

3 I didn't like the film. I walked out of the cinema.

## We can say that things are not as we expect with although or but (but not both).

Although Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. OR Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete-was-tired, but he didn't go-to-bed.)

We usually put commas before although and but.
2 Join the sentences with although (twice) and with but.

- She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher

Although she had a bad teacher she passed the exam
She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher
she had a bad teacher but she passed the exam
1 I felt ill. I went on working
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

2 She was very kind. I didn't like her.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
3 He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words.
Sylvia won the first game and Pete won the second.
'What's she interested in?' 'Scottish dancing and mountain climbing.'
'What shall we have for supper?' 'Fish and chips.'
In lists, we usually put and between the last two things, and commas (,) between the others.
We need soap, bread, orange juice, tomatoes and sugar.
She was beautiful, intelligent and kind. (NOT . . . beautiftt, intelligent, kind.)

## (1) Write the sentences using and and commas.

- She speaks (French German Japanese Arabic).

She speaks French, German Japanese and Arabic.
1 My company has offices in (London Tokyo New York Cairo).

2 l've invited (Paul Alexandra Eric Luke Janet).

3 I'll be here on (Tuesday Thursday Friday Sunday).

4 She's got (five cats two dogs ahorse a rabbit).

5 He plays (golf rugby hockey badminton).

6 She (addressed stamped posted) the letter.

## When we use and, we do not usually repeat unnecessary words.

She sings and she plays the violin.
He plays tennis and he plays badminton.
They have offices in Britain and in America.
We stayed with my brother and my sister.
The house and the garden were full of people.
I've been to Greece and I've been to Turkey.
I washed my shirt and I dried my shirt.
$\rightarrow \quad$ She sings and plays the violin.
$\rightarrow \quad$ He plays tennis and badminton.
$\rightarrow \quad$ They have offices in Britain and America.
$\rightarrow \quad$ We stayed with my brother and sister.
$\rightarrow \quad$ The house and garden were full of people.
$\rightarrow \quad$ I've been to Greece and Turkey.
$\rightarrow \quad$ I washed and dried my shirt.

## (2) Cross out the unnecessary words, and put in commas if necessary.

- I speak Russian, and +speak English and + speak Swahili.

1 She has painted the kitchen and she has painted the living room and she has painted the dining room.
2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt and Bob was wearing blue jeans and Bob was wearing white trainers.
3 Can you give me a knife and can you give me a fork and can you give me a spoon, please?
4 Many people speak English in India and many people speak English in Singapore and many people speak English in South Africa.
5 I've written six letters and I've posted six letters this morning.

We use or in similar ways.
You can come with me or wait here. I don't speak German, French or Spanish.

## double conjunctions both ... and; (n)either ... (n)or


(2) Write some true sentences about yourself.

1 I can both
2 I can neither
3 Ilike both
4 Idon't like either
5 I haven't got either
6

## conjunctions: more practice

1) Tenses with time conjunctions. Put in the simple present or will ...

- 1. 'll phone you when I ..arrive
(phone; arrive)
1 | think I ................... some tea before I ................... to bed. (have; go)

21
3 When you
We
After we
We
I
8 Before I
9 As soon as the rain
, 1
breakfast after Luke
(wait; arrive)
here. (come; be)
back home. (be; go)
something for supper. (get; cook)
the money. (send; receive)
over. (be; be)
some Japanese lessons. (go; take)
shopping. (stop; go)
(have; get up)
2) Position of conjunctions. Put these sentences together in two ways.

- The weather's good. I go fishing at weekends. (if)

If the weather's good, ! go fishing at weekends.
!. go fishing at weekends if the weather's good.
1 The teacher was ill. The children had a holiday. (because)

2 I was in China. I made a lot of friends. (when)
$\qquad$

They built the new road. It was difficult to get to our village. (until)

4 Jessica wrote three letters. Dylan never answered. (although)

51
I phoned him. The work was finished. (as soon as)
$\qquad$

3 Double conjunctions. Make sentences with both and, either ... or or neither nor.
1 I (swim + playtennis + ).
2 He (lives / works) in Birmingham.
3 My father speaks (Greek - French - ).
4 She likes (pop music $\boldsymbol{\square}$ jazz $\boldsymbol{-}$ ).
5 You can have (orange juice / water).
6 I can (sing - dance - ).
7 He's (Scottish / Irish).
8 He's studying (physics + biology + ).
9 This sofa is (nice-looking - comfortable - ).
10 Anna (looked at Henry - spoke to him - ).
4) Grammar in a text. Put conjunctions from the box into the text.
although although and and and because because before so until when

Andy Probert was bored at school, $\qquad$ he left 2 $\qquad$ he was sixteen 3 got a job in a travel agency. He did not stay there very long, 4. $\qquad$ he liked the work. He decided to move $5 \ldots \ldots . . . . . . .$. . the pay was very low 6 $\qquad$ the hours were too long. His next job was in an import-export company. He liked that much better 7 $\qquad$ he travelled to America a lot 8 the work was very well paid. He worked there for three years, 9 9. he really understood the business; then he started his own company. Now he is doing very well, 10 the work is sometimes very hard. He says he wants to make enough money to stop working 11 he is 50 .
(5) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put the with the names of the instruments.

- (Steve, guitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.
- (Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.

1 (Karl, trombone, saxophone)
2 (Melanie, cello, drums)
3 (Steve, Karen, violin)
4 (Joanna, Charles, guitar)
5 (Karen, piano, trumpet)
6 (Sophie, guitar, trumpet)
7 (Charles, Steve, saxophone)
8 (Sophie, Steve, trumpet)

|  |  | ค年 <br> drums | trombone |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Joanna | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Karl | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| David | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Steve | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ |
| Melanie | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Sophie | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ |
| Karen | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ |
| Charles | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |

6. Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?
"as soon as we will arrive" . 9 .
"until it will stop"
"after they will finish"
"before I will arrive"
"while I will be there"
"as soon as we arrive" .24,600 .....
"until it stops."
"after they finish"
"before I arrive"
"while I am there"

## conjunctions: revision test

1) Choose the right conjunctions and put the sentences together.

- I was tired. I went to bed. (while, so, after)
! was tired, so ! went to bed.
1 I'm going to do some gardening. It gets dark. (because, but, until)

2 I couldn't read. It was too dark. (although, because, so)

3 The food wasn't very good. He ate everything. (so, but, because)

4 The lesson finished early. We went for a walk. (but, until, so)

5 I got his letter. I went round to see him. (after, although, while)

6 Jane gets up. She makes coffee. (as soon as, until, although)

7 You can't have any more coffee. There isn't any more. (so, because, why)

8 Ididn't go to work. The buses weren't running. (because, although, as soon as)

9 The buses weren't running. I didn't go to work. (until, so, as soon as)

10 The phone always rings. I'm having a bath. (while, until, so)

11 I can't tell you the decision. I know myself. (as soon as, while, until)

12 He didn't work very hard. He passed all his exams. (so, but, because)

13 The holiday was over. I had to start working very hard. (when, until)

14 Andrew saw Zoë. He fell madly in love with her. (as soon as, until, but)

15 I left school. I worked as a taxi driver. (until, after, while)

## 2) Correct the mistakes.

- You can either stay here either come with me. ...r

1 He plays neither the piano nor he plays the guitar.
2 Although the train was late, but I got there in time.
3 The house was small, cold, dirty.
4 Although it was raining, went out.
5 After Jake will get here, we'll all go swimming.
6 Because it was cold, so I put on a coat.
7 You can either come in my car or either walk home.
8 I need a knife and I need a fork.
9 Although I would like to help you, but I don't have time.
10 I play both classical music and I play jazz.
11 I'll change my job as soon as l'll find another one.
12 Will you still love me when l'll be old?

## SECTION 18 if

## grammar summary

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if.
He won't come tomorrow if he came yesterday.
If that was Mary, why didn't she stop and say hello?
Ifyou've been to Paris, you've seen the Eiffel Tower.
Oil floats if you pour it on water.
If you're happy, I'm happy.

Note the following three important structures:

- present tenses for future:

With if, we use present tenses to talk about the future.
I'll phone you if I have time. (NOT ... iftwill have-time.)

- if + past, ... would ...

We can use past tenses with if to show that something is not real or not probable now.
(We normally use would in the other part of the sentence.)
If I had more money, I would buy a car now.

- if + past perfect, ... would have ...

To talk about unreal past events - things that did not happen - we use if + past perfect.
(We normally use would have + past participle in the other part of the sentence.)
I'm sorry you had all those problems. If you had asked me, I would have helped you.

These three structures are often called 'first', 'second' and 'third conditional'.
The structure with two present tenses (e.g. If you're happy, I'm happy) is sometimes called 'zero conditional', for no very good reason.

We can use unless to mean 'if not', 'except if'.
You can't come in unless you have a ticket. (= ' if you don't have a ticket.')

If you were the only girl in the world, and I were the only boy . . .
(Song by Clifford Grey, British songwriter, born 1937)

If you can find something that everyone agrees on, it's wrong.
(Mo Udall, American politician, 1922-1998)

If God did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him.
(Voltaire, French writer, 1694-1788)

[^13]If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, . . you'll be a man, my son.
(Rudyard Kipling, British short-story writer, novelist and poet, 1865-1936)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you just don't know what's going on.
(British Army saying)

If one morning I walked on top of the water across Potomac River, the headline that afternoon would read "President Can't Swim". (Lyndon B. Johnson, American politician, 1908-1973 - President 1963-1969)

If the human mind was simple enough to understand, we'd be too simple to understand it.
(Emerson Pugh, American writer on technology)

## if: position; unless

An if-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (). If I have time, I'll clean up the garden. I'll clean up the garden if I have time.

## (1) Use if to put these sentences together in two ways.

- Joe works at Brown's. He probably knows Annie.

If loe works at Brown's he probably knows Annie. Ane:
loe probably knows Annie if he works at Brown's.
1 I can't sleep. I get up and read.

2 You take books from my room. Please tell me.

3 You're hungry. Why don't you cook some soup?

4 She's been travelling all day. She must be tired

5 We catch the first train. We can be in London by 9.00.

## We can use unless to mean 'if ... not', 'except if'

You can't come in unless you have a ticket. (= 'You can't come in if you don't have a ticket.)
Unless l'm very tired, I go to bed about midnight. (= 'Except if I'm very tired ...')
2 Rewrite these sentences with unless.

- Children can't go in if they are not with an adult. children can't go in unless they are with an adult.
- If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. unkes you give me my money. !'m going to the police.
1 You can't park here if you don't live in this street.

2 If you are not over 15, you can't see this film.

3 I don't drive fast except if I'm really late.

4
If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays.

5 We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV.

6
I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling.

7
If it's not raining, I play tennis most evenings.

8
I can't help you if you don't tell me the truth.

## if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. But after if, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future.
If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll eat in the garden. I'll phone you if I hear from Alice. I'll be sorry if I don't pass this exam.
(1) Choose the best verb to complete the sentence.

- I'll buy you a sweater if I ..find........... a nice one. (find, hold, pay)
- If it rains, we '.!. have........ the party indoors. (think, play, have)

1 I'll be glad if I .................... a letter from Jack tomorrow. (expect, get, decide)
2 Olivia ................... back your bike if she remembers. (come, bring, sell)
3 If you like, I ................... you Japanese lessons. (bring, hold, give)
4 If Alex ..................... tell him I'm out. (phone, stop, write)
5 We'll stop and see you in Dublin if we .................... time. (give, think, have)
6 I'll give you $£ 100$ if you .................... smoking. (stay, stop, break)
7 I
I ................... very surprised if Angela marries Jack. (be, stand, find)
8 If you sing, I ..................... I promise. (not learn, not laugh, not drive)
9 If you cook lunch, I ..................... supper. (eat, drink, cook)
10 The government will do what it likes if nobody .................... it. (stop, speak, find)
(2) Put in the correct verb forms.

(3) Make sentences with if.

I'm afraid the bus will be late.

- $(\rightarrow$ get to work late again) ..If the bus is late, !'ll get to worte late again
- $(\rightarrow$ lose my job) ..!f! get to work Late again. !'ll Lose my job.
$1 \quad$ not find another job) If I lose my job,

2 ( $\rightarrow$ lose my flat)
$3(\rightarrow$ move back to my parents' house)
$4(\rightarrow$ get very bored)
$5(\rightarrow$ go swimming every day)
$6(\longrightarrow$ look very good)
7 ( $\rightarrow$ meet interesting people)
$8 \longleftrightarrow$ go to lots of parties)
$9 ~(~ h a v e ~ a ~ w o n d e r f u l ~ t i m e) ~$

## not real / not probable If dogs could talk,

We use if + past tense + would to talk about things that are not real or not probable now.

| IF + PAST TENSE | WOULD + INFINITIVE (WITHOUT TO) |
| :--- | :--- |
| If I had a million dollars, | I would build a big swimming pool. |
| If you were the President, | what would you do? <br> they would tell some interesting stories. <br> If dogs could talk, <br> he'd have more money. |

Contractions (see page 301 ): I would $\rightarrow$ I'd, you would $\rightarrow$ you'd etc
(1) Put in the correct forms of the correct verbs.

(2) Make sentences beginning with if.

- My parents don't live near here, so I don't see them at weekends.

If my parents lived near here, I would see them at weekends.
1 We won't play cards because Jane and Peter aren't here. If Jane
2 We haven't got enough money, so we won't buy a new car.

3 Fred doesn't answer letters, so I don't write to him.

4 I won't take your photo because I can't find my camera.

5 I don't enjoy opera because I can't understand the words.

6 I don't like Carola because she talks about herself all the time.

7 I haven't got a dog, so I don't go for walks.
(3) What would you do if you had a free year and a lot of money? Write three or more sentences.


If were you,

We sometimes use were instead of was after if. This is usually rather formal.
If I were taller I would play basketball. If John were here, he would know what to do.
We often say If I were you, I would / I'd ...., when we want to give people advice.
If I were you, I'd get a new car. I wouldn't stand there if I were you.
1 Write sentences with if I were you, using the expressions in the box.

| call the police at once $\quad$ fly | not sell it | join a club | see a doctor $\Omega$ take a holiday |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

- 'I feel ill.' ..!f.! were you !'d see a doctor.

1 'I'm really tired.'
2 'I haven't got any friends.'
3 'Shall I take the train to Scotland?'
4 'Somebody has stolen my car.'
5 'Otto wants to buy my motorbike.'
2 John Baker has won a lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

```
buy a sports car buy a house \(\checkmark\) give the money away have a big party
put the money in the bank start a business stop work travel round the world
```

- JOHN'S GIRLFRIEND: ..!f! were you, !'d buy a house:

1 HIS MOTHER:
2 HIS FATHER:
3 HIS BROTHER:
4 HIS GRANDMOTHER:
5 HIS SISTER:
6 HIS FRIEND JOE:
7 HIS FRIEND STEPHANIE:


If I go ..., I will ...; If I went ..., I would ...

The difference between if I go and if I went (for example) is not a difference of time. We can use both if $1 \mathrm{go} / \mathrm{see}$ etc and if I went/saw etc to talk about the present or future.
With if, a past tense does not mean 'past time'; it means 'not real' or 'not probable'.

## PROBABLE/POSSIBLE NOT REAL/NOT PROBABLE

If I go to London, I'll visit Tony.
If I went to the moon, I would take a lot of photos.
If I see Ann, I'll give her your address.
If I saw the Prime Minister, I would say 'hello.'
(1) Choose the best sentence-beginning.

- If l live) lived to be $75, \ldots$

1 If I live / lived to be 175, ...
2 If dogs can / could talk,
3 If I go/went shopping next week, ...
4 If Switzerland starts/started a war against Australia,
5 If the government gives / gave everybody a month's holiday with pay, ...
6 If you need / needed help one day, ..
7 If everybody gives/gave 10\% of their money to poor countries,
8 If everybody thinks / thought the same as me,...
9 If I am / was the most intelligent person in the world, ..
10 If prices $g o$ / went up next year, ..
2 Choose the best way to continue the sentences.

- I'm not going to open the window. If I open opened the window, it will /would be too noisy.
- Maybe l'll open a window. But if Iopen/opened a window, it will) would be very noisy.

1 I'm going to get up early tomorrow. If I have / had time, I'll / 'd walk to work.
2 If I have / had time, I 'll / 'd walk to work, but it's just not possible.
3 'I may get a job in Germany.' 'If you get / got it, what will / would your boyfriend say?'
4 'There's a job in Germany, but I don't think I'll get it.' 'If you get / got it, what will / would your boyfriend say?'
5 We never leave food on the table. If we do / did, the cat will / would eat it.
6 'Shall I put this on the table?' 'If you do / did, the cat will / would eat it.'
7 I'll probably go to university. But if I go / went, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
8 I'm not going to go to university. If I go / went to university, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
9 Maybe Jenny will marry Phil. But if she does / did, I'm afraid she won't / wouldn't be happy.
10 Phil isn't going to marry Jenny. Because if he does / did, he will / would have a terrible time with her.
(3) Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1 If I live to be 90,
If I lived to be 190,
3 If I learn more English,
4 If I learnt 20 languages,
5 If I go to New York,
6 If I went to the moon,

## unreal past If A had happened, B would have happened.

We can use if to talk about unreal past events - things that didn't happen. We use the past perfect and would have + past participle.

```
IF + PAST PERFECT
If the weather had been better,
If you had asked me,
If Maryhad seen you,
If she hadn't gone skiing.
WOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE
we would have gone to the sea. (But it wasn't, so we didn't.)
I would have helped you. (But you didn't, so I didn't.)
what would you have said? (But she didn't.)
she wouldn't have fallen and broken her leg. (But she did.)
```



## 2 Getting up early is bad for you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.

```
get up early }->\mathrm{ catch the 8.15 train }\longrightarrow\mathrm{ sit by a beautiful foreign woman
fall in love and marry her }->\mathrm{ go to live in her country }->\mathrm{ work in her father's diamond business
become very rich }->\mathrm{ go into politics }->\mathrm{ die in a revolution
```

- If. I had got up early I would have caught the 8.15 train.
1 If I had caught

2 $\qquad$
$\qquad$
3

4 $\qquad$
5 $\qquad$

6 $\qquad$
7
$\qquad$

## if: more practice

1 Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Put the beginnings and ends together. (Different answers are possible.).

```
If I had a lot of money,
If you ask me nicely,
If the news was always good,
If we go to the country,
If we go skiing,
If everybody spoke English,
If I come to your party,
If everybody was telepathic,
If politicians told the truth,
If we go swimming,
If animals could talk,
```

$\begin{array}{ll}\text { A } & \text { I would give it all to you. ...... } \\ \text { B } & \text { I'll break my leg. ...... } \\ \text { C } & \text { nobody would believe them. ....... } \\ \text { D } & \text { I'll dance all night. ...... } \\ \text { E } & \text { I'll wear my new bikini. ...... } \\ \text { F } & \text { it would be a disaster. ...... } \\ \text { G I'll make you a cup of tea. ...... } \\ \text { H } & \text { newspapers wouldn't have many pages. ....... } \\ \text { I } & \text { they might say some interesting things. ...... } \\ \text { J I'll take my bicycle. ...... } \\ \text { K } & \text { international communication would be much easier. ...... }\end{array}$

2 Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Choose the best ways to continue the sentences.

- I think I'll study medicine. But I know if I(do) did that, ' '11' 'd have to work very hard.
- She's a very generous person. If she wins /(won the lottery, she will /would give it all away.

1 I'm not going to buy a car. If l buy / bought a car I will / would spend all my money on it.
2 I really must go and see Sandra. But if I go / went and see / saw her, I'll / 'd have to talk to her stupid brother.
3 My parents live a long way away. If they live / lived nearer, I will / would see them more often.
4 We're going to stay at home this evening. If we go / went out, we won't / wouldn't do anything interesting.
5 Those exams are difficult. Unless you start / started working harder, you won't / wouldn't pass.
6 The United Moderate Anarchist Party will probably win the election. And if they win / won, the country will / would be in deep trouble.
7 I'm glad Marion isn't going to marry Jack. Because if she marries / married him she will / would be very unhappy.
8 Maybe I'll take you to London with me. But if I take / took you, you'll / 'd have to pay for your ticket.
9 If it rains / rained again tomorrow, I won't / wouldn't go cycling.
10 Dylan never tells the truth. And if he does / did, I won't / wouldn't believe him.
(3) Grammar in a text. Put in the missing words.

## The laws of work

1. If anything can go wrong, it go wrong.
2. If a job looks easy, it's difficult. If it $\qquad$ difficult, ............... impossible.
3. If you think a job will take two hours, it $\qquad$ take four days. If you think it
............... take four days, it eight weeks. And so on.
4. If you throw something away, you need it the next day.
5. If you do what everybody wants you to do, somebody $\qquad$ like it.
6 If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody $\qquad$
4) Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.

| 1 | If I . . . . . . ........................ coffee last night, I ................................ better. (not drink; sleep) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | If my parents $\qquad$ more money, I $\qquad$ to university after I left school. (have; go) |
| 3 | Jessica to Brazil last year if she $\qquad$ Pete. (go; not meet) |
| 4 |  |
| 5 | I ............................... the bus if I .................................. (catch; run) |
| 6 | If he ............................... smoking, he ................................. longer. (stop; live) |
| 7 | I ................................ you for help unless I .................................. it. (not ask; need) |
| 8 |  |
| 9 | 1. a sweater if I $\qquad$ it was going to be so cold. (wear; know) |
| 10 | If we . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . time we . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . to see Uncle Pete. (have; go) |

(5) Unreal past. Read the text and complete the chain of if-sentences.

> HOT WEATHER IS GOOD FOR YOU
> It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate her supper, so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an advertisement for a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it was a hot day!

If it hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door. If she hadn't opened the door, the cat her supper. If the cat
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

6) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: names of languages

Anna is going to work in another country next year. See if you can make sentences with the correct language names. Use a dictionary if necessary.
Arabic Chinese $\Omega$ Dutch German Greek Portuguese Swahili

- (China) . If she goes to china, she will have to hearn chinese:

1 (Egypt) If she
عربي
中 文

2 (Brazil)
3 (Holland)
4 (Kenya)
5 (Greece)
6 (Austria)

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out which of the following are more common.
"unless I buy" . 104.00
"if I were you"
"if she knew"
"if we go"
"if they had said"
"unless I will buy" ...6
"if I was you"
"if she would know"
"if we will go"
"if they would have said"

## if: revision test

(1) Put in the correct verb forms.

|  | I'm sure John ...will.....p..................... you if you ask him. (help) |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | I would be very happy if I ..had.............................. more friends. (have) |
| 1 | If you ................................. your glasses, you would see much better. (clean) |
| 2 | If Peter lives in Little Compton, he probably ................................... my friend Jack. (know) |
| 3 | I .......................... and see you tomorrow if I have time. (come) |
| 4 | If she spoke more slowly, perhaps I .................................... her. (understand) |
| 5 | If you ................................... at 12.00, you will arrive at 3.20. (leave) |
| 6 | I ................................... my car unless I needed money. (not sell) |
| 7 | If you .................................. so far away, it would be easier for us to see each other. (not live) |
| 8 | I .......................... this letter for you if I can find my dictionary. (translate) |
| 9 | If I ................................... you very nicely, will you make me some coffee? (ask) |
|  | If water .................................. very cold, it becomes ice. (get) |

(2) Five of sentences 1-10 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

- I usually get up and watch TV if I can't sleep. ..............
- I wouldn't do that if I weutelbe you. ....ere.

1 I'll be very happy if I'll pass the exam.
2 If she's from Russia, she probably speaks Russian.
3 If he would eat more, he wouldn't be so thin.
4 If I don't see you today, I see you next week.
5 l'll come and see you on Wednesday if I have time.
6 If we left early tomorrow morning, we would arrive before 12.00 .
7 Unless he doesn't work harder, he won't pass his exams.
8 If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I'll play tennis with James.
9 We'll go and see Max and Chris if we'll be in Berlin.
10 I would get a better job if I could find one.

## (3) Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.

| 1 | If I ..................................... Michael, |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | If Alex .................................. in London yesterday I ................................... to see him. (be; go) |
| 3 | I'm sorry. I $\qquad$ that if I $\qquad$ that your mother was listening. (not say; know) |
| 4 | It better if you $\qquad$ nothing when the policeman stopped you. (be; say) |
| 5 | If 1 $\qquad$ on that bus, I $\qquad$ my girlfriend. (not get; not meet) |
| 6 | Lucy if we $\qquad$ her to hospital when she started feeling ill. (die; not take) |
| 7 | so tired last night, I ...................................... out. (not be; go) |
| 8 | If 1 $\qquad$ what my father wanted, I $\qquad$ medicine. (do; study) |
| 9 | Mark $\qquad$ skiing last winter if he $\qquad$ enough money. (go; have) |
| 10 | If you me yesterday, I $\qquad$ in deep trouble. (not help; be) |

## grammar summary

who (whom) which that what

We use who for people and which for things. We can also use that for people and things.
There's the man who/that sold me my bike. She said a word which/that I didn't hear.
We often leave out object pronouns, but not subject pronouns.
Do you remember those photos (which/that) I showed you?
The photos which/that show the beach are beautiful. (NOT Fhe photes-show the beach ...)
Prepositions can often go in two places.
The woman about whom we were talking walked into the room. (formal)
The woman that we were talking about walked into the room. (conversational)
We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which'.
The children always eat what I cook.
art-ist 0-w |'a:trst; NAmE 'a:rt-/ noun
10 a person who creates works of art, especially paintings or drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporary British artists o a graphic artist o a make-up artist o Police have issued an artist's impression of her attacker. o (Jigurative) Whoever made this cake is a real artist. D COllocations at ART 2 on (especially BrE ar tiste /a:'ti:st; NAmE a:r't-1) a professional entertainer such as a singer, a dancer or an actor: a recording/solo artist
bee /bi:/ noun 1 a black and yellow flying insect that can sting. Bees live in large groups and make HONEY ( $=$ a sweet sticky substance that is good to eat): a swarm of bees - a bee sting o Bees were buzzing in ehe clover. 9 bee BEEHIVE, BEESWAX, were buzzing in the clover: I see also meeting in a group, bumblebee, QUEEN BEE 2 (NAmE) a tion and pleasure: a people combine work, competiIOM the bee's knewing bee $\boldsymbol{\jmath}$ see also sPELLING bee thing: She thinks she's (informal) an excellent person or opinion of herself). have a skees ( $=$ she has a very high sth (informal) to think a bee in your bonnet about think that it is very important about sth all the time and to
think that it is very important 9 more at bird, busy adj.
build•er /'bilda(r)/ noun 1 a person or company whose job is to build or repair houses or other buildings 2 (usually in compounds) a person or thing that builds, creates or develops sth: a shipbuilder $\diamond$ a confidence builder $\boldsymbol{\supset}$ see also BODYBUILDER
burg-lar /'b3:gla(r); NAmE 'b3:rg-/ noun a person who enters a building illegally in order to steal


## bus O~/bas/ noun, verb

- noun (pl. buses, US also busses) 1 an a large road vehicle that carries passengers, especially one that travels along a fixed route and stops regularly to let people get on and off: Shall we walk or go by bus? © A regular bus service connects the train station with the town centre. o a bus company/ driver $\circ$ a school bus D visual vocab page V46 2 compare coach 9 see also bus LANE, bus SHELTER bus station, bus stop, minibus, trolleybus 2 (com. part of a computer system carries information from one part of a computer system to another
verb (-s- or -ss-) $\mathbf{1 \sim \mathbf { ~ s b } \text { (from/to...) to transport sb by bus: }}$ We were bussed from to transport young people by bus to hotel. $\mathbf{2 \sim} \sim$ sb (NAmE) students of differen people by bus to another area so that sth (NAmE) to take the dices can be educated together 3 ~ restaurant, as a job


## cheese 0 - $/ t \mathrm{si}: z /$ noun

1 om [U, Cl a type of food made from milk that can be either soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a particular type of this food: Cheddar cheese $\circ$ goat's cheese ( = made from the milk of a GOAT) •a cheese sandwich salad $\circ a$ chunk/piece/slice of cheese $\circ$ a selection of French cheeses $\circ$ a cheese knife $(=$ a knife with a special curved blade with two points on the end, used for cutting and picking up pieces of cheese) $\boldsymbol{O}$ visual vocab page V19

## plant Ow /plaint; NAmE plænt/ noun, verb

- noun
- LIVING THING 1 and [C] a living thing that grows in the earth and usually has a STEM, leaves and roots, especially one wat is smaller than a tree or bush: All plants need light and water. $\circ$ flowerins/garden/indoor plants $\circ$ a tomato/potato plant o the animal and plant life of the area Ocollocations at life $\rho_{\text {visuai vocab page vo area }}$ also bedding plant house plainocab page vg os see PLANT
sau.cer /'so:sa(r)/ noun a small shallow round dish that a cup stands on; an object that is shaped like this: cups and saucers Ovisual vocab page V19 osee also flying SAUCER


## relative who and which the keys which I lost

## We can use sentences to describe nouns.

To join sentences to nouns, we use relative pronouns: who (for people) and which (for things).


(1) Put in who or which.

1 The people ................... live downstairs are Irish.
2 The shop .................. sells that good bread is closed today.
3 The dictionary ................... I bought yesterday isn't very good.
4 That cheese .................... you like comes from Scotland.
5 Do you know the girls ................... are standing by the window?
6 I cant find the key .................... opens this door.
7 I've lost the earrings .................... Harry gave me.
8 The police are looking for three men ................... robbed the National Bank yesterday.
9 We know the woman .................... teaches French at Jane's school.
10 Here's a word .................... I I don't understand.
11 Are those the shoes .................... Tracy has just bought?
12 I had just one teacher .................... was really good.

We use who or which instead of he, him, she, it etc. Don't use both.
The woman who she teaches me French is ill. Here's the address which you wanted)
(2) Circle the correct answer.

1 There's the man who took / he took your coat.
2 Do you know the people who live / they live next door?
3 I like that woman; she is / is very kind.
4 I've found the keys which I lost / lost them.
5 Do you like the new dress which I bought / bought it yesterday?
6 The car which is parked / it is parked outside belongs to Susan.
7 This is a new kind of knife: cuts / it cuts everything.
8 The poems which Mark writes/writes them are very hard to understand.
9 We've got three children who make / they make a lot of noise.
10 What did you do with the sweater which I lent you / I lent you it?

The man who makes no mistakes does not usually make anything.
(EJPhelps)
(3) Look at the picture and the information, and write sentences with who.

- The man and woman who live in flat 8 are from scotland

4
5
6
7

| FLAT | INFORMATION |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1 | play loud music all night |
| 2 | broke her leg skiing |
| 3 | play golf all day |
| 4 | haven't got much money |
| 5 | has three children |
| 6 | drives a Rolls-Royce |
| 7 | are hiding from the police |
| 8 | are from Scotland |


(4) Join the sentences in the place marked *. Change he, it etc to who or which.

- Most of the people* speak German. They live in Austria. Most of the people who live in Austria speak German
- I know a shop*. It sells really good meat.
! know a shop which sells really.good meat.
1 The bus* isn't running today. It goes to Oxford.

2 Yesterday I met a man*. He works with your brother.

3 The child* was ill. She didn't come to the party.

4 Can you pick up the papers*? They are lying on the floor.

5 The eggs* were bad. I bought them yesterday.

6 Here's the book*. You asked me to buy it for you.

7 I don't like the man*. He is going out with my sister.

We can use whom for people when the relative pronoun is the object of the following verb.
I've just got a postcard from a woman whom I met on holiday last year. (I met the woman.)
But whom is formal and unusual. In spoken English, we more often use that (see page 256), who or nothing (see page 257).
l've just got a postcard from a woman who/that I met on holiday last year. OR I've just got a postcard from a woman I met on holiday last year.

## relative that a bird that can't fly

## We can use that instead of who or which.

The man that lives at number 8 is getting married. You haven't drunk the tea that I made for you.
(1) Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that.

- I'd like to speak to the person*. She wrote this letter. !'d like to speake to the person that wrote this letter.
- The tomatoes* are all bad. I bought them yesterday.

The tomatoes that ! bought yesterday are all bad
1 Joe's got a motorbike*. It can do 200 km an hour.

2 Is that the computer*? It doesn't work.

3 Those are the trousers*. I use them for gardening.

4 A man* wants to marry my sister. He lives in New York.

5 The doctors* all said different things. They looked at my leg.

6 The flowers* are beautiful. You gave them to Aunt Sarah.

7 The children* have gone on holiday. They play football with Paul.

2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that fly Write descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary.

```
can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey \(\checkmark\) doesn't make honey and can bite you
```



## leaving out relative pronouns the car (that) you bought

When a relative pronoun (who/which/that) is the object of the following verb, we often leave it out.
But we can't leave out a relative pronoun when it is the subject of the following verb.
(I phoned a man.)
The man that I phoned spoke Spanish.
$\rightarrow$ The man I phoned spoke Spanish.
The train that you want leaves at 10.00 .
$\rightarrow$ The train you want leaves at 10.00 .
(A man phoned me.)
The man that phoned me spoke Greek.
(NOT The man phened me-spoke Gfeek.)
The train that stops at York goes at 8.00.
(NOT The-train-stops af York goes at 8:00.)

Is the relative pronoun the subject $(S)$ or object $(O)$ of the following verb?

- the woman who wrote this letter ..
- the film that I saw ..?

1 the languages that she spoke
2 a woman who helped me
3 the sweater which I wore

4 a man who(m) I helped
5 the weather that we have had
6 a machine that makes paper
7 that car which you bought
8 the man who cuts my hair

2 Look at Exercise 1. Find the expressions with object relative pronouns and rewrite them without who(m), which or that.

3) Join the sentences in the place marked * without using who, which or that.

- The cup of coffee* is on the table. You wanted it. The cup. of offfee you wanted is on the table.
1 I'm working for a man*. I've known him for twenty years.

2 They played a lot of music*. I didn't like it.

3 The campsite* was very dirty. We found it.

4 I'm going on holiday with some people*. I know them.

5 That book* is very good. You gave it to me.

6 The ring* belonged to her grandmother. She lost it.

7 I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years ago.

8 The papers* are on the table. You wanted them.
(4) Write three sentences beginning Everybody I know ..

- ..Everybody ! know likes rock music.

1
2
3

## prepositions the man that she works for

Some verbs have prepositions with them (see page 141) - for example look at, listen to.
When relative pronouns are the objects of these verbs, there are two possibilities:

- keep the preposition with the verb (more informal; we can leave out who(m)/which/that.)

The woman smiled. I was looking at her. $\rightarrow$ The woman (whom/that) I was looking at smiled.
The flat was dirty. He lived in it. $\rightarrow$ The flat he lived in was dirty.

- put the preposition before whom/which (very formal)

The woman at whom I was looking smiled.
The flat in which he lived was dirty.
(1) Change these expressions to make them more conversational. Use that.

- a boy with whom I went to school a boy that I went to school with

1 the girl about whom I was talking
2 the people for whom I work
3 the house in which I live
4 the music to which you are listening
5 the bus on which I go to work

## 2 Rewrite the expressions from Exercise 1, but leave out that.

- a boy! went to school with 3
1 4

2
5
3. Look at the information about Helen, and then make sentences (like the example) about the people in her life.

> Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom.

## - Ruby is ..the friend she lives with

1 Eric is
2 Monica is
3 Karen is
4 Emily and Jack are
5 Tom is
4) Now write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.

For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings.

- The friend she lives
with gave her a handbag:
1 The man she works
2 The woman
3 The 80-year-old woman
4 The people
5 The man


## relative what It was just what I wanted.

We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which/that' or 'anything that'.
Have you got what you need for your journey? (='... the things that you need ...')
I'm sorry about what happened. 'Can I have something to eat?' 'Take what you like.'
We use what with a singular verb.
What I bought was mostly very cheap. (NOT What tbought wefe ...)
(1) Change the words in italics to what.

- The things that she said weren't true.

What she said wasn't true.
1 The things that he did made everybody angry.

2 Take anything that you want.

3 Soap - that's the thing that I forgot to pack!

4 She gave me a watch. It was just the thing that I wanted.

5 That child does anything that he likes.

6 The things that I read in the paper make me unhappy.

7 Don't tell me things that I know already.

8 The thing that I like best in life is doing nothing.
(2) Write a sentence beginning What I need is

We use that, not what, after anything, something, nothing, everything, all and the only thing.
You can take anything that you want. (NOT ... anything what you want.)
The shop had nothing that I wanted. All that I could do was stand and watch.
Money is the only thing in the world that matters to him.

## Write a sentence beginning Whatlneed is ...

3 P
Put in that or what.

| I believe everything .............. she says. | 7 | I can't eat everything .............. \| like. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\ldots . . . . . . . . .$. she did surprised everybody. | 8 | The only thing ............. 1 forgot |
| I can't give you ............... you want. |  | was toothpaste. |
| He said nothing .............. was important. | 9 | Ask Peter - he'll tell you ............... you need |
| I can't eat .............. I I like. |  | to know. |
| .... you need is a holiday. | 10 | She said something ............ was very helpful. |

## relative pronouns: more practice

(1) Use of who and which. Join the sentences in the place marked ${ }^{*}$, using who or which.

- Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it. Yesterday ! saw a fulm which you would like.

1 I know a man.* He writes film music.

2 The bus* got to London twenty minutes late. I took it.

3 We have friends*. They live in Chicago.

4 The car* isn't very good. I bought it last month.

5 We stayed in a hotel*. It had a beautiful garden.

6 Ididn't like the man*. My sister married him.

7 The people* weren't very interesting. They were at the party.

8 Tim uses long words*. I can't understand them.

9 The computer* crashes every five minutes. I'm using it.

10 The woman* is terribly nice. She works in the flower shop.
(2) Use of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that.

1 The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.

2 These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper.

3 The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons.

4 The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door.

5 I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them.

6 What did you do with the money*? We collected it.

7 People* are called linguists. They study languages.

8 We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.

9 The oranges* are all bad. You bought them.

10 Why did you throw away the soup*? I cooked it.
(3) Leaving out who, which or that. Rewrite the words in italics without relative pronouns if it's possible. If not, write 'No change'.

- Where's the book which I was reading? ..the book ! was reading.
- The people who live next door are German. No change:

1 The clock that I bought doesn't work.
2 I didn't like the film which I saw last night.
3 Here's the letter that came for you.
4 It was a journey that took twelve hours.
5 He was a man that I really disliked.
6 I had an experience which changed my life.
7 What happened to that dog which you had?
8 I know a woman who speaks eight languages.
9 Do you know anybody who can play the trumpet?
10 Did you see those earrings that I bought for Helen?
4 Grammar in a text. Cross out that if it can be left out.
'How was that hotel I suggested?' 'That hotel! The rooms that they put us in were like cupboards, the beds that they gave us were much too small, and the extra blankets that we asked for never arrived. The 'full English breakfast' that they served was uneatable, and the 'French champagne' that we ordered at dinner was undrinkable. And that brochure that you showed me was full of lies. The 'view of the sea' that they talked about was a view of the car park, and the gym that they advertised wasn't there. And then, the bill that we got at the end was unbelievable. Never again!'
(5) Position of prepositions. Make these expressions more conversational.

- a boy tewhemiltalked ..to.

1 the book at which I was looking
2 the people for whom I work
3 the hotel in which we stayed
4 the place to which I drove
5 those people to whom we were talking

6 the train on which we travelled
7 some people with whom I work
8 the place about which I was telling you
9 the pen with which I write
10 the small village in which my mother lives
6) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jewellery Read the text and complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Anna, Naomi, Sally, Jane, Jessica and Thalia have all got rich boyfriends. For Christmas, Anna wanted a gold watch, Naomi wanted a diamond brooch, Sally wanted sapphire earrings, Jane wanted a pearl necklace, Jessica wanted a ruby ring and Thalia wanted a silver bracelet. But:

Anna got a diamond brooch, so ..Anna got what Naomi wanted:
1 Naomi got a ruby ring, so
2 Sally got a silver bracelet, so
3 Jane got a gold watch, so
4 Jessica got a pearl necklace, so
5 Thalia got sapphire earrings, so

(7) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find five simple sentences beginning "Everybody I know likes ...". Write one yourself.


## relative pronouns: revision test

## (1) Which answer is right: $A, B$ or both?

The people ... play loud music very late. A who live downstairs B live downstairs
I don't much like the music .... A) they play B that they play
1 The girls ... gave me flowers for my birthday. A with whom I work B that I work with
2 Idon't want a phone ... more intelligent than me. A that is B is
3 Where's the paper ...? A that you wrote the address on B that you wrote the address on it
4 Ilike people ... laugh at themselves. A can B who can
5 ... she said made me very angry. A What B That what
6 Yesterday everything ... was wrong. There are days like that. A I did B that I did
7 'What do you call a thing that ... bottles?' 'A bottle-opener.' A opens B it opens
8 There are the keys .... A I was looking for B that I was looking for
9 The train ... was very uncomfortable. A in which we travelled B which we travelled in
10 There's a shop near here... open all night. A that stays B which stays
11 I've found the shoes .... A that I lost B that I lost them
12 Do you know anybody ... Russian? A who speaks B speaks
13 She married a man ... on holiday. A she met B that she met
14 The woman ... wanted to speak to James. A phoned B who phoned
15 Who were those people that you ...? A were talking to B were talking to them

## $x$ of sentences 1-15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

The people live next door have got five children. .......
Do you know a shop which sells good cheese? ......rect.
I didn't understand the language which she was speaking.
We stayed in a hotel who had a beautiful garden.
I didn't understand the language she was speaking.
Is the book you're reading interesting?
I didn't understand the language that she was speaking.
The woman came to dinner stayed very late.
A vet is a doctor who works with animals.
I didn't like the man which my sister married.
Did I tell you about the film which we saw last night?
Eric said a word which I couldn't understand it.
I'm spending the day with some people I know.
People what live in London are called 'Londoners'.
There's the man I was telling you about.
The train I came home on was an hour late.
I don't like people that you can't relax with them.

## 3) Put in that or what.

I like everything
you cook.
Nobody rememers everything .............. they do.
3 I said shocked everybody.
6 Ilearntnothing $\qquad$ was useful.
7 Peter will tell you ............... you have to do. 8 I can't wear ............... I like at work.
$9 \ldots . . . . . . .$. you need is a long holiday. $10^{\circ}$ Amy said something $\qquad$ was interesting.

I need is a toothpaste.
5 They couldn't give me $\qquad$ I asked for.

## SECTION 20 indirect speech

## grammar summary

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.
Tenses, here-and-now words (like this, here, today) and pronouns (like $I$, you) may change in indirect speech. This is because the time, place and speaker may be different.

I really like it here.' Bill said that he really liked it there.
We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say and think. Bill said he really liked it there.
Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions.
'What is your phone number?' He asked me what my phone number was.
'Do you like cherries?' She asked me if I liked cherries.
We can use object + infinitive (with to) after ask and tell.
lasked him to make some coffee. She told the children not to make a noise.

## PROMISES, PROMISES

'You said I was beautiful.'
'You are more beautiful every day.'
'You said you loved me.'
'And it's true. I love you. Deeply. Passionately.'
'You told me you would love me for ever.'
'And I will. For ever and ever.'
'You said you would never look at another woman.'
'I have never looked at another woman. I shut my eyes when one comes close.'
'You told me you were rich.'
'We have a solid gold bath with diamond taps.'
'You told me you wanted children.'
'We have thirteen children.'
'You said you could cook'.
'I cook you a magnificent five-course dinner every night.'
'You told me you would bring me a cup of tea in bed every morning.'
'You get a cup of tea in bed every morning. With biscuits and the newspaper.'
'You said you could play the saxophone.'
'I am a world-famous saxophonist.'
'You promised that you would take me to Hawaii.'
'We have just come back from three months in Hawaii.'
'You said you would mend the dishwasher.'
'Sorry. I forgot.'
'You see. I can't believe a word you say.'

## tenses and pronouns Bill said he was really happy.



When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.
Tenses and pronouns ( 1 , you etc) change in indirect speech if the time and speaker change.
For example, present tenses become past; I may become he or she; my may become his or her.
SOMEBODY SAID/THOUGHT

## INDIRECT SPEECH

I'm happy.'
'I have a problem.'
'She likes me.'
'My feet are cold.'

## Bill said that he was happy. (NOT Bitl said that l'm happy.) <br> I thought that I had a problem. (NOT t theught that thave a probtem:) <br> He knew that she liked him. <br> She said her feet were cold.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say, think.
Bill said he was really happy. I thought it was a great party.
1 Put in the correct pronouns (/ etc) or possessives (my etc).

- 'She likes me.' He knew she liked ..him.....

1 'I speak French.' He said ................ spoke French.
2 'I'm sorry.' She said ................ was sorry.
3 'Kate phoned me.' She said Kate had phoned
4 'We want our money.' They said $\qquad$ wanted money.
5 'I'm tired.' He said $\qquad$ was tired.
6 'I can't help you.' She told me she couldn't help $\qquad$
7 'We're leaving.' They said $\qquad$ were leaving.
'l've lost my coat.' He said had lost $\qquad$ coat.
'I like my job.' She told me $\qquad$ liked $\qquad$ job.
10 'Where are our tickets?'They asked where $\qquad$ tickets were.

Note the difference between say and tell. Tell must have a personal object: we tell somebody something.
She told me I was late. (NOT She fold t wastate.)
They told Anna the wrong time. (NOT They told the wrong time fo AnAa.)
Say doesn't need a personal object: we say something (to somebody).
She said I was late. (NOT She said me t was-tate.).
I said nothing to the police. (NOT +said the police nothing:)

## 2 Circle the correct answer.

1 | said / told the driver I wanted to stop.
2 My mother said / told there was a letter for me.
3 Everybody said / told I looked beautiful.
4 Why did you say / tell the lessons were expensive?

5 Ross said / told the waiter he couldn't pay.
6 I didn't say / tell Peter that I was going away.
7 Nobody said / told me that the shop was closed.
8 Mia said / told that she would wait at the bus stop.

## TENSE CHANGES

When we tell people what somebody said in the past, there is a time difference.
(For example, somebody said something on Sunday, and I tell you about it on Monday.)
Because of this, tenses usually change as follows:

| DIRECT SPEECH ON SUNDAY | TENSE CHANGE | INDIRECT SPEECH ON MONDAY |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The children are in Ireland. My TV isn't working. | AM/ARE/IS $\rightarrow$ WAS/WERE | Karen said her children were in Ireland. He said his TV wasn't working. |
| I have a meeting at 4.00. Sue has passed her exam. | HAVE/HAS $\longrightarrow$ HAD | She said she had a meeting at 4.00. Sally told me Sue had passed her exam. |
| I will probably be late. | WILL $\rightarrow$ WOULD | I thought I would probably be late. |
| You can have three tickets. | CAN $\rightarrow$ COULD | The man said I could have three tickets. |
| It doesn't matter, Martin. | DOIDOES $\rightarrow$ DID | I told Martin it didn't matter. |
| The train leaves at 6.00. We allspeak English. | SIMPLE PRESENT $\rightarrow$ SIMPLE PAST | The timetable said the train left at 6.00 . She said they all spoke English. |
| I forgot my keys. | SIMPLE PAST $\longrightarrow$ PAST PERFECT | He said he had forgotten his keys. |
| Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech, changing the tenses. Begin He/She/They said ... <br> SALLY: 'I'm tired.' .. She said (that) she was tired |  |  |
| 1 ANNA: 'My sister ne |  |  |
| 2 DANIEL: 'I have top | Andrew.' |  |

3 MARY: 'Nobody wants to help me.'
$\qquad$
BEN: 'I will be in Paris in July:
MIKE: 'I like the red sweater.'
DAVID: 'I can't swim:
ALICE: 'My parents are travelling.'
MARIA: 'The lessons are very good.'

10 BRAD AND AMY: 'We haven't heard from Joseph.'
(4) Look at the picture to see what John thought when he was small. Write his thoughts in indirect speech.
He thought animals could talk.

(S) What did you think when you were small? Write three or more sentences.

## indirect questions She asked him what his name was.

Indirect questions have a different word order from direct questions, and no question marks:

DIRECT QUESTION: Monica said, 'Where is John?' I said, 'When can you come?'<br>INDIRECT QUESTION: Monica asked where John was.<br>l asked when she could come. (NOT AAOnice asked where was tohn?)

We don't use do in indirect questions.
DIRECT QUESTION: 'What do you want?'
INDIRECT QUESTION: She asked me what I wanted.

'Where does Andrew live?'

I asked him where Andrew lived. (NOT She asked me what did +want.)

A policewoman stopped a driver in London and asked him some questions. Write the questions in indirect speech.

1 'Where do you live?'
2 'Where do you work?'
3 'Where are you going?'
4 'Where have you been?'
5 'What is the number of your car?'

6 'Why are you driving on the right?'

With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.

| DIRECT QUESTION: | Do you know Tim? | Are you French? |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| INDIRECT QUESTION: | He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. | She asked if/whether I was French. |

(2) The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether.

- 'Are you British?' .......asked him if hewas British

1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'
3 'Do you have it with you?'
4 'Do you always drive with the door open?'

5 'Are you listening to me?'
(3) These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.

- 'How old are you?'

They asked him how old he was.
1 'Are you married?'
2 'Do you have children?'
3 'Where have you worked before?'
4 'Why do you want to change your job?'

5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'

6 'What exams have you passed?'

## present reporting verbs She says she comes from London.

```
After present verbs (for example she says, I think) we don't change the tenses.
DIRECT QUESTION: 'Well, yes, I come from London.' 'Funny - you have a Scottish accent.'
INDIRECT QUESTION: She says she comes from London, but I think she has a Scottish accent.
```

Complete the indirect speech sentences.


We can ask questions politely by saying Do you know ...? or Can you tell me ...? + indirect question.
Where does she live? $\rightarrow$ Do you know where she lives? Is he at home? $\rightarrow$ Can you tell me if he's at home?
(2) Rewrite the questions.

| - What does this word mean? | Do you know ...What this word means? |
| :---: | :---: |
| - Is there a lesson today? | Can you tell me .. if.there's a lesson today? |
| 1 Where can I buy tickets? | Can you .. |
| 2 How much does it cost? | Do |
| 3 Has John phoned? | Can |
| 4 Must I pay now? | Can |
| 5 Does Maria like steak? | Can . |
| 6 Where did I park the car? | Do .. |

## We can also use indirect questions in answers.

Sorry, I don't know where she lives. I can't remember if he's married.
(3) Don't give the answers! But write sentences beginning I know, I don't know, I'd like to know, I don't want to know, I don't care or I can't remember.

- Who built the Eiffel Tower? . .....................................................

1 What languages do Irish people speak?

2 What do elephants eat?
3 Does the British Museum open on Christmas Day?

4 Was King William II a tall man?
5 Do birds dream?


When we tell people what somebody said, we may have to change words like here, this, today and now. This is because the place and time have changed since the words were spoken.

| BILL IN IRELAND IN DECEMBER | JOE IN LONDON IN MARCH |
| :--- | :--- |
| Ilike it here. | Bill said he liked it there / in Ireland. |
| I'm going fishing this week. | He said he was going fishing that week. |
| I'm not working today. | He said he wasn't working that day. |
| What do you want to do now? | He asked what I wanted to do then/next. |

Match the direct and indirect speech expressions.

| DIRECT SPEECH: 'here and now' words |  |  |  | INDIRECT SPEECH: 'there and then' words |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | here |  | today |  | that day ...... | F | the next day ...... |
| 1 | now | 6 | tonight |  | that night ...... | G | there . 0 . |
| 2 | this |  | last week |  | that ...... | H | the week before ...... |
| 3 | tomorrow | 8 | next week |  | the day before ...... | 1 | then ...... |
|  | yesterday |  |  |  | the next week ...... |  |  |

(2) A friend of yours said these sentences a month ago in another country.

Now you are telling somebody what she said.
Complete the sentences with the correct 'there and then' words.

- 'I'm not happy here.' She said she wasn't happy .........e

1 'I hate this place.'
2 'I left home last week.'
She said she hated
She said she had left home
3 'I wrote to my father yesterday.'
4 'Are you leaving today?'
5 'Where will you be tonight?'
She said she had written to her father
She asked me if I was leaving
She asked where I would be
6 'I'll phone you tomorrow.' She said she would phone me
3) Another friend of yours said these sentences two weeks ago in another town. Now you are telling somebody what he said. Write the sentences with the correct tenses and'there and then' words.

- 'I'm really happy here.' ..He said he was really happy there.

1 'I love this place.'
2 'I saw a great film yesterday.'
3 'I'm going to another party tonight.'
4 'Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?'

5 'My girlfriend will be here next week.'

## infinitives She told me to get out.

We use ask or tell + object + infinitive (with to), to say what people want(ed) us to do.

| DIRECT SPEECH | INDIRECT SPEECH |
| :--- | :--- |
| 'Please close the door.' | She asked me to close the door. |
| 'Could you phone Angela?' | lasked John to phone Angela. <br> 'Get out!' |
| She told me to get out. |  |
| 'Don't worry.' | The doctor always tells her not to worry. |

## 1 Write past indirect speech sentences.

- MARK Peter, could you close the window? (ask)

Marle asleed Peter to close the window

- THE TEACHER: Andrew, don't talk so loud. (tell) The teacher told Andrew not to talle so loud

1 DAVE: Sandra, please give me your phone number. (ask)

2 THE BOSS: James, I'd like you to work late. (tell)

3 JUDY: Kim, please don't tell Karen about Ryan. (ask)

4 MR SANDERS: Fred, please don't smoke in my car. (ask)

5 THE GENERAL: Colonel Walker, take 100 men and cross the river. (tell)

6 ANNA: Polly, you mustn't study so hard. (tell)

2 Joe left home for university. His family gave him lots of advice. Look at the picture and complete the sentences.

- His mother ..told him to write every week.
- His grandmother ..told him not to forget..................... to brush his teeth.

1 His girlfriend told every day.



5 His brother .............................................................. ex. exercise.
6 His mother ............................................................ every day.
7 His father .................................................................... late.
8 His brother ......................................................... with money.

10 His grandmother
properly.


We can use infinitives after how, what, when etc.
Idon't know how to cook fish. She asked me what to write. Tell me when to pay.
(3) Write two sentences about yourself.

1 I know how to
2 Idon't know how to

## indirect speech: more practice

(1) Indirect questions. Vesterday morning Peter asked his mother hundreds of questions. Here are some of them. Report them using indirect speech.

- 'Why do cats have tails?' .He asked her why cats had tails
- 'Will I get all your money when you die?' .He asked her if he would get all her money when she died

1 'Can I have ice cream for breakfast?'
2 'Why do the stars only come out at night?'

3 'Why does Daddy have to work?'
4 'Where is God?'
5 'Will I be taller than you one day?'
6 'Do you believe in Father Christmas?'

7 'Is Scotland in London?'
8 'When will I be rich?'
9 'Why don't French people speak English?'

10 'How big is the universe?'
(2) Infinitives. Yesterday morning Peter's mother told him to do hundreds of things. Here are some of them. Report them using "She told him".

- Say'Please'. ..................... say. 'Please'.
- Don't ask so many questions. ..............................................................

1 Wash your hands before breakfast.

2 Don't eat with your mouth open.

3 Eat everything on your plate.
4 Don't talk with your mouth full.

5 Make your bed.
6 Clean your room.
7 Polish your shoes.
8 Put on a clean shirt.
9 Don't shout at your sister.
10 Don't be late for school.
(3) What to... etc. Write sentences beginning John doesn't know.

- 'What should I tell Ann?' John doesn't know what to tell Ann

1 'How do I phone New York?'
2 'Where do I pay?'
3 'When do I start work?'
4 'How dol switch the computer on?'
5 'Where shall I put my coat?'
6 'How much must I pay?'
7 'What should I study?'
d Grammar in a text. Read the letter and then complete the report.

Dear all,
Sorry I haven't written for a few weeks. I've been too busy. I'm having a great time; I'm going to parties every night. I'm doing a bit of work too. We had an exam last week. I hope I'll get good marks.

I only have one shirt - l've lost the others. Mum, can you buy me six more? And I can't find my raincoat. Is it at home?

My room here isn't very nice - I'll have to look for a better one. And the food here in college isn't much good, so l'm living on hamburgers. l've spent nearly all my money. Dad, can you send some more?
can you give me Aunt Ellen's address? And I haven't heard from sarah. Where is she living? And does Jasper want to come and spend two or three days down here with me?

That's all for now. Love to everybody.

> Joe

(5) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences beginning "We don't know what/where/when/how" + infinitive. Write some of them.
(Note that why + infinitive is very unusual.)
1
2
3
4

## indirect speech: revision test

(1) Put in said or told.

| The newspaper ............. it would snow at the weekend. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Everybody .............. me I would pass the exam, but I didn't. |  |
| 1..... | the driver I knew the way. |
| My father | he was feeling tired because of working at weekends. |
| Everybody | Emma looked ill, but she was fine. |
| Luke | ... the doctor he had a lot of trouble sleeping. |
| I....... | my mother I wasn't coming home before Saturday. |
| Nobody | .......... me that the school was closed. |
| Rachel ... | .... that she would be back by one o'clock. |
| You never | ....... me that you loved me. |

## (2) Correct $(\alpha)$ or not $(x)$ ?

- I knew that I will see her again. $x$
- Andrew told me he hated his brother's wife.

1 Leo phoned me on Sunday and said he went to a great party yesterday.
2 I said that I was sorry, but that I'm really tired.
3 I knew I would forget her name in a few days. $\qquad$
4 You told me I like the new car.
5 Jack said he had to phone Karl that evening.
6 Lucy said that nobody likes her.
7 I thought the TV didn't work, but I was wrong. ......
8 Maggie said she would see me soon, but I never saw her again. ......
9 I saw Carola in January and she told me I was unhappy just now.
10 Shakespeare told his wife that you don't understand my work.
(3) Nine of sentences 1-15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

- Do you remember what time the play starts? ...............
- John asked how did+feet. .........! felt.
l asked what the time was.
2 I didn't know if I was late.
3 A man asked me where was the post office.
4 Do you know when is arriving Jane?
5 I didn't know whether I was late.
6 Do you know where all those people work?
7 Can you say me what the time is?
8 The policeman asked me where I am going.
9 The children wanted to know was I English.
10 I asked him what he wanted?
11 I don't know what does this word mean.
12 Nobody understood what Sophie wants.
13 I'd like to know what you are thinking.
14 Please tell me what you want.
15 I don't know why did she say that.


## SECTION 21 prepositions

grammar summary

| above across against along at behind between by down during |
| :--- |
| for from in infront of into near off on opposite out of over |
| past round through to under until/till up |

Some prepositions are difficult, because they have more than one meaning. (A preposition in one language often has several different translations into another language.)

In this section, we explain and practise the most important prepositions: those that we use to talk about time, place and movement.
$\rightarrow$ For since and for, see page 65
$\rightarrow$ For the place of prepositions in questions, see page 111 ; with relative pronouns, see page 258.
$\rightarrow$ For -ing forms after prepositions, see page 132.
$\rightarrow$ For verbs followed by prepositions, see page 141 .
$\rightarrow$ For lists of common expressions with prepositions, see pages 305-306.



## What time is the film? <br> What time is the film?

## We use at with clock times.

I'll see you at 4.15. The plane leaves at six. Call me at lunchtime.
But we say What time...?, NOT USUALLY At what time ...?

We use on with days, dates and expressions like Monday morning and Friday afternoon.
l'll be at home on Tuesday. We get up late on Sundays. The meeting's on June 23rd. I'm always sleepy on Monday mornings. I had to work on Christmas Day.


## 1 Put in at or on.

1 What are you doing $\qquad$ Saturday? 6.30?
2 Can you wake me $\qquad$ September 8 th.
4 I'll be in late $\qquad$ Tuesday morning.
5 I have my guitar lessons 10.00 Wednesdays.

6 She arrived $\qquad$ Easter Monday.

7 My job starts ......... April 17th.
8 Can we meet .......... lunchtime Tuesday?
9 l'll be home .......... 5.00.
10 I'll see you .......... Friday evening.
11 She always phones .......... midnight.
12 I was born .......... March 21 st.

We say in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, but at night.
She was born at 6.16 in the morning. I work best in the evening. This street is very quiet at night.
We use in with weeks, seasons, months, years and centuries.
We're going to Denmark in the first week of May.
lalways get unhappy in the winter. My birthday's in March.
Shakespeare died in 1616.
There were terrible wars in the 17th century.
We say at Christmas, at Easter and at the weekend.
(American English on the weekend)
What are you doing at the weekend? Did you go away at Christmas?

(2) Put in in, at or on.

| 1 | We went to Wales ......... the weekend. |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | I go skiing ......... February. |
| 3 | She finished school .......... 2006. |
| 4 | My mother comes to stay ......... Christmas. |
| 5 | I don't like driving .......... night. |
| 6 | Our garden is beautiful .......... the spring. |
| 7 | I stop work ......... $5.00 \ldots \ldots . .$. the afternoon |
| 8 | I'll finish university ......... June. |
|  | I last saw her .......... 1998 |

10 Carola was born $\ldots \ldots . . .8 .25 \ldots \ldots .$. the
evening ......... Thursday 17 th April 2000.
11 I'm never hungry $\ldots \ldots \ldots$ the morning.
12 It gets hot here $\ldots \ldots . .$. the summer.
13 I'm going to Spain $\ldots \ldots .$. Easter.
14 The conference is ......... the last week of May.
15 My grandfather was born .......... the
19th century.

We don't use prepositions before common expressions with this, next, last and every.
What are you doing this afternoon? Goodbye. See you next week.
Theo was here last Tuesday. We go on holiday to the same place every year.
(3) Today is Wednesday March 16th 2011. Rewrite the sentences using this, next, last and every.

- Imet her in 2010. ..! met her last year.

1 I'll see you on March 23rd.
2 It rained non-stop from March 7th to March 13th.
3 Business was bad in February 2011.
4 Shall we go out on March 16th in the evening?
5 We're going to America in April 2011.
6 Ann had a car crash on March 9th.
7 I'm going to change my job in 2012.
My holiday is in August 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015 etc.
I've spent too much money already in March.
10 The new school will be open in March 2012.

## To say how long it takes to finish something, we use in.

They built our house in three months. Your soup will be ready in ten minutes.
(4) My Australian friend Sheila is saving money because she wants to buy a sports car.

She is saving $\$ 1$ a day, starting tomorrow.
When will she have $\$ 2$ in her savings account? ..in two days.
1 When will she have $\$ 5$ ?
2 When will she have \$7? In a
3 When will she have $\$ 14$ ?
4 When will she have $\$ 30$ ?
5 When will she have $\$ 365$ ?
6 The car costs $\$ 36,500$. When will she have it?

## GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: dates

| WE WRITE | WE SAY |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1999 | nineteen ninety-nine |
| 17 (th) March 2011 | the seventeenth of March, two thousand and eleven |
| OR March 17 (th) 2011 | March the seventeenth, two thousand and eleven |
| OR 17.3.(20)11 |  |
| OR 17/3/(20)11 |  |
| American English: 3.17.2011 | March (the) seventeenth, two thousand (and) eleven |

## Say these dates:

1 21.3.1999
214 February 1960
3 July 281846
4 6/5/03
5 May 91984
617 December 2012

We use till (informal) or until to say when an action or situation ends.
I'll be in London till Thursday. We played football until 5 o'clock.
(1) Complete the sentences with until or till and expressions from the box.


We can give the beginning and end of an action or situation with from ... to/until/till.
I worked from 8.00 to 6.00 yesterday. We'll be away from July 16 until/till August 4.
2 Make sentences about John's Sunday morning with to, till or until.

- read paper 7.30-8.00 .He read the paper from 7.30 to 8.00.

OR He Head the paper from 30 untiltill 800
1 washed car 8.00-9.00
2 talked to woman next door 9.00-9.15

3 played tennis 10.00-11.00
4 talked to friends $11.00-11.30$
5 went for a walk 11.30-12.45
(3) Write two sentences with from ... to/till/until about things you did yesterday.

1
2

We use by ( ='not later than') to say that something happens at or before a certain moment.
UNTIL BY

You can keep the car until Sunday. You really must bring it back by 12.00 on Sunday.


## (4) Put in by or until.

1 This book must go back to the library ........................ Tuesday.
2 The film goes on .......................... 9.30.
3 Can you finish painting the room ........................ Friday?
4 If I give you this coat to clean, can you do it .......................... tomorrow?
5 I must find some money ......................... the end of the week.
6 Can you wait for my answer ........................ tonight?

## for, during and while

```
For + period tells you how long. During tells you when.
```

The journey lasted for three days. There was a rainstorm during the night.
I slept for 20 minutes during the lesson.

## 1) Put in for or during.

1 I lived in Mexico .......................... six years.
2 I got a headache .......................... the examination.
3 We visited Kyoto ......................... our holiday in Japan.
4 The electricity went off ....................... two hours........................ the afternoon.
5 Alex and his wife met .......................... the war.
6 Could I talk to you ........................... a few minutes?
7 I usually get a lot of phone calls ......................... the morning.
8 She and her boyfriend have been together ......................... a long time.

During is a preposition: we use during + noun.
While is a conjunction: we use while + subject + verb (often past progressive - see page 52).
They got into the house during the night. They got into the house while I was asleep.
He got ill during the journey. He got ill while he was travelling.
Change the expressions.

- during the meal (1/eat) ..while ! was eating.
- while I was travelling (journey) ..during the journey.

1 during the game (they / play)
2 while we were listening (lesson)
3 while they were fighting (war)
4 during her lesson (she/teach)
5 during his speech (he/speak)
6 during the conversation (they/talk)
7 while she was in hospital (illness)
8 during the snowstorm (it/snow)
3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: useful expressions with for Look at the expressions in the box, and choose suitable ones to complete the sentences. Different answers are possible.

```
for a moment for a minute or two for a few minutes for an hour or so (='about an hour') for a couple of hours for a long time for ages for years and years for ever for life
```



```
2 I will love you
```



```
4 I played tennis ........................................................................
5 I went to sleep .................................................................................
6 She usually stops work at 11 o'clock ................................................................................ has a cup of coffee.
7 I often watch TV ............................................................ before I go to bed.
8 They put him in prison
```



We use in with 3-dimensional spaces like boxes, rooms, towns or countries.
We use on with 2 -dimensional surfaces like floors, tables, walls or ceilings.
'Where's Joe?' In the kitchen.' There's nothing in the fridge. Tara's in Poland.
Why are all those papers on the floor? The church has wonderful paintings on the ceiling.
She had photos of all her family on the wall.
People are in clothes. Clothes and jewellery (earrings etc) are on people.
Who is the man in the grey suit? That sweater looks good on you. She had a ring on every finger.

1) Put in in or on.

a bath
1 $\qquad$


6 $\qquad$ her arm


2


7
a plate

a roof
3

8

your head


5


10 $\qquad$ a door

We say in a book, in the newspaper, in a story (BUT on a page); in a street.
Is there anything interesting in the paper? Her photo is on page 4. They live in Park Street.

## 2 Put in words from the boxes with in or on.

children's stories $\Omega$ her first finger my diary the office the roof of the car the cupboard

- In children's stories, $\qquad$ animals can talk.

1 'Are you free next Tuesday?' 'Just a minute. I'll look $\qquad$ ..'
2 Is Sandra............................................................................................
3 She had a wonderful diamond ring
4 'Where's the salt?'
5 The cat likes to sleep

|  | a little village | his T-shirt | my pocket | a piece of paper | the wall | your car |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | Don't leave your keys |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7 |  |  |  | it said 'Aberdeen University Football Club |  |  |
| 8 | She had pictur | of pop sin |  |  |  | in her r |
| 9 | They live |  |  | .. near |  |  |
|  | I wrote her ad |  |  |  |  |  |

Note that we say $\quad$ BUT on a bus/train/plane/ship.
Granny arrived as usual. I'm leaving on the 4.15 train.


I'll meet you at the cinema.

| Operator | TE | GW <br> 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LONOON Paddington 8 | 1743 | 1803 |
| Ealing Broadway - |  |  |
| Slough | 1800 | 1822 |
| Maidenhead |  | $\ldots$ |
| Twylord | - | - |
| Reading dep | 1820 | 1838 |
| Tilehursi | k | -** |
| Pangbourne | 1. | ... |
| Goring \& Streatley | T\% | *t |
| Wallingford $\Rightarrow$ |  |  |
| Cholsey | $\ldots$ | $\ldots$ |
| Didcot Parkway ... arr | 1835 | 153 |

The train stops at Slough, Reading and Didcot.

We often use at to show where something happens - for example, with meeting places or points on a journey.
I'll see you this evening at Sarah's house. You have to change planes at Karachi. I saw Linda waiting at the bus stop. Turn left at the next corner.
We often use at with words for things that people do, or the places where they do them. at a football match at breakfast, lunch etc at a restaurant at work at the office at the theatre at the cinema at the station at a party at (the) college/university

## (1) Put in words from the box with at.

a Chinese restaurant a theatre Birmingham breakfast the cinema the crossroads
the hotel bar the party the station the traffic lights $\boldsymbol{\Omega}$ work

- Paul crashed his car because he didn't stop ..at the traffic lights.

1 Are there any good films this week?
2 Her train was terribly late - I spent hours waiting
3 Will you be
at Mike's house on Saturday?
4 We had a really good meal in Park Street last night.
5 I saw my first Shakespeare play ................................................................................ a small town in Ireland.
6 The boss doesn't let us take personal phone calls
7 Helen never says anything ................................................................... because she's still asleep.
8 There isn't a direct train. You change
9 I'll meet you downstairs ....................................................................... at 6.00.
10 'Where's the car park?' 'Turn right $\qquad$

We often use at with the top, the bottom, the side, the beginning and the end.
My room's at the top of the house. Begin at the beginning.
Put in at the top, at the bottom etc.
1 Their house is down of the hill.


4 The best fruit is always ......................................................... of the tree, where you can't get it.
5 Maria wasn't there ................................................................... the lesson; she came in late.

Sometimes in and at are both possible. We prefer at when we are thinking about the activity - what we do in the place - and in when we think about the place itself.
We had lunch at the station restaurant. It was very hot in the big dining room.

## other prepositions of place




Montreal is in eastern Canada, near Ottawa.


Ileft my bicycle against the shop window.


Joe's car is parked in front of our house. There's a bus stop opposite our house.


Lucy is in front of Beth. Beth is behind Lucy.


Andy is opposite Mike.


The dog is hiding under the table.


The plane is flying above the clouds.
(1) Choose the correct prepositions.

- I usually sit ....y. $\qquad$ a window in class, so I can look out if I get bored. (behind, by, in front of)
1 There was a big bird flying high up $\qquad$ the trees. (above, against, opposite)
2 They live in a beautiful old house $\qquad$ a river. (above, by, under)
3 There's a big clock ............... the door of the station. (above, against, between)
4 I sat down .............. Marion and looked into her eyes. (above, behind, by)
5 You can park your car $\qquad$ the house. (against, behind, between)
6 I'll meet you at the station $\qquad$ the clock. (against, between, under)
7 The door wouldn't stay shut, so I put a chair $\qquad$ it. (above, against, near)

2 Put in the correct prepositions.
1 She put the money at the bottom of her suitcase, $\qquad$ her clothes.
2 Our house is $\qquad$ . a bank and a supermarket, and just $\qquad$ the police station.
3 Please don't put your bicycle $\qquad$ our wall.
4 Sorry we're late - we were driving $\qquad$ a slow bus all the way.
5 I work in a small town $\qquad$ Birmingham.
6 In the theatre I couldn't see anything because there was a very tall man $\qquad$ me.
7 We usually have lunch in a little café $\qquad$ the school, about five minutes' walk away.
(3) Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.

- abovey near the travel agent

1 opposite / in front of the National Bank
2 against / between the two women
3 above / behind the child
4 near / by the travel agent

5 in front of / behind the restaurant
6 opposite / under the car
7 against / opposite the window
8 behind / between the banks
9 by/ opposite the supermarket


## prepositions of movement

across along down into off over out of past round through under up
(1) Write the expressions under the correct photos. Use a dictionary if necessary.
across the river along the yellow line down the mountain into the water
off the bike over the fence out of the shop past the café
round the corner through the gate under the bridge up the steps


1


4


7


10


2


5


8


11


3


6


9


12
(2) Cross out the words that are wrong.

- across the road / the ehurch

1 along the corner / the road
2 up the mountain / the table
3 down the church / the stairs
4 over the corner / the wall
5 into the bank / the bridge
6 round the corner / the road

7 through the door / the railway line
8 off the police station / the table
9 out of the church / the stairs
10 under the bridge / the people
past the floor / the bank
across the river / the wall

3 Choose the correct prepositions and put them in the correct places.

- I went ... UP. $\qquad$ the stairs and ..alomg $\qquad$the passage. (along, into, out of, up)
1 Mrs Andrews got. $\qquad$ the taxi and ran rand the steps to the river and Oxford Street. (along, round, out of, over)
2 Alice walked the bridge. (along, down, through, over)
3 He walked slowly $\qquad$ the road for a few minutes, then he stopped and went $\qquad$ a small door a garden. (across, along, into, through)
4 Mandy went ................... the stairs and....................
5 Go the supermarket, the railway bridge, $\qquad$ the first corner, and the police station is on your right. (along, down, past, round, under)
6 As soon as I got $\qquad$ the boat I went straight
her office, took a letter
the
. the town centre to do some shopping. (into, off, out of, past, through)
7 I got bed, walked
the bedroom, and looked the window. It was raining again. (across, into, out of, out of, under)
8 It takes three hours to walk the mountain, but you can get it in two. (across, down, over, round, up)

We use to for movement, and at or in for position - where somebody/something is (see pages 278-279).
I went to the bus stop to meet Helen. I waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.
We can use from ... with to
He took five days to cycle from London to Edinburgh.
We get to a place, but we arrive at a place, or arrive in a big place (NOT affiveto).
It took three hours to get to Cambridge. I was tired when I arrived at the station.
We arrived in London very early in the morning.
(4)

Put in from, to, at or in.

| 1 | Let's go .............. the country this weekend. | $7$ | I saw Annie standing .............. the bus stop. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | She spends hours ............. the bathroom. | 8 | When we arrived ............. her house she had |
| 3 | Shall we drive ............ Scotland or go by train? |  | already left. |
| 4 | We flew directly .......... Berlin ........... Tokyo. | 9 | Are there tigers ............. Africa? |
| 5 | What time do we arrive .............. Paris? | 10 | It takes me about half an hour to get |
|  | After six days' walking, they got ........... a river. |  | ork. |

(S) Write a few sentences about a journey that you have made, using from, to, at and in.

## prepositions: more practice

## (1) Time. (Circle) the correct prepositions.

1 He phoned on / in Friday.
2 The party is at / on June 18th.
3 Are you at home at / on Christmas?
4 I'll be here during / for two months.
5 We get up late in / on Sunday mornings.
6 I often watch TV in i at night.
7 The film ends on / at 9.45.
8 You can't learn English in / by a month.

9 Hannah's birthday is on / in May.
10 What are you doing on / at Thursday?
11 Bring my bike back until / by Friday.
12 I'll work for / until 8.00 this evening.
13 I couldn't sleep for / during the night.
14 Stay here while / during I go shopping.
15 I play tennis at / in the weekend.
(2) Expressions without prepositions. Today is Saturday August 13th 2011. Rewrite the expressions in italics using this, next, last and every.

- Ifinished university in 2010. .. Last year

1 Joanne had a party on Saturday August 6th.
2 I'm going to buy a new car in 2012.
3 My holiday is in September 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 etc.
4 I've already bought too many clothes in August.
5 It was really hot from August 1st to August 7th.
6 Shall we go and see a film on August 14th in the evening?
7 I'll be away on Saturday August 20th.
8 My brother was ill in July 2011.
9 We're going camping in September 2011.
10 The new station will be ready in August 2012.
(3) Movement. Cross out the wrong words.

- across the river / bank 6 up the mountain / the floor

1 along the church / the road
2 down the police station / the mountain
3 into the church / the table
4 off the corner / the table
5 out of the church / the wall

7 over the door / the wall
8 past the floor / the church
9 round the corner / the railway line
10 through the door / the table
4. Place and movement. Put in suitable prepositions.

(S) Place and movement. Write the opposites.

- on the train ..off. the train ........................

1 into the church
2 off the bus
3 down the stairs
4 over the bridge
5 out of the river

6 in front of the door
7 at the top of the stairs
8 up the mountain
9 behind the police station
10 at the beginning

6 Dates. Write these dates as you would say them.

- 2006 ..two thousand and six.
5 10.1.02
- 17th March ..the seventeenth of. March 6 3/4/08
OR .. March the seventeenth
7 October 4th
1 23rd April
8 21st March, 1936
2 1st September
9 Oct 22, 2006
3 5th August, 2010
10 1/1/01
4 March 2, 1980
(7) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: duration. Put in suitable expressions from the box. (Different answers are possible.)
- Ifeel as if l've known you ..for ever.
for a couple of hours
1 I need to speak to you
2 The terrorists were sent to prison
3 We haven't seen Peter

5 It's been raining
6 I usually play tennis
7 We've lived in the same house

9 She went to sleep on the train just
10 I'm going out into the garden
for a few minutes
for a long time
for a moment
for an hour or so
for ever
for life
for years and years


## 8 Grammar in a text. Choose the correct prepositions.

## Dear Louise

I'm glad you can come 1 on / in Friday. You asked how to get to our house. It's very easy. Get 2 in / on a No. 16 bus 3 opposite / along the police station, and get 4 off / out at the fourth stop just 5 above / by the new supermarket. Then walk 6 off / along Boston Street for about 300 metres, turn right 7 at / on the traffic lights, keep straight on 8 along / under the railway bridge, go 9 through / up the hill past the church, 10 round / across the corner by the pub, then 11 down / off the hill and 12 under / across the main road. That takes you into South Park. Walk 13 along / through the park and 14 out of / off the other side, turn left 15 round / in front of the school, and you'll find yourself 16 on / in Green Road. Our house is the fourth on the left, just 17 out of / by the old railway station. You can't miss it.
Love, Judy.
(9) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.
"across the river" "along the road" "out of the church" "off the table" "up the mountain"
"over the wall" "round the corner"
"over the wall" "round the corner"
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

## prepositions: revision test

(1) Put in the correct words.

1 Let's go to Cardiff .................... Tuesday. (in, at, while, on)
2 The bridge ................... the river is closed. (along, over, up, through)
3 The next meeting is .................. December 8th. (on, $a t$, in, by)
4 What do you usually do ................... the weekend? (on, at, in, by)
5 Max fell ................... his bike and broke his leg. (down, on, out of, off)
6 I need your answer .................... (in, by, at, until) Friday.
7 I'm not free now, but I can talk to you
half an hour. (in, for, by, until)
8 I slept .................. two hours this afternoon. (in, by, for, during)
9 The quickest way to our house is .................. the park. (along, through, in, over)
10 Let's go for a walk ................... the sun's shining. (while, during, for, along)
2 Put in suitable prepositions. (More than one may be possible.)

|  | I'm going to put this picture ................. my bedroom wall. |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | I'll be away ................... June 1st .................... July 15 th. |
| 3 | Olivia lived in Cairo ................. three years. |
| 4 | I didn't work very hard .................. my time at university. |
| 5 | It says ................. the newspaper that there will be snow. |
| 6 | Does this bus stop ................. the railway station? |
| 7 | Your father's photo is .................. page 16. |
| 8 | We're leaving ................ the 10.40 train. |
| 9 | I always wear this ring .................. my little finger. |
| 10 | Write your name ................. the top of the page. |
| 11 | Can you clean this suit ................... 4 o'clock? |
| 12 | A lot of people travel for a year .................. school and university. |
| 13 | Pete met his girlfriend ................... a party. |
| 14 | I'll be ready to go .................. ten te minutes. |
|  | I like walking ................. the river. |

3) All these sentences are wrong. Correct the mistakes.

- I'll see you \# Tuesday. ..on

1 She talked non-stop during three hours.
2 Please let me have all the information until Saturday.
3 Anna walked slowly out the room and down the stairs.
4 There's a pub on the other side of the road in front of our house.
5 Do you think you can swim through this river?
6 There's a strange insect in the ceiling.
7 It took a long time to drive over the town to the church.
8 l'll see you on next Monday.
9 Did you stay at home on Christmas?
10 We have to get down the bus at the next stop.

## SECTION 22 spoken grammar

## grammar summary

We often leave words out if the meaning is clear. This is particularly common in spoken English.
It often happens after auxiliary verbs.
She said she would phone, but she didn't. (= '... she didn't phone.')
I'll finish the work as soon as I can. ( $=$ '... as soon as I can finish the work.')
There are several common kinds of short spoken sentence made with subject + auxiliary verb:

- question tags: You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- short answers: 'Did you see Patrick?' 'No, I didn't.'
- reply questions: 'I've got a headache.' 'Have you? I am sorry.'
- so do I, nor can l etc: 'I was really cold on that bus.' 'So was I.'

We also often leave out infinitives (and other words) after to.
I've never seen the Taj Mahal, but I'd like to. (= '... I'd like to see the Taj Mahal.')
And we may leave out small words (pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginning of sentences.
Don't know. (= 'I don't know.') Train's late. (= 'The train's late.')
Been waiting long? ( = 'Have you been waiting long?')

'Forgotten your key again, George?'
'Seen John?'
'Nor do I.'

'Don't think so.'
'No, we haven't.'

Question tags are short questions that can follow sentences, especially in spoken English. We make question tags with auxiliary verb (have, can etc) or be + pronoun (1, you etc). We use question tags to ask if something is true, or to ask people to agree with us.
You haven't got my keys, have you? Louise will be here tomorrow, won't she?
This music isn't very good, is it? That child can run fast, can't he?
Question tags are usually negative ( - ) after affirmative ( + ) sentences, and not negative after negative sentences. We don't put question tags after questions.
It is warm, isn't it? It isn't cold, is it? (BUT NOT ts it eold, isn't it??)
Negative tags are usually contracted (see page 301) - for example isn't it? (NOT USUALLV is it not?) The negative tag for I am is aren't I? (see page 301)
I'm late, aren't I?
Question tag or nothing (-)? Circle the correct form.

- I'm late , am l? //, aren't l?/- ?
- You can't swim, can you? , can't you? / - ?
- Has Anna phoned, has she? /, hasn't she? -?

1 You'll be here tomorrow , will you? /, won't you? / - ?
2 The postman hasn't come , has he? / , hasn't he? / - ?

3 Are you ready, are you? /, aren't you? / - ?
4 It's dark in here, is it? /, isn't it? / - ?
5 He can't speak Greek, can he?/, can't he? /- ?
6 The train's late, is it? /, isn't it? / - ?
7 The food wasn't bad, was it?/, wasn't it?/- ?
8 Have you done it, have you /, haven't you?/- ?
9 I'm too early, amn't I? /, aren't I?/ - ?

If the sentence has an auxiliary verb or be, we use this in the question tag.
You would like coffee, wouldn't you? I'm not talking too fast, am I?
Sally doesn't eat meat, does she? You aren't angry with me, are you?
If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the tag.
They went to Spain, didn't they? The lesson starts at 6.00, doesn't it?
Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.

- You're playing football tomorrow, ..aren't.you?

1 That's the answer,
2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow,
3 She's a lovely baby,
4 You'll be OK, .............................................................
5 Your brother can tell us that,
6 Isabel likes brown bread,
7 This house gets hot in summer,
(3) Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags.

- They weren't at home, ...............y?

1 But he's not at school now,
2 You can't remember anything,
3 They don't use much electricity,
4 She doesn't look happy,
5 Those flowers don't need much water,
6 That kid hasn't done any work,

## We can use there as a subject in question tags.

## There's a letter for me, isn't there? There weren't any problems, were there?

## 4 Put in the question tags.

1 There was a phone call for me,
2 There are six more lessons this year,
3 There's a meeting this afternoon,
4 There hasn't been any snow this year,
5 There weren't many people at the party,
(5) Put in the correct question tags.

| 1 | You don't know Alicia, .................................... (do you?, don't you?, are you?) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Polly's looking well, .................................. (doesn't she?, isn't she?, is she?) |
| 3 | It's really cold today, .................................... (isn't it?, isn't there, doesn't it?) |
| 4 | You can't hear what she's saying, ................................. (is she?, can you?, can't you?) |
| 5 | You'd like a drink, ................................... (wouldn't you?, don't you?, you would?) |
| 6 | They don't listen, .................................... (are they?, aren't they, do they?) |
| 7 | Carola's been away, . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . (isn't she?, wasn't she?, hasn't she?) |
| 8 | I'm at the right address, ................................. (am l?, aren't I?, amn't l?) |
| 9 | There's a problem, ................................... (isn't there?, isn't it?, is it?) |
| 10 | You like chocolate, ................................ (like you, aren't you?, don't you?) |

6) Change these questions into statements with question tags.

- Do you work at Smith's? ..You work at Smith's don't you?

1 Have they lived in France? They've
2 Did they all go home early?
3 Did it rain all last week?
4 Does her brother write for the newspapers?

5 Dolneed a visa?
6 Would you like a holiday?
7 Was the train late?
8 Did Sarah forget your birthday?
9 Was there a letter for me?
10 Am I in time for lunch?

If a tag asks a real question, we say it with a rising intonation: the music of the voice goes up. If a tag just asks for agreement, we use a falling intonation: the voice goes down

We're meeting in Oxford, arent ${ }^{\text {the }}$ ? Nice day, isn ?
(7) Try to pronounce these tags.

1 The lesson begins at twelve, doesn't it?
2 Your sister's gone to America, hasn't she?
3 Bill's a good singer, isn?

4 It's cold, isntit?
5 You're from Scotland, aren't you?
6 She looks good in red, doesn'tshe?

## short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.

To answer just 'Yes' or 'No' can be impolite.
We often prefer answers with pronoun (I, you etc) + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc).
The auxiliary verb in the answer is usually the same as the one in the question.

> 'Are you ready?' 'Yes, I am.' 'Have you phoned home?' 'Yes, I have.'
> 'Can Ellie speak Spanish?' 'No, she can't.' 'Did you watch the match?' 'No, I didn't.'

Note that the negative of lam is I'm not.
'Are you happy?' 'No, I'm not. (NOT No, tamn't:)
Negative (-) short answers are usually contracted (see page 301): can't, didn't etc.
Affirmative ( + ) short answers are not contracted: we don't say Kes, $\mathrm{t}^{\prime \prime m}$ or Kes, she's, for example.
1 Write short answers to these questions.

| - 'Do you like jazz?' ...'Yes ! ! do.'. | 5 'Does your brother like sport?' 'No, |
| :---: | :---: |
| - 'Are you coming home?' ..No. !'m. not.'. | 6 'Do you want tickets?' 'Yes, |
| 1 'Is it raining?' 'No, ..................................' | 7 'Would your mother like coffee?' |
| 2 'Has Joe phoned?' 'No, ...............................' | 'No thanks, |
| 3 'Do the children understand?' 'Yes, | 8 'Was the film interesting?' 'No, |
| 4 'Is this your coat?' 'No, ................................. | 9 'Are you ready?' 'No, I'm afraid |

2 Give your own personal short answers to these questions.

- 'Do you like coffee?' ..Yes!! do.!.....! ! ! don't....
1 'Are you thinking in English now?'
2 'Do you live in a town?'
3 'Do you speak French?'
4 'Is it raining now?'

5 'Is your English getting better?'
6 'Have you been to New York?'
7 'Did you watch TV yesterday?'
8 'Can you swim?'
9 'Are you tired?'

We can use short answers to agree or disagree with things that people say.
'It's hot today.' Yes, it is.' 'You didn't buy bread.' 'Yes, I did.' 'The train's late.' 'No, it isn't.'
If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the short answer.
'Her hair looks nice.' 'Yes, it does.'
(3) Write short answers to agree or disagree.

1 'You're early.' 'No, ...................'
2 'It's cold.' 'Yes, ....................'
3 'She sings really well.' 'Yes,

4 'The lesson starts at 5.00.' 'No,
5 'Simon didn't phone.' 'Yes, . 6 'He made a mistake.' 'Yes,
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
(4) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that people can do Give true answers with Yes, I can or No, I can't.

1 Can you knit?
2 Can you cook?
3 Can you skate?
4 Can you repair cars?

5 Can you dive?
6 Can you draw?
7 Can you sing?
8 Can you ride a horse?

knit

repair cars

dive

draw


In conversation, we often ask short questions (auxiliary verb + pronoun) to show interest.
'I've just had a letter from Eric.' 'Have you?' 'Yes. He says he's coming back
These 'reply questions' are not really questions: they mean 'Oh, yes? That's interesting.'
Some more examples:
'John's getting married.' 'Is he really? Who to?'
'Anna and Peter had a lovely time in Greece.' 'Did they?' 'Yes. They went

## We answer negative sentences with negative reply questions

'I can't see very well with these glasses.' 'Can't you? Maybe you should get new ones.'
(1) Choose the correct reply questions.
'Your mother hasn't phoned.' 'Has she? Hasn't she?' wonder why not.'
1 'I've just got married.' 'Have you? / Haven't you? Congratulations.'
2 'William had an accident last week' 'Has he? / Did he? Is he OK?'
3 'There's a strange bird on the roof.' 'Is it? / Is there? Let me look.'
4 'I can't understand this.' 'Can you? / Can't you? Let me help you.'
5 'This coffee dnesn't taste very nice.' 'Dnesn't it? / Does it? I'm sorry.'
6 'Your sister's in trouble with the police.' 'Is she? / Isn't she? Oh, dear. Not again!'
7 'The children want computers for Christmas.' 'Do they? / Don't they? They think I'm made of money.'
8 'The students don't like your lessons.' 'Don't they? / Aren't they? Well, I don't like them either.'
(2) Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in reply questions.

| 0 | 'Oliver didn't eat much.' |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 'I don't like this bread at all.' |
| 2 | 'The Smiths are in America.' |
| 3 | 'My French is getting very bad.' |
| 4 | 'Ryan's taken the car.' |
| 5 | 'I can't understand these papers.' |


(3) GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: showing our feelings

Complete the sentences with reply questions and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Different answers are possible.
Congratulations! Good luck! I am sorry. I don't believe it. $\sqrt{ }$ Say 'hello' to him/her for me.
That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!

[^14]| QUESTION TAGS | SHORT ANSWERS | REPLY QUESTIONS |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| It is $\ldots$, isn't it? | 'Are you ...?' 'No, I'm not.' | 'I'm ...' 'Are you?' |
| I am $\ldots$, aren't I? | 'Has she ...?' 'Yes, she has.' | 'He's ...' 'Has he?' |
| She has ..., hasn't she? | 'Do they ...?' 'Yes, they do.' | 'They like ...' 'Do they?' |
| They like ... don't they? | 'Are we ...?' 'No, we aren't.' | 'We're ...' 'Are we?' |
| We aren't ..., are we? | 'He wasn't ...' 'No, he wasn't.' | 'She wasn't ...' 'Wasn't she?' |
| He didn't ... did he? | 'She didn't ...' 'Yes, she did.' | 'He didn't ...' 'Didn't he?' |

## 1 Circle the best expression.

- Jemima can't sing at all, can she? she can't.

1 'I'm worried about Peter.' 'You are?'/ 'Are you?' / 'Aren't you?'
2 'Joe didn't phone yesterday.' / 'Joe phoned yesterday.' 'Didn't he?'
3 'I'm feeling ill.' / I'm not feeling well.' 'Are you?'
4 'Does John need help?'/ 'John needs help.' ‘Does he?’
5 Do you remember David, / You don't remember David, do you?
6 'I've got a headache.' 'You haven't.'/ 'You have.'/ 'Have you?'
7 They can stay with us, they can't? / can't they? / can they?
2 Read the conversation, and put in question tags (QT), short answers (SA) or reply questions (RQ).
QT 'Hello, Carol. Lovely day, . isn't.t.t?'.
SA '...Yes.itis........ How are you?'
'Well, I've got a problem.'
RQ ' Have.you?...... What's the matter?'
QT 'You remember my brother's boy Theo, 1
SA; QT
'2. He went to Australia, 3 $\qquad$ .
SA 'No, $4 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . .$. .................. went to Canada. Anyway, he's coming back to England.'
RQ '5
's .......................... That's nice.'
'Well, yes, but he wants to stay with me.'
RQ 'Oh, $6 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . . . . .$. Is that the problem?'
SA ' $7 \ldots \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . .$. I'm not very happy about it.'
RQ; QT ' $\qquad$ Why? You like Theo, 9 $\qquad$ .

SA '10
o .......................... - very much.'
QT 'And you've got a lot of room in that big house, 11 $\qquad$ .'
SA '12 $\qquad$ But would you like to have a young man living in your house all the time?'
'No, I suppose not.'
'Well, I don't know what to do. I'm really very worried.'
RQ
' 13. $\qquad$ Would you like some advice?'
SA
' 14. $\qquad$
'Tell him the truth. Say you like him a lot, but you don't want people in your house.'
QT 'Ican't say that, 15 $\qquad$ ..

SA
' $16 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. He'll understand. I'm sure of it.'
RQ ' $17 \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$. I don't know. Anyway, I'll think about it. Thanks.'

## leaving out words Don't know if she has.

We often use just an auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression, if the meaning is clear. This happens in question tags, short answers and reply questions (see pages 288-291), and in other sentences too.
'Get up!' 'I am.' (= 'I am getting up.') Come round tomorrow evening, if you can.
I haven't seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)
We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.
David said he knew the address, but he didn't really.
(1) Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said it wasn't raining, but it is fainifig.

1 He thinks I don't understand, but I do understand.
2 'You'd better eat something.' 'I have eaten something.'
3 Alice said she would lend me her car, but I don't think she will lend me her car.
4 Eric was sure he would pass his exam. I hope he has passed his exam.
5 'Will you write to me every day?' 'Of course I will write to you every day.'
6 I can't help you today, but I can help you tomorrow.

## We often use to instead of a longer expression, if the meaning is clear.

'Would you like to stay with us next weekend?' 'I'd love to.' (= 'I'd love to stay with you.')
I don't play tennis, but l used to. 'Are you going to Scotland this summer?' 'We hope to.'
Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.
I'd like It's starting I'm trying $\checkmark$ I used she didn't want Sorry, I forgot They hope

- 'Can't you go faster?' ..'m truing to.

1 'Are Cathy and Dave getting married this year?'
2 I asked her to dance, but
3 I've never learnt to ski, but
4 I don't speak German very well now, but
5 'Did you remember to phone Liz?'
6 'Is it raining?'

In conversation, people may leave out 'small words' (for example pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginnings of sentences.
Must go now. Can't help you, sorry. Don't know. Car's not going well.
Seen Billy? (= 'Have you seen Billy?') Nobody here. (= 'There's nobody here.')
(3) Write the complete sentences.

1 Couldn't understand what he wanted from me.

2 Doesn't know what she's doing.
3 Bus is late again.
4 Speak French?
5 Haven't seen them.
6 Don't think so.
$\rightarrow$ For sentences where we leave out that, see pages 257 and 264

## irlongunge

## so am I; nor do l etc

```
To say that A is/does the same as B, we can use so + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc) + subject
(note the word order).
I'm hungry.' So am I.' (NOT 'Sotam:) Sue's stopped her lessons, and so has George.
If there is no auxiliary verb to repeat, we use do/does/did.
'My brother works in the theatre.' 'So does my cousin.'
(1) Complete the sentences, using so.
- 'My job's boring.'(+ mine) ..'So is mine.'
- 'My room gets very cold at night.'(+ mine) ..So. does...........
1 'Anna is very interested in history.' (+ Alice)
2 'My grandfather plays golf all day.' ($ my father)
3 'I can swim under water.'(+ )
4 'Peter wants a bicycle for Christmas.' (+ Carla)
5 'Joe has just got married.' (+ Edward)
```

In negative sentences we use neither or nor + auxiliary verb + subject.
'I'm not working today.' Neither am I.' 'Mary can't drive.' Nor can Pat.'
Bill doesn't like the boss, and neither does Jan.
Complete the sentences, using neither/nor.
- Max didn't play very well, and ( - the others) nor did the others. OR weither did the others.
1 The soup wasn't very good, and ( - the meat)
2 'Rob hasn't phoned yet.' (- Gemma)
3 'This dictionary doesn't show pronunciation.' (- this one)
4 'I can't cook. (- I)
5 His parents won't help him, and ( - his friends)
We can use short sentences (subject + auxiliary verb) to say that $\mathbf{A}$ is not the same as $B$.
'I'm not going to school today.' I am.' Some people don't like modern art, but I do.
'Ilike this music.' I don't.' The food was cheap, but the drinks weren't.

Complete the sentences with expressions from the box, to say that things are not the same.

```
her second one hersister mycar myfather }\checkmark\mathrm{ ourdog
the back door the green ones }\checkmark\mathrm{ the train
```

- 'My father works too hard.' ..My.father doesn't.
- 'The red apples aren't very sweet.' ............een ones are.

1 'My car doesn't use a lot of petrol.'
2 'Mary has passed all her exams.' 'Yes, but
3 Most dogs can swim, but
4 'The bus takes a long time to get to London.'
5 The front door wasn't open, but
6 'Her first book didn't sell very well.'
(4) Look at the table and write sentences.

|  | LIKES DANCING | HAS BEEN TO AMERICA | PLAYS TENNIS | CAN SKI | IS TALL | LAUGHS A LOT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ERIC | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ |
| JULIE | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ |
| PAUL | $x$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ |
| DAN | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |
| DENISE | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ |
| RACHEL | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $x$ | $x$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |

```
- (Eric, Dan, dancing) ..Eric likes dancing, and so does Dan.
- (Julie, Rachel, ski) Julie can't ski, and nor can Rachel.
- (Julie, Denise, laugh) Julie Laughs a Lot, but Denise doesn't
- (Eric, Julie, America) ..Eric hasn't been to America, but)ulie has
1 (Eric, Dan, tennis)
2 (Julie, Denise, tall)
3 (Denise, Paul, laugh)
4 (Dan, Rachel, ski)
5 (Julie, Denise, America)
6 (Eric, Paul, tall)
7 (Julie, Dan, tennis)
8 (Paul, Rachel, dancing)
```

(5) Here are some facts about Mike and Katy. Are you the same as them, or different? Write your answers, using So am I, Neither/Nor do I, I have, I can't etc.

- Katy has got blue eyes. ..So have!. OR ! haven't.
- Mike doesn't like fish. .! do OR Nor do!

1 Katy is interested in politics.
2 Mike has been to Texas.
3 Katy can sing.
4 Mike likes old music.


5 Katy speaks French.
6 Katy isn't very tall.
7 Mike hasn't got much hair.
8 Katy can't drink milk.
9 Mike doesn't like hot weather.
10 Mike doesn't understand computers.


[^15]
## spoken grammar: more practice

(1) Short answers. Complete the conversations.

- 'Do you like swimming?' ...Yes...........

1 'Was Emma at home when you went to see her?' 'No,
2 'Does Tom play a musical instrument?' 'Yes,
3 'Would your sister like some coffee or tea?' 'No thanks,
4 'The plane arrives at 6.45 , I think.' 'No,
5 'Can you work next Saturday?' 'Yes,
..................................................

6 'Have you written to Felicia?' 'No, $\qquad$
7 'John wants to be a doctor.' 'No,
8 'Did Carol phone this morning?' 'Yes,
9 'Will the children be in this evening?' 'No,
10 'Do you understand what l'm saying?' 'Yes,
2. Reply questions. Complete the conversations with reply questions and expressions from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

> Congratulations! Good luck! I am sorry. I am sorry. I don't believe it! Say'hello' to him for me. That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!

- 'I didn't get that job that I wanted.' ..'Didn't you? ! am sorry.

1 'I'm seeing James on Tuesday.'
2 'I've got excellent results in my exams.'
3 'Scotland has declared its independence.'
4 'I've got an important interview tomorrow.'
5 'Light takes four years to travel here from the nearest star.'

6 'Anna and Peter are getting divorced.'
7 'My car has been stolen.'
8 'Ifeelill.'
9 'Tim has decided to become a ballet dancer.'
10 'I can't come to your party.'
(3) So am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.

- Arthur has gone home, and ( + Jane) ..so.has Jane.
- Oliver can't run very well and (- Susan) ..neither can Susan

1 Dogs don't eat tomatoes, and ( - cats)
2 The 3.45 train hasn't arrived yet, and ( - the 3.15)
3 'I wasn't happy at school.' (-I)
4 Ken didn't come to the lesson, and ( - Sally)
5 Roger likes travelling, and ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ his brother)
6 The meat is cold, and ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ the potatoes)
7 Natasha doesn't speak Russian, and (- her brother)
8 Our friends were late, and ( $\boldsymbol{+}$ we)
9 'We don't know why Teresa is unhappy.' (- her parents)
10 'I'll try to help Robert.' ( +1 )
4. Leaving out words. Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said you weren't crying, but you were efying.

1 She says I don't love her, but I do love her.
2 'You should phone Aunt Lucy.' 'I have phoned Aunt Lucy.'
3 Henry thought that he would get rich fast, but I don't think he will get rich fast.
4 'Help me.' I'm trying to help you.'
5 'Will you forget me?' 'Of course I won't forget you.'
6 Jasper can sing, but I can't sing.
7 Andrew has asked me to go out with him, but I don't want to go out with him.
8 She's finished breakfast, but I haven't finished breakfast.
9 'You broke that window.' 'No, I didn't break that window.'
10 I haven't been to America yet, but I hope to go to America soon.
(5) Leaving out words. Write the complete sentences.

- Been shopping?

Have you been shopping?

- Car won't start. ....ne carwon't start.

1 Don't know why.
2 Seen my mother today?
3 Don't think so.
4 Sorry, can't come in here.
5 Want some help?
6 Know what I think?
7 Can't understand a word.
8 House is cold.
9 Raining again.
10 Lost my keys.
6. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things from the office. What would you ask if you were not sure of the names of the things in the pictures?

- ..t's a stapler, isn't it? ......................................................

1 They're ............................................................. 5
2 .......................................................................... 6
3


- stapler

paper clips


2 diary


3 hole-punch 4 address book


5 rulers


6 calculators
(7) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

```
"and so is" "and so are" "and so has" "and so have" "and so does" "and so do"
"and neither is" "and neither are" "and neither has" "and neither have"
"and neither does" "and neither do"
```

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

## spoken grammar: revision test

(1) Correct $(\mathcal{\alpha})$ or not $(x)$ ?

- Daniela looks like you, looksn't she? ......
- You're Scottish, aren't you? .....

1 We didn't give you our address, did we?
2 You can't speak Spanish, do you?
3 There's a problem, isn't it?
4 Jane doesn't smoke, doesn't she? ......
5 You'll be at home tonight, won't you?

6 Is today the 31 st , is it?
7 Peter and Annie are getting married, aren't they?
8 Maggie wasn't here yesterday, was she?
9 I'm playing tomorrow, amn't I?
10 You haven't seen Pat anywhere, did you?
(2) Put in the question tags.

- It's a nice day, ..isn't.t.t........................................ 8 Dinner's ready,

1 You can play the piano,
2 Lily will be here tomorrow,
3 You haven't got the keys,
4 Stephen likes fishing,
5 There wasn't much rain in the night,
6 Petra went back home,
9 It's not raining,

7 George doesn't play golf,
10 You won't be late,
11 Philip and Rachel have got married,
12 The papers haven't arrived,
13 I'm late,
14 All the trains stop at Oxford,
15 That letter didn't arrive,
3. Change these questions into affirmative ( + ) or negative ( - ) statements with question tags.

- Do you live in Dublin? + ..Youlíve in Dublin, don't you?
- Do you know my friend Adrian? - ..You don't know my friend Adrian do you?

1 Have they gone home? - They haven't
2 Do we need tickets? +
3 Would you like some more coffee? +
4 Was Mike away yesterday? +
5 Did Angela tell you her news? -
6 Can Sophie play the piano? -
7 Will there be room for everybody? +
8 Does your father eat meat? -
9 Do these books belong to the library?
10 Are you tired? +
4 Complete the conversations with short answers.

- 'Do you play baseball?' ....Yes, ! ! do.:'

1 'Was the exam difficult?' 'No,
2 'Would your little boy like to watch TV?' 'No, thanks,
3 'The lesson starts at 10.00.' 'No,
4 'Did the post come this morning?' 'Yes,
5 'Will it rain today?' 'No,

## Complete the conversations with reply questions.

- 'I've just passed my exam.' ...Have. you?? Congratulations!'
1 'Joe and Suzy moved to London in March.' ' I didn't know.'
2 'I won't be here next week.' Then come and see us the week after.'
3 'I need some help.' I'll see what I can do.'
4 'The dog has brought a dead rat into the house.' Well, could you throw it out, please?'
5 'You didn't lock the door last night.' That was stupid of me.'


## appendix 1 common irregular verbs

(These are the most common irregular verbs. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.)

| infinitive | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE | infinitive | SIMPLE PAST | PAST PARTICIPLE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| be | was/were | been | let | let | let |
| become | became | become | lie | lay | lain |
| begin | began | begun | lose | lost | lost |
| break | broke | broken | make | made | made |
| bring | brought | brought | mean | meant | meant |
| build | built | built | meet | met | met |
| buy | bought | bought | pay | paid | paid |
| catch | caught | caught | put | put | put |
| choose | chose | chosen | read/ri:d/ | read/red/ | read/red/ |
| come | came | come | ride | rode | ridden |
| cost | cost | cost | run | ran | run |
| cut | cut | cut | say | said | said |
| do | did | done | see | saw | seen |
| draw | drew | drawn | sell | sold | sold |
| dream | dreamt/dreamed | dreamt/dreamed | send | sent | sent |
| drink | drank | drunk | show | showed | shown |
| drive | drove | driven | shut | shut | shut |
| eat | ate | eaten | sing | sang | sung |
| fall | fell | fallen | sit | sat | sat |
| feel | felt | felt | sleep | slept | slept |
| fight | fought | fought | speak | spoke | spoken |
| find | found | found | spell | spelt | spelt |
| fly | flew | flown | spend | spent | spent |
| forget | forgot | forgotten | stand | stood | stood |
| get | got | got | steal | stole | stolen |
| give | gave | given | swim | swam | swum |
| go | went | gone/been | take | took | taken |
| have | had | had | teach | taught | taught |
| hear | heard | heard | tell | told | told |
| hit | hit | hit | think | thought | thought |
| hold | held | held | throw | threw | thrown |
| keep | kept | kept | understand | understood | understood |
| know | knew | known | wake | woke | woken |
| lead | led | led | wear | wore | worn |
| learn | learnt/learned | learnt/learned | win | won | won |
| leave | left | left | write | wrote | written |
| lend | lent | lent |  |  |  |

## appendix 2 active and passive verb forms

|  | ACtive |  | PASSIVE: TENSE OF BE + PAST PARTICIPLE |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| INFINITIVE | (to) watch | (to) write | (to) be watched | (to) be written |
| -ING FORM | watching | writing | being watched | being written |
| SIMPLE PRESENT | I watch | I write | 1 am watched | It is written |
| PRESENT PROGRESSIVE | I am watching | I am writing | I am being watched | It is being written |
| SIMPLE PAST | I watched | I wrote | I was watched | It was written |
| PAST PROGRESSIVE | I was watching | I was writing | I was being watched | It was being written |
| PRESENT PERFECT | I have watched | I have written | I have been watched | It has been written |
| PAST PERFECT | I had watched | I had written | I had been watched | It had been written |
| WILL FUTURE | I will watch | I will write | I will be watched | It will be written |
| GOING TO FUTURE | I am going to watch | I am going to write | I am going to be watched | It is going to be written |
| MODAL VERBS | I can watch | I can write | I can be watched | It can be written |
|  | 1 must watch | I must write | I must be watched | It must be written |
|  | I should watch etc | I should write etc | I should be watched etc | It should be written etc |

$\rightarrow$ For the use of the different tenses, see Sections 2-5
$\rightarrow$ For the use of passives, see Section 7 .
$\rightarrow$ For the spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.
$\rightarrow$ For the spelling of third-person present forms (writes, watches, sits, goes etc), see page 16.

## appendix 3 capital letters (A, B, C etc)

We use CAPITAL LETTERS to begin the names of people, places, nationalities, languages, days, months and holidays.

Abraham Lincoln New York American Arabic Thursday September Christmas
We also use CAPITAL LETTERS for the most important words in the titles of books, films etc.
War and Peace Gone with the Wind
And we use a CAPITAL LETTER for the first word in a sentence, and for the pronoun $I$.
Yesterday I went for a long bike ride.

## appendix 4 contractions

Contractions like he's, is n't show the pronunciation of informal speech.
They are common and correct in informal writing (for example, friendly letters), but are unusual in formal writing.

| AFFIRMATIVE ( $\dagger$ ) CONTRACTIONS: PRONOUN + 'M, 'RE, 'S, 'VE, 'D, 'LL | NEGATIVE (-) CONTRACTIONS: <br> BE, HAVE OR OTHER AUXILIARY + N'T |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| I am $\rightarrow$ I'm <br> we are $\rightarrow$ we're <br> she is $\longrightarrow$ she's <br> he has $\longrightarrow$ he's <br> I have $\rightarrow$ I've <br> you had $\rightarrow$ you'd <br> you would $\longrightarrow$ you'd <br> they will $\longrightarrow$ they'll | are not $\rightarrow$ aren't <br> is not $\longrightarrow$ is n't <br> have not $\rightarrow$ haven't <br> has not $\longrightarrow$ has n't <br> had not $\longrightarrow$ hadn't <br> do not $\longrightarrow$ don't <br> does not $\rightarrow$ doesn't <br> did not $\longrightarrow$ didn't <br> will not $\rightarrow$ won't | shall not $\longrightarrow$ shan't <br> would not $\longrightarrow$ wouldn't <br> should not $\longrightarrow$ shouldn't <br> cannot $\longrightarrow$ can't <br> could not $\longrightarrow$ couldn't <br> might not $\rightarrow$ mightn't <br> must not $\rightarrow$ mustn't <br> need not $\longrightarrow$ needn't |

- With be, two negative forms are common: you'renot / you aren't, she's not / she is n't, etc. With have, had, will and would, the forms with n't are more common: we usually say I have n't I hadn't etc, NOT I've not, I'd not etc.
- There is no contraction 日ffft $^{\prime}$, BUT am not $\longrightarrow$ aren't in questions.

I'm late, aren'tl? (BUT I'm not late, NOT Haref't fate:)

- The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, here and there.

It'slate. Your mother'sgone home. Mary's got a headache.
How's Joe these days? Here's your money. There's the telephone.

- We don't use affirmative ( + ) contractions at the ends of sentences.

You're early.' 'Yes, we are.' (nOT łes,we'fe:)
I think she's gone home.' 'Yes, I think she has.' (NOT . . . think she's.)

- Negative ( - ) contractions are possible at the ends of sentences.
'It's raining.' 'No, it is n't.'
- Don't confuse it's (= it is/has) with its (possessive - see page 188).

The cat isn't hungry. It's only eaten half of its food.

- Don't confuse who's (= who is/has) with whose.

Who's the woman in the green coat? Whose car is that?

- In very informal speech, going to, want to and got to are often pronounced like gonna, wanna and gotta. They are sometimes written like this, especially in American English.
appendix 5 punctuation

This section summarises the most important rules of punctuation.

## the basic sentence

We don't put commas (,.,i) between the basic parts of a sentence (subject and verb, verb and object etc).
My brother has found a really good job.
(NOT AAy-brethef-has-found areatly geedjeb:
OR AAy brether has-found-areatly geedjeb:

## before the basic sentence

If we put long adverbial expressions (saying when, where etc) before the basic sentence, we often use a comma (,). Compare:
Last year he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.
Between January 2010 and March 2011, he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.

## after the basic sentence

We don't usually use commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence.
He followed a business studies course in Edinburgh between January 2010 and March 2011.

## inside the basic sentence

When adverbial expressions come between parts of the basic sentence, we usually put commas before and after them.
She has, in the six months since she started her music studies, made remarkable progress.

## noun phrases

We don't usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it. those very nice people (NOT these verynice, people)
those very nice people in the flat downstairs (NOT these very nice people, in the-flat downstairs)
those very nice people who invited us to their party
(NOT those very nice people, who invited us to their pafty)

## sentences with conjunctions

We often put commas in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. (See page 219.) Compare:
Everything will be different when Mr Harris leaves.
Everything will be very different after April next year, when Mr Harris leaves.
We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.
When Mr Harris leaves, everything will be different.
indirect speech
We don't put commas after verbs of saying, thinking etc in indirect speech.
Jamie says that he has a problem. (NOT famie says, that ...)
I don't know what I was going to tell the police. (NOT fden't know, what ...)
We don't put question marks (?) in indirect questions.
l asked why he was late. (NOT tasked why he was-tate?)
a useful rule: no comma before that
We don't put commas before that (conjunction or relative pronoun).
I know that she married a man that worked for her father.

## between separate sentences

Between separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;), but not a comma.

## Compare.

Robert phoned, and he asked to speak to the manager. (comma and conjunction)
Robert phoned. He asked to speak to the manager.
OR Robert phoned; he asked to speak to the manager.
BUT NOT Robert phoned, he asked to speak to the manager.
lists
We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not before and).
She gave presents to her brothers, her sister, her sister's husband, her secretary and all of her colleagues.

## abbreviations (short forms of words)

We use full stops after some abbreviations, like e.g. (meaning 'for example'). Mr and Mrs have full stops in American English, but not usually in British English.
Some British cities have beautiful cathedrals, e.g. Salisbury.
Everybody liked Mr Carter.
quotation marks ('...' or "...")
Quotation marks are used to show direct speech (somebody's actual words).
His father said, 'Do what you want.'(NOT <Do what you want > OR - Do want your want.)

## figures

We use commas after thousands and millions, and full stops in decimal fractions.
$€ 5,500,000$ ( = 'five million, five hundred thousand euros')
$€ 5.5 \mathrm{~m}$ ( = 'five and a half million euros')
apostrophes (')
For apostrophes in contractions (e.g. isn't), see Appendix 4. For apostrophes in possessives (e.g. John's), see page 201.

## appendix 6 word order

This section summarises the most important rules of word order that you can find in other parts of the book.

## sentences

The basic word order of English sentences is SUBJECT - VERB - OBJECT.
I play the piano. (NOT the piano play.)

## questions

In questions we usually put an auxiliary verb before the subject.
Did you see the news last night? (NOT Saw youthe news...?) Can you swim?
For more details, see Section 8, pages 103-111.
This does not usually happen with indirect questions.
She asked me where Ilived. (NOT She asked me where didttive.)
For more details, see page 266.

## adjectives

Adjectives usually go before, not after, nouns.
an interesting film (NOT a film interesting)
Adjectives can go after be, seem and similar verbs.
I think she is tired.
For more details, see Section 15, pages 209-211.

## adverbs

Different adverbs can go in different places in a sentence.
Yesterday I got up at 6.00. l've just seen a rabbit. You're driving very slowly.
They do not usually go between the verb and the object.
I bought a bike yesterday. (NOT +bought yesterday abike.)
She speaks Spanish very well. (NOT She speaks very welt Spanish.)
For more details, see Section 15, pages 212-215.

## prepositions

Prepositions often go at the ends of questions, especially in spoken English.
Who did you go with? What did you do that for?
For more details, see Section 8, page 111.
Prepositions can also go at the ends of relative clauses, especially in spoken English. There's the man that I told you about. The train that I usually travel on wasn't running.
For more details, see Section 19, page 258.

## phrasal verbs

The objects of phrasal verbs (but not prepositional verbs) can often go between the two parts of the verb.
I turned the light out. (OR I turned out the light.)
Pronoun objects always go between the two parts of a phrasal verb.
I turned it out. (NOT ffurfned out tit.)
For more details, see Section 10, pages 142-143.
ago
Ago follows an expression of time.
We arrived two hours ago. (NOT ... age two houfs)
enough
Enough usually goes before nouns but after adjectives and adverbs.
Have you got enough soup? (NOT ... soup enough?)
Is the soup hot enough? (NOT ... enough hot?) Ididn't get up early enough.

## appendix 7 expressions with prepositions

## prepositions after verbs, adjectives and nouns

We use prepositions (at, in etc) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns.
This is a list of the most common examples.

## afraid of

She's afraid of dogs.

## agree with

I don't agree with you.
angry about something
We're all angry about the new working hours.
angry with somebody
Mary's very angry with you.
arrive at/in a place
I usually arrive at school at 8.30.
What time do we arrive in London?
ask for
If you want anything, just ask for it.

## bad at

I'm bad at games.
believe in (= 'believe that something is real')
Do you believe in ghosts?

## belong to

This book belongs to me.

## depend on

We may arrive late this evening. It depends on the traffic.

## different from/to

You're different from (OR to) your sister.
difficulty in doing something
I have a lot of difficulty in understanding her.
discuss something with somebody
We discussed our plans with the manager.
divide into
I divided the cake into four parts.
dream about something or somebody;
dream of doing something
I often dream about horses.
When I was young, I dreamt of becoming a pilot.
dressed in
She was dressed completely in black.
example of
Can you show me an example of your work?
explain something to somebody
Can you explain this word to me?
get into/out of a car;
get on(to)/off a bus, train, plane, ship
I picked up my case and got into the taxi.
She got off the bus at the wrong stop.
get to a place
How do you get to Southport from here?
good at
He's good at tennis.

## happen to

What's happened to Alice? She's an hour late.
the idea of doing something
We had the idea of starting a small business.
interested in
Are you interested in animals?
kind to
They have always been very kind to me.

## laugh at

Please don't laugh at my French pronunciation.

## listen to

I like to listen to music while I'm working.
look after children etc
Can you look after the children for half an hour?
look at
Look at that wonderful old car!
look for (= 'try to find')
'What are you looking for?' 'My keys.'
married to
He's married to Jane Gordon, the novelist.
nice to
You weren't very nice to my mother.
pay somebody for something; pay a bill
Have you paid John for the tickets?
I forgot to pay the electricity bill.
pleased with
We are very pleased with his work.

## polite to

It's best to be polite to policemen.
reason for
What was the reason for his change of plans?
smile at
In this job you have to smile at people all day.

## talk about

Were you talking about me?
thank somebody for
Thank you for waiting.
think about/of
I think about you all the time.
We're thinking of going to America.
translate into/from
I've got to translate this letter from French into German.
typical of
She went out without saying 'Thank you'. That's just typical of her.
wait for
I waited for her for half an hour, and then went home.

## write to

We write to each other every week. (BUT We phone each other ... - no preposition)

## wrong with

What's wrong with the car?
$\rightarrow$ For more about prepositions, see Section 21.
$\rightarrow$ For more about prepositions with verbs, see page 141.

## common expressions beginning with prepositions

```
at a party at the cinema at the theatre
at the top at the bottom at the side
at the beginning at the end of something in the end (= 'finally','after a long time')
by car/bus/train etc (BUT on foot)
a book by Dickens an opera by Mozart
for example
in a raincoat/dress/hat
in the rain/snow
in the sky in the world
in a picture
in the middle
in a loud/quiet voice
write in pen/pencil
in my opinion
in time (='not late') on time (= 'at just the right time; not late or early')
on the phone on the radio on TV
on page 22
```

$\rightarrow$ For expressions without articles like in hospital, at university, see page 162.

## appendix 8 word problems

This section tells you about some words that are difficult to use correctly. We explain some other word problems in other sections of the book: see the Index.
after We don't usually say and after, X happened. We prefer afterwards or after that.
We had a pizza, and afterwards / after that we went skating. (NOT . . . and aftef, we went ...)
ago Ago goes after a time expression. Compare ago with for and since (see page 65).
It's August 1st. I came here three months ago. I've lived here for three months, since May.
another is one word.
Would you like another glass? (NOT ... an other gtass:)
as and like (similarity) To say that things are similar, we normally use like. But before subject + verb,
we prefer as in a formal style.
Your sister looks like you. Pronounce it like Ido (informal) / as I do (formal).
as, not like (jobs) To talk about the jobs that people or things do, use as, not like.
He's working as a waiter. (NOT He's working like a waitef.) I used my shoe as a hammer.
born We say that somebody is/was born (passive).
I was born in London. Thousands of deaf children are born every year.
do and make Common expressions with do and make:
do work, a job, shopping, washing, ironing, business; do something, nothing, anything, everything
make a suggestion, a decision, a phone call, a noise, a journey, a mistake, money, a bed, a fire, love
do + ...ing Common expressions:
do the shopping; do some (a lot of / a bit of) walking, swimming, reading, climbing, sailing, skiing
else We use else to mean other after something, anything, somebody, nobody etc.
Something else to drink? Nobody else cooks like you.
ever is used mostly in questions, or with present perfect + superlative.
Do you ever play golf? Have you ever been to Ireland?
This is the best film I've ever seen. She says he's the nicest boy she's ever met.
explain is not used with two objects (see page 144).
Can you explain this word to me? (NOT Gef you explain me this wofd?)
forget see remember.
hear and listen to We can hear something without trying. When we listen to something, we want to hear it.
Suddenly I heard a noise in the garden. Are you listening to me? (NOT ... tistening me?)
We often use can with hear.
I could hear Mary and John talking in the kitchen.
home We leave out to before home.
Well, goodnight, I'm going home. (BUT Is anybody at home?)
hope We often use so and not after hope.
'Is David coming tomorrow?' I hope so.' 'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope not.'
If and when We use if for things that may happen, and when for things that will happen.
If I live to be $100 \ldots$ If it rains today ... When I die ... When it gets dark...
kst has several meanings: 1) right now $\quad$ 2) a short time ago (with present perfect, see page 64)
3) exactly 4 4) really $\quad$ 5) only

1) I'll phone you later. We're just having lunch. 2) Aunt Daphne has just arrived. 3) It's just four o'clock.
2) I just love your dress. 5) 'Put those chocolates down!' 'I was just looking at them, Mum.'
let and make If I let you do something, I say that you can do it. If I make you do it, I say that you must.
After let and make, we use object + infinitive without to.
Her parents let her go to the party. But they made her come home at midnight.
remember and forget + infinitive (with to) look towards the future: things that one has to do.
remember and forget + -ing form look back to the past: things that one has done.
I must remember to buy bread. She always forgets to close the door.
I remember seeing the Queen when I was six. I'Il never forget meeting you.
same We normally use the with same; and we say the same as ... (NOT the same like ...).
We had the same idea. (NOT ... a sameidea OR ... sameidea) Her shoes are the same as mine.
see and hear + object + infinitive (without to)/...ing If you see/hear somebody do something, you see/hear a complete action. If you see/hear somebody doing something, they are in the middle of doing it.

I saw her go into John's house. I heard her play Beethoven's violin concerto on the radio.
Ilooked up and saw Leo talking to Zoe. I walked past Anna's room and heard her crying.
see, look and watch We can see something without trying. When we look at something, we want to see it.
I saw Bill in the supermarket yesterday. Look at that bird! (NOT took that bird!)
We often use can with see.
On the left of the photo you can see my grandmother.
We watch things that move, change or happen.
We watch TV most evenings. Did you watch the football match?
The police are watching him to see where he goes.
so and such We use so + adjective without a noun, and such when there is a noun.
so kind so big such kind people such a big mistake such a fool
still, yet and already We use still to say that something is continuing; yet to ask if it has happened (or to say it hasn't); already to say it has happened earlier than we expected.

Granny's still on the phone. 'Has the postman come yet?' 'No, not yet.'
I've already spent the week's money, and it's only Tuesday.
than, as and that Use than after comparatives (see page 223); as in the structure as ... as (see page 228);
that after say, think etc and as a relative pronoun (see page 256).
She's taller than me. It's as cold as ice. The boss says that you're right.
Who's the woman that just came in?
think We often use so after think. Don't use an infinitive after think.
'Are you coming to the party?' 'I think so.' 'Is it raining?' 'I don't think so.'
I'm thinking of going to America. (NOT t'm thinking to go ...)
try After try we can use an infinitive (with to) or an -ing form. We prefer an infinitive when we are talking about trying difficult things.

Try to stop smoking - it's bad for you. 'It's really hot in here.' 'Try opening a window.'
very and foo Too means 'more than we want'; very doesn't.
'It's very warm today.' 'Yes, a bit too warm for me.' 'Oh, it's OK for me.'
wait We often use wait for with object + infinitive (with to).
I'm waiting for the postman to come.
which? and what? We prefer which when we are choosing between a small number of things, and what when there is a wider choice.

I'd like a pair of those shoes.' 'Which ones - the blue or the red? And what size?'
whom In a very formal style, we use whom as an object in questions and relative clauses.
Whom did they elect? With whom did she go? She hated the man for whom she worked.
In an informal style, who is more normal in questions, and that (or nothing) in relatives.
Who did they elect? Who did she go with? She hated the man (that) she worked for.
why and because Why asks for a reason. Because gives a reason.
'Why are you late?' 'Because I missed the train.'

## answer key

## page 2

11 are 2 is 3 are 4 am 5 are 6 is 7 am
21 We're all tired. 2 They're here. 3 I'm sorry.
4 My name's Peter. 5 You're early.
6 The shop's closed. 7 She's at home.

31 Is Marie from Paris? 2 Are we very late?
3 Is John in bed? 4 Is the boss here?
5 Is your car fast? 6 Is Luke here?
7 Are we all ready? 8 Am I early?
9 Are they at home? 10 Are you happy?
11 Is Joe married? 12 Is this your house?
13 Is that Jane?

41 What's 2 Where are 3 Who's 4 When are
5 Why are 6 How's 7 Where's 8 Who are
9 How are 10 When's

## page 3

51 she's not ill. / she isn't ill.
2 they're not in London. / they aren't in London.
3 you're not too tall. / you aren't too tall.
4 we're not very late. / we aren't very late.
5 it's not hot. / it isn't hot.
6 I'm not at university.
7 he's not very nice. / he isn't very nice.
8 she's not in her office. / she isn't in her office.
9 it's not mine. / it isn't mine.
10 it's not very fast. / it isn't very fast.

61 He is thirsty. 2 She is cold. 3 They are hot.
4 It is cold.

71 right. 2 size 3 colour 4 interested
5 wrong 6 thirsty. 7 hot 8 cold
9 old 10 hungry.

## page 4

11 were; was 2 was; were 3 were
4 was; were 5 was; were 6 were; was
7 was; was 8 were; was

21 Was the party good?
2 Were the people interesting?
3 Was your father a teacher?
4 Was everybody late?
5 When was your driving test?
6 Where were you on Tuesday?
7 Why were all the windows open?
8 Was John's brother at school with you?

31 weren't late. 2 wasn't a teacher.
3 wasn't with Anna 4 weren't well
5 weren't in England 6 wasn't good
7 weren't in their hotel 8 wasn't warm

## page 5

1 It will be hot in Rio. It will be warm in Paris. It will be cold in London. It will be very cold in Moscow.

21 I won't be sorry.
2 It will be hot.
3 We will be at home.
4 The shops won't be closed.
5 He won't be in Scotland.
6 Lisa won't be at school.

31 When will your father be in England?
2 Will Ann be at the party with John?
3 Will everybody be here at 8.00 ?
4 Will the train be late again?
5 When will Joe and Mary be in the office?
6 Will the weather be good tomorrow?
7 Where will you be on Tuesday?

## page 6

21 Is there a doctor here?
2 Are there any trains to London from this station?
3 Was there a special price for students?
4 Were there any mistakes in my letter?
5 Is there much money in your bank account?
6 How many students are there in your class?
7 Were there many children at the swimming pool?
8 How many people were there at the party?

11 there will be sun 2 there will be two 3 there will be ten people 4 there will be (enough) food 5 There will be fish 6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers

21 There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
2 There will not be any trains on Sunday.
3 There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning. 4 If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast. 5 There will not be anybody at home tomorrow evening.
6 There will not be any children at the party.
7 There will not be a French lesson on Monday evering. 8 There will not be time to have lunch today.

31 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

## page 8

11 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul 6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick

31 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children? 3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money. 7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

## page 9

11 She didn't have a computer. 2 She had very fair hair. 3 She didn't have lots of friends.
4 She didn't have many nice clothes.
5 Did she have her own room?

31 He will have a job.
2 He won't have a bicycle.
3 He will have a car.
4 Will he have a house?
5 Will he have a girlfriend?
6 He won't have old clothes.
7 He will have a suit.
8 Will he have a guitar?

11 had dinner 2 has coffee 3 have a baby 4 have a shower 5 have toast 6 have a game

21 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip. 3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 'Did you have a good game?' 6 I don't have coffee

## page 11

11 He's got two brothers. 2 He hasn't got a car.
3 He's got three dogs. 4 He's got a dictionary. 5 He hasn't got long hair. 6 He hasn't got any sisters.

31 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

## page 12

11 They weren't ready. 2 We're all here.
3 I'm not a student. 4 Where's your house?
5 She won't be late. 6 You've got my keys.
7 I haven't got much time. 8 Franz doesn't live here.

21 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.

31 is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed. 3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big. 5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office. 7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.

41 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do
6 does 7 do 8 Does

51 there will be 2 Is there 3 There was
4 are there 5 there weren't
6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
9 Was there 10 Will there be
$7 \quad 1$ is 2 is 3 are 4 has 5 was 6 were not 7 didnothave 8 was 9 is 10 has 11 has 12 is 13 is 14 is 15 has 16 does not have 17 has 18 is 19 has 20 has

81 true 2 false 3 true 4 true 5 false 6 true 7 false 8 false 9 false 10 true

## page 14

11 Where 213 Are 4 has 5 is 6 am 7 won＇t 8 am 9 is 10 is 11 have 12 Does 13 Have 14 Will you be 15 I＇m not 16 How 17 have 18 will be 19 have 20 are

21 ノ，メ，よ，よ $2 \times 3 \times 4 \downarrow 5 \times$ $6 \times 7$ 」 $8 \times 9$ 」 $10 \times$

31 Is there a taxi outside？ 2 Has Chris got a headache？ 3 Joe doesn＇t have a car．
4 Did Ann have a meeting yesterday？
5 I didn＇t have coffee for breakfast．
6 Will there be an English lesson tomorrow？
7 I＇m not hungry． 8 Petra hasn＇t got a new car．
9 Did she have a nice time at the party？
10 Has the house got a big garden？

41 Is Rosemary from London？ 2 Will we be early？ 3 Was Sarah at home？ 4 Does Karim have／Has Karim got a cold？ 5 Is your car fast？ 6 Will the manager be in America？ 7 Were Tim and Anna students？ 8 What time will you have lunch today？ 9 Will you be here tomorrow？ 10 Were those people American？

## page 16

1 ＋－s：cooks，drinks，lives，reads，runs，smokes， stands，starts，writes＋－es：fetches，fixes， misses，pushes，touches，watches，wishes

2 ＋－s：enjoys，plays，stays，tries
$-r>$－IES：copies，fries，marries，studies

31 llive in that house． 2 Kim works in a bank． 3 Claire plays the violin very badly． 4 Those children come from Scotland． 5 You look very young．

41 The boss 213 Bread 4 Andy
5 Sophy and lan 6 You 7 Our cat
8 That child 9 All those buses 10 My father

## page 17

11 play 2 speaks 3 ask 4 goes 5 make 6 forget 7 listen 8 lives 9 watch 10 get

21 thinks；knows 2 studies 3 tries 4 wear 5 washes 6 work 7 says 8 sits 9 watches 10 want

## page 18

11 You do not speak very good Chinese．
2 Bill／He does not play the guitar very well．
3 We do not agree about holidays．
4 George and Andrew do not live near me．
5 My father／He does not write poetry．
6 Barbara／She does not live in London．
7 Henry／He does not like parties．
21 doesn＇t stop at Cardiff． 2 I don＇t like pop music． 3 He／Peter doesn＇t rememberfaces very well． 4 We don＇t know his wife． 5 She／ Alice doesn＇t teach mathematics． 6 They／The children don＇t play hockey on Mondays． 7 They ／The shops don＇t open on Sunday afternoons．

31 Our cat doesn＇t／does not like fish．
2 Melinda doesn＇t／does not speak Russian．
3 I don＇t／do not remember your phone number．
4 Oranges don＇t／do not grow in Britain．
5 The postman doesn＇t／does not come on Sundays．
6 We don＇t／do not play much tennis．

## page 19

41 don＇t like 2 doesn＇t speak
3 don＇t remember 4 don＇t know
5 doesn＇t want 6 don＇t want 7 doesn＇t work
8 don＇t think
page 20
11 Does 2 Do 3 Do 4 Does
5 Does 6 Do

21 Does the Oxford bus stop here?
2 Do the teachers know her?
3 Do you play the piano?
4 Does John work in a restaurant?
5 Does this train stop at York?
6 Do we need more eggs?
7 Does Fatima like parties?
8 Does Peter speak Spanish well?

31 your children 2 the lesson 3 you
4 the holiday 5 those women 6 you

## page 21

41 Where do 2 What does 3 When do
4 Why does 5 How many... does 6 How do

51 What do you want? 2 What does this word mean? 3 What time does the film start? 4 How much do those shoes cost? 5 Why does she need money? 6 How does this camera work? 7 Where do you buy your meat? 8 Who do you want to see?

61 How do you spell that? 2 What do you do? 3 What does this word mean? / How do you pronounce this word? 4 What time does the train arrive? 5 How much does it cost / do they cost? 6 Do you know Anna? 7 How do you do? 8 What time does the film start?

## page 22

11 does 2 My cats 3 doesn't 4 stops 5 do English people 6 open 7 your holiday start 8 play 9 That café 10 say

21 I don't like getting up early.
2 Do you want something to drink?
3 Dan plays football on Saturdays.
4 Do you remember her phone number?
5 That clock doesn't work.
6 She often flies to Paris on business.
7 It doesn't rain much here in summer.
8 Do elephants eat meat?
9 Does he think he can sing?
10 We need a new car.

## page 23

11 are talking 2 is eating 3 is cooking
4 am not enjoying 5 am reading
6 is not raining 7 are not listening
8 am feeling 9 is not going 10 are learning

2 cleaning, coming, dying, enjoying, going, living, making, playing, singing, starting, washing, writing

3 getting, feeling, putting, hitting, jumping, raining, robbing, shopping, shouting, sitting, slimming, dreaming, standing, talking, turning, answering, opening, visiting, forgetting

## page 24

11 The baby's crying again.
2 It's snowing hard.
3 You're looking very beautiful today.
4 Your coffee's getting cold.
5 I'm playing a lot of football this year.
6 We're waiting for a phone call.
7 Chris and Helen are spending a week in France.
21 She's washing 2 She's brushing
3 She's listening 4 She's drinking
5 She's reading 6 She's brushing
7 She's reading 8 She's opening
9 She's going

## page 25

11 He's not / He isn't listening to me. 2 I'm not working today. 3 lt's not / It isn't raining now. 4 She's not / She isn't wearing a coat. 5 John's students aren't learning very much. 6 We're not / We aren't enjoying this film. 7 You're not / You aren't eating much these days. 8 I'm not expecting to pass the exam. 9 My computer's not / My computer isn't working. 10 I'm not playing much tennis these days.

21 he's not / he isn't playing well today.
2 they're not / they aren't living in London.
3 it's not / it isn't running well.
4 I'm not enjoying it.
5 the sun's not / the sun isn't shining.
6 I'm not studying at university.
7 she's not / she isn't singing just now.
8 I'm not sleeping well these days.
9 we're not / we aren't having a good time.
10 I'm not crying because of you.
31 The train's not/ The train isn't moving. 2 The children aren't listening. 3 It's not / It isn't raining. 4 The cat's not / The cat isn't eating. 5 John's not / John isn't working.

## page 26

11 Are you waiting for somebody? 2 Is your boyfriend enjoying the concert? 3 Are those men taking our car? 4 Are you talking to me? 5 Is it snowing? 6 Are we going too fast? 7 Is your computer working? 8 Are you reading that newspaper? 9 Is the bus coming? 10 Is somebody cooking lunch?
$2 \quad 1$ '... What is he writing?' 2 'Why is it stopping?' 3 'What are they studying?' 4 'What game are they playing?' 5 '... Where are you going?' 6 'Who is she telephoning?' 7 'What is it/he/she eating?' 8 'Where is she working?' 9 'What are you cooking?' 10 'Where are you living?'

31 Where are you going now? 2 Why is Anne crying? 3 What/Why is he writing? 4 Who/ Why are you telephoning? 5 Where are they living? 6 Where/Why is your brother studying English? 7 What/Why are you cooking? 8 Why are those people looking at me? 9 What is the dog eating? 10 What are the children doing?

## page 27

11 Are you getting up?
2 It's raining again.
3 You aren't / You're not listening.
4 Where are you going?
5 Am l talking too fast?
6 I'm not enjoying this film.
7 Why are those people laughing at me?
8 I'm not cooking this for you.
9 What are you drinking?
0 The baby's eating the newspaper.
21 Peter's trying to save money.
2 Why are those children crying?
3 Are your friends playing football this afternoon?
4 She's not / She isn't looking very well today.
5 I think she's making a big mistake.
6 You're not / You aren't wearing your usual glasses.
7 I'm starting to learn Spanish.
8 Is the 10.15 train running today?
9 David's not / David isn't living with his parents any more.
10 What are you doing in my room?
$3 \quad 1$ is snowing 2 is looking 3 is wearing
4 is not wearing 5 is walking 6 are looking
7 are trying 8 are stopping 9 is returning 10 is kissing 11 is (he) saying

## page 28

1 SIMPLE PRESENT: nearly always, on Fridays, very often, when I'm tired
present progressive: just now, these days, this afternoon, today

21 eat; is not eating grass.
2 fly; plane is not flying.
3 rains; it is not raining.
4 works; he/John is not working hard
5 plays; she/Ann is not playing tennis
6 speaks; he/John is not speaking English now.
7 drives; he/Bill is not driving a bus now.
8 sells; this shop / it is not selling books now.
9 plays; is not playing the piano now.
10 writes; he/Simon is not writing poetry now.
11 chase; dog is not chasing cats now.

## page 29

31 is she working 2 Does it rain 3 don't speak
4 is getting 5 Do you play 6 are you writing
7 She's coming 8 I'm going 9 boils
10 Is that water boiling 11 Is the bus coming
12 talks; never listens. 13 He writes
14 it's getting 15 do you see your parents
16 He's coming back 17 Does John drive
18 'm waiting for 19 are you looking
20 do you like.

## page 30

11 What does this word mean? 2 Rob doesn't want to see the doctor. 3 She loves me.
4 Peter seems tired. 5 We don't need a new car.
6 Do you know that man? 7 I hate this cold weather. 8 Do you like this music? 9 Idon't remember her address. 10 Do you understand this letter?

21 don't understand. 2 prefer 3 like
4 Do (we) need 5 doesn't matter.
6 hope 7 don't remember 8 Do (you) believe 9 don't know 10 Do (you) think 11 see. 12 do (you) mean 13 love 14 hates

## page 31

31 'I don't understand.' 2 'I see.' 3 'I hope not.' 4 'I think so.' 5 'I don't think so.' 6 'I don't know.' 7 'I know.' 8 'It depends.' 9 'It doesn't matter.' 10 'I don't remember.' 11 'I don't mind.' 12 'I hope so.' 13 'I don't think so.' 14 'I hope not.' 15 'I think so.'

## page 32

11 What 2 When 3 Where 4 How many 5 What time 6 How much 7 Why 8 How

21 What language do Brazilians speak? 2 Felix drives fast cars. 3 Annemarie doesn't read newspapers. 4 My two brothers both work in London. 5 Dogs don't eat vegetables. 6 Maria doesn't play the piano. 7 Does Peter work at weekends? 8 My husband cooks very well. 9 Roger wants to work with animals. 10 Does this bus go to Belfast?
$41 \downarrow 2 \times 3 \times 4 \downarrow 5 \times 6 \times 7 \times$ $8 \downarrow 9 \downarrow 10 \downarrow$

## page 33

51 looks after 2 gets up 3 has 4 goes 5 likes 6 likes 7 does not like 8 lives 9 works 10 does not want 11 is not working 12 is sitting 13 is reading 14 is crying 15 want 16 do not want 17 does not know 18 loves 19 is doing 20 do you think

6 (possible answers)
Cathy is wearing a black skirt, a red blouse, a green cardigan, black boots and a raincoat. She is not wearing a hat. Sandra is wearing a long green dress, a black coat, black shoes, and a black hat. She is not wearing glasses. David is wearing a blue shirt with a pink tie, a grey suit, a black belt, black shoes and glasses. He is not wearing a coat. (Other answers are possible.)

## page 34

1 catches, costs, does, enjoys, flies, has, hopes, knows, lives, mixes, passes, plays, stands, teaches, thinks, tries, washes, wears, wishes, works

2 beginning, crying, dying, enjoying, flying, forgetting, getting, happening, holding, hoping, learning, looking, making, opening, playing, sending, sitting, sleeping, stopping, taking

31 Do you work in London? 2 I don't like pop music. 3 Where does James live? 4 Do you want some coffee? 5 It rains a lot here. I It rains here a lot. 6 I wash my car every week. 7 Luke doesn't speak Spanish. 8 Do all your friends play football? 9 I don't wear a suit to the office. 10 How do you make spaghetti carbonara?

41 My sister is travelling in Spain. 2 Alice isn't looking very happy. 3 Why is the baby crying? 4 Are you waiting for the bus? 5 l'm not playing much tennis these days. 6 Tim's wearing a very nice raincoat. 7 Are you talking about me? 8 You're walking too slowly. 9 What's that child eating? 10 I'm not enjoying this concert.
$51 \downarrow 2 \times 3 \times 4 \downarrow 5 \downarrow 6 \times 7 \downarrow 8 \times$ $9 \curvearrowright 10 \downarrow 11 \downarrow 12 \times 13 \downarrow 14 \times 15 \times$

## page 36

11 The woman is going to have breakfast. 2 He is going to read a letter. 3 She is going to play the piano. 4 The cars are going to crash.
5 He is going to drink coffee. 6 The ball is going to break the window.

21 Is Jane going to change her school?
2 Where are you going to put that picture?
3 What are you going to buy for Felix's birthday?
4 Is Ethan going to play football tomorrow?
5 When are you going to stop smoking?
6 Is Alice going to go to university?
7 Are you going to phone the police?
8 Is your mother going to come and stay with us?
9 Is she going to buy that coat?
10 What are you going to tell the boss?

## page 37

31 I'm going to stay in a nice hotel.
2 I'm going to swim a lot.
3 I'm not going to do any work.
4 I'm going to take photos.
5 I'm not going to read English newspapers.
6 I'm going to learn some Italian.
7 I'm not going to write postcards.
8 I'm not going to visit museums.

41 How are you going to get to London?
2 When is Monica going to come and see us?
3 It's not going to snow.
4 I'm going to cook fish for lunch.
5 When are you going to see the doctor?
6 Angela is going to marry her secretary.
7 Is John going to call this evening?
8 I'm going to stop playing poker.
9 Everybody is going to watch the football match. 10 Sally is not going to get the job.

## page 38

11 I'm not playing baseball tomorrow.
2 I'm not going to Canada next year.
3 We're staying with Paul and Lucy next week.
4 Are you working this evening?
5 What time are your friends arriving?
6 My company is moving to Scotland next year.
7 How is your mother travelling to France?
8 I'm seeing the dentist on Thursday.
9 I'm going to a concert tonight.
10 Gary is not marrying Cathy after all.
21 No, he's seeing John Parker on Sunday morning.
2 No, he's going to the Birmingham office by train.
3 No, he's having lunch with Stewart on Tuesday.
4 No, he's going to the theatre on Wednesday evening.
5 No, his new secretary is starting on Thursday. OR No, he's going to Berlin on Friday.
6 No, he's going to Phil and Monica's wedding on Saturday.

31 Where are you going? 2 Why are you going there? 3 How long are you staying? 4 Are you staying in one place? 5 Are you staying with friends? 6 How are you travelling?
7 Are you taking the dog? 8 Who is going with you? 9 When are you coming back?

## page 39

11 The class will begin at 9.30. 2 They'll be home soon. 3 The examination will be difficult. 4 We'll walk to the party. 5 She will not speak to me. 6 John will answer your questions. 7 Emily will be ten years old on Sunday.

21 What time will tomorrow evening's concert start? 2 When will you and the family get back from Paris? 3 Will you be here tomorrow? 4 Will you and your mother be here tomorrow? 5 Where will you be this evening? 6 Will the children have enough money for the journey? 7 How soon will you know the answer?

31 won't be; will she be 2 won't have; Will you have 3 won't find; will l find 4 won't go; will they go? 5 won't get; will he get? 6 won't be; will it be 7 won't know; will you know

## page 40

11 'Il wash 2 'Il do 3 won't start 4 'll tell 5 won't stop 6 'Il go shopping. 7 'Il help 8 won't open.

31 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B page 41

11 The next lesson starts at 2.00.
2 This term ends on March 12th.
3 When does the concert finish?
4 We don't have a lesson next Thursday.
5 Does this bus stop at the post office?
6 The play starts at 8.00 .
7 What time do you arrive in Rome?
8 The banks close at 3.00 tomorrow.
9 The next train stops at every station.
10 When do the school holidays start?

21 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 'm not/won't be; will see 5 will study; stops 6 will drive; find 7 marries; will change 8 Will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) listen 10 will phone; get

## page 42

11 He's going to write a letter.
2 She's going to play the violin.
3 They're going to get on a bus.
4 The car's going to crash.
5 He's going to sing.
6 He's going to go skiing.
7 He's going to start running.
8 He's going to go swimming.
9 They're going to have dinner.
10 She's going to drink a glass of water.

21 She's seeing her bank manager on Monday.
2 She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
3 She's seeing her dentist on Wednesday.
4 She's seeing her accountant on Thursday.
5 She's seeing her solicitor on Friday.
31 Il start 2 will change 3 won't snow 4 'Il go to sleep soon. 5 'Il tell

## page 43

4 I I'm going to stop smoking. 2 I'm seeing Andrew tonight. 3 It's not going to rain. 4 Peter's going to marry his boss. 5 Oliver won't pass his exams. 6 You'll like this film. 7 What time does the bus from London arrive? 8 I'm not using the car tomorrow. 9 I'm going to cook steak this evening. 10 How are you going to travel to Ireland? 11 I'll phone you when I get home. 12 Are you working on Saturday? 13 Will you need a room for the night? 14 Are you going to write to your father? 15 We won't have enough money for a good holiday. 16 Where will I find the key? 17 Will you go to university after you leave school? 18 John and Sylvia are staying with us next week. 19 When are you going to have a haircut? 20 Are you going to get up soon?

51 old house 2 'll come to 3 bridge
4 'll come to 5 'll see 6 house
7 'll recognise 8 door 9 apple trees. 10 'Il find 11 key 12 'Il have 13 great time.
page 44
11 l'll 2 She'll 3 It won't 4 They're going to 5 They'll 6 They won't 7 She's not going to or She isn't going to 8 I'm not going to
$21 \times 2 \downarrow 3 \times 4 \times 5 \downarrow 6 \downarrow 7 \downarrow 8 \downarrow$ $9 \times 10 \times$

31 The concert is tonight. 2 Will I 3 will move 4 are not 5 amgoing 6 won't 7 l'll phone ... I get 8 will give 9 are you 10 will the meeting be

41 Is Melanie seeing Martin on Monday? Tessa isn't / Tessa's not seeing Tom on Tuesday.
2 is Mr Andrews going to study Arabic in Algiers? Mrs Roberts is not going to study Russian in Rome.
3 Will Derek cook duck for Dorothy? Sally won't cook spaghetti for Sam.
4 Is Harry going to take a holiday in Hungary? Steve is not going to study in Siberia.
5 Is Oliver travelling to Oslo in October? Monica is not travelling to Madagascar in May.

## page 46

1 arrived, changed, cooked, hated, lived, passed, shaved, watched

2 stayed, studied, cried, annoyed, carried, hurried, prayed

3 shopped, rained, started, robbed, slimmed, jumped, shouted, slipped, fitted, turned, visited, regretted, developed, galloped, opened, answered, referred

## page 47

11 I forgot my girlfriend's birthday on Monday.
2 That's a really good book. I read it last year.
3 When we were children we always spoke French at home.
4 I didn't like my piano teacher, so I stopped my lessons last week.
5 Where did you learn to speak Spanish so well?
31 stood 2 heard 3 opened 4 came 5 didnotsee 6 said 7 took 8 gave 9 held 10 did not read 11 said 12 did not speak 13 wrote 14 ran 15 turned

## page 48

11 worked 2 know 3 feel 4 came 5 see 6 write 7 arrive 8 like

21 We didn't speak Arabic. 2 He / My uncle didn't teach science. $3 \mathrm{He} /$ Bill didn't cook the fish. 4 I didn't take my father (to the mountains). 5 We didn't tell the police everything. 6 I didn't write to my brother. 7 I didn't like the music. 8 We didn't know her phone number.

31 he changed his shirt. 2 she didn't answer the others. 3 he didn't go to her house.
4 l brought some chocolates. 5 she bought a very nice dress. 61 didn't eat the meat.
7 we didn't keep the letters. 8 they spoke German. 9 he didn't shave at weekends.

## page 49

11 bring 2 start 3 saw 4 began 5 break 6 leave 7 speak 8 keep 9 learnt 10 forgot 11 come 12 say

21 did she remember it? 2 did you pay the others? 3 did you like the film? 4 did he play well? 5 did you give them any money? 6 did she write to her mother? 7 did he learn English? 8 did she get up early enough? 9 did you shut the front door? 10 did they take the dog? 11 did she feel OK yesterday? 12 did he forget the address as well?

31 Where did he go? 2 What did he buy? 3 Who did she marry? 4 What did she break?
5 Where did he stay? 6 What did he study?
7 Where did he study? 8 What did she write? 9 Who did she hear? 10 What did he understand? 11 What did she forget? 12 Where did she go (on holiday)?

## page 50

11 I learnt a lot of Latin. 2 I didn't remember to buy the milk. 3 I didn't speak to her mother. 4 'Did he phone this morning?' 5 I took the train. 6 did you go to Malaysia? 7 it didn't stop at Glasgow. 8 'They saw two films.' 9 'Did you eat my chocolates too?’ 10 Ididn't study enough.

21 Where did they go? 2 Why did they give him it / a bicycle? 3 What did she say? 4 What did they buy? 5 Who did you invite? 6 What did she drop? 7 Who did he beat? 8 Why did he write (to the police)? 9 Who did she ask (to marry her)? 10 When did he live there / in India?

3 did you remember

## page 51

11 were dancing. 2 was cooking supper.
3 was driving home. 4 was not watching TV.

21 What was she writing? 2 Where was he shopping? 3 What was she cooking? 4 Why were they crying? 5 Were they driving to Scotland?

## page 52

11 was having 2 watched 3 was watching
4 worked 5 were studying 6 drove
7 walked 8 was working 9 studied 10 was talking

21 we were playing cards. 2 he wasn't talking.
3 it was snowing. 4 she wasn't walking
5 were you doing 6 were they talking about me?
7 were you driving 8 wasn't expecting
9 was doing 10 weren't running

## page 53

31 was reading; jumped 2 met; was travelling
3 broke; was skiing 4 was shopping; stole
5 phoned; was working 6 stopped; was driving
7 heard; was having 8 went; was watching
9 was washing up; broke 10 cut; was working
1 left; was snowing 12 opened; were talking
3 rang; was cooking 14 heard; was working
$41 \times 2 \downarrow 3 \downarrow 4 \times 5 \times 6 \downarrow 7 \downarrow 8 \times$

51 were singing. 2 were waiting 3 opened
4 drove 5 turned 6 started 7 turned
8 was passing 9 ran 10 pulled

## page 54

11 What did all those people want?
2 Did all your brothers send you birthday cards?
3 The baby ate some toothpaste this morning.
4 The teacher didn't answer my question.
5 llost my keys again yesterday.
6 Did anybody phone while I was out?
7 The Prime Minister told us that things were getting better.
8 My friends and I did not believe the Prime Minister.
9 Richard didn't give me a birthday present.
10 What time did you get up today?
21 we were watching TV. 2 he wasn't reading (it). 3 were they speaking English? 4 what were the children doing? 5 I wasn't expecting her. 6 I don't know what I was doing 7 it was snowing again. 8 the trains were not running. 9 How fast were you driving 10 he was standing

31 went; was raining. 2 read
3 Did (you) watch 4 walked; were talking
5 was swimming 6 looked; was talking; was listening. 7 rang; washaving 8 was lying 9 did (you) go 10 met; was travelling

41 looked 2 was raining 3 washed 4 got dressed 5 gave 6 made 7 didn't eat 8 went 9 waited 10 didn't arrive 11 walked 12 was walking 13 arrived 14 was working 15 was talking 16 came in 17 told 18 didn't make 19 sat down 20 started

51 Mozart composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
2 Leonardo da Vinci painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
3 Shah Jehan built the Taj Mahal.
4 Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.
5 Sergei Eisenstein directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
6 Gustave Eiffel built the Eiffel Tower.
7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay first climbed Mount Everest.
8 Marie Curie discovered radium.
9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney wrote the song 'Help.'
10 The novelist Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and Prejudice:

## page 56

1 became, began, broke, brought, bought, changed, cried, developed, felt, went, hoped, left, liked, paid, started, stayed, stopped, watched, wrote, worked

21 stopped 2 visited 3 making 4 feel 5 spoke 6 tell 7 like 8 see 9 phoned; was going 10 played

31 worked 2 was working; met
3 lost; was shopping 4 listened to
5 was cleaning; stopped 6 burnt; was cooking
7 was reading; came 8 lived
9 was studying; got 10 caught; was running

41 drove 2 I studied 3 were you crying
4 beginning; went 5 paid; left
6 shopping; stole 7 rang 8 opened
9 did you get up 10 Ilost; was walking

21 She has forgotten my address. 2 I have made a mistake. 3 You have not shut the door.
4 Alan has worked very hard. 5 I have not heard from Mary. 6 John has not learnt anything. 7 I have broken a cup. 8 We have bought a new car. 9 The rain has stopped. 10 I have not seen a newspaper today.

## page 59

31 Have we paid? 2 Has Tim phoned?
3 Have you heard the news? 4 Have the dogs come back? 5 What has Barbara told the police? 6 Why have Andy and Sarah brought the children? 7 What have you said to Mike? 8 Why has everybody stopped talking? 9 Have you seen Martin anywhere? 10 Who has taken my coat? 11 What has happened? 12 Where has my brother gone? 13 Why has Peter closed the window? 14 Has Judith passed her exam? 15 Has the postman come?

4 Have you seen a lady without me? No, sorry, I haven't seen your ball. OR No, I haven't seen your ball, sorry.

## page 60

11 probably not 2 yes 3 don't know 4 yes 5 DON't KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 DON't KNOW 9 DON'T KNOW 10 NO

21 never travelled 2 studied 3 has lost 4 met 5 've bought 6 left 7 've told 8 've made 9 've forgotten 10 built

## page 61

31 has sent 2 have bought 3 have cut 4 has stopped 5 has given 6 have sold 7 have eaten 8 have found 9 have passed 10 have broken

41 ... because she has lost her keys. 2 ... 'Yes, his girlfriend has left him.' 3 ... 'Sorry. I know him, but I have forgotten his name.' 4 ... 'No, I've seen it.' 5 ... 'I think she's gone to Ireland.' 6 ... 'Sorry, I've lent it to Maria.' 7 Luis has found a new job. He's working in a bank now.
8 ... 'We can't. It's closed.' 9 ... 'Yes, she's changed her hair-style.'

## page 62

11 a few days ago, last week, then, yesterday, when, in 1990
$21 \times 2 \times 3 \downarrow 4 \times 5 \times 6 \times 71$ $8 \times 9 \downarrow 10 \times 11 \times 12$ ل $13 \times 14 \times 15$ ノ $16 \times$

31 Have you ever written a poem?
2 I have never climbed a mountain.
3 Has Charles spoken to you today?
4 Clara hasn't told me her new address.
5 Have you ever lost your memory?
6 We haven't played football this year.
7 Alex has never written to me.
8 Have you seen Henry this week?
9 My father has never driven a car.
10 Has the cat had anything to eat today?
11 Have you finished those letters?
12 I haven't paid for the lessons this month.
13 Sally has had a baby.
14 Lucy hasn't phoned today.
15 Has Corinne come back from India?
16 It has stopped raining.
17 Has the postman come this morning?
18 We have eaten everything in the house.

## page 63

41 Joe has changed his job twice this year.
2 How often has she asked you for money?
3 I have often tried to stop smoking.
4 Tom has phoned me six times this week.
5 My father has met the Prime Minister twice.
6 The police have questioned Annie more than once.
7 I have only played rugby once in my life.
8 My brother has often helped me in my work.
9 Nobody has ever understood her.
10 I have never wanted to go to the moon.

51 Have you ever been 2 have never read has won 4 won 5 never went 6 this year stayed 8 yesterday 9 have never seen 10 did John phone

11 have already paid. 2 has already left. 3 has already got up. 4 have already cooked chicken. 5 has already finished.

21 Has my sister phoned yet?
2 the postman hasn't come yet.
3 Bill hasn't found a job yet.
4 Have you finished that book yet?
I haven't started work yet.
Have you had supper yet?

31 I have just looked at the floor.
2 I have just thought about my home.
3 I have just moved my feet.
4 I have just put my hand on my head.
41 She has already written three letters.
2 She has just telephoned her mother.
3 She has already cleaned the kitchen.
4 She hasn't read the newspaper yet.
She has just made some toast.
She hasn't listened to the radio yet.

## page 65

11 for 2 since 3 since 4 for 5 since 6 since 7 for 8 for 9 since 10 since for 12 since

41 How long have you known Mike?
How long have you been a student?
How long has your brother been a doctor?
How long has Andrew had that dog?
How long have David and Elizabeth been together?

## page 66

11 Mary has been painting the house for four days.
2 We have been driving for four hours.
3 Anna has been working at Smiths since January.
4 Joseph has been building boats for 20 years.
5 We've been waiting for the bus since 8.30.
6 Prices have been going up since last year.
7 We've been camping since July 20th.
8 My father has been teaching for 40 years.
9 It's been snowing for 12 hours.
10 The team has/have been training together for three months.

## page 67

$31 ノ 2 \times 3 ノ 4 \times 5 \downarrow 6 \times 7 \times 8 \downarrow$ $9 \times 10$ /

41 She has been playing the piano. 2 He has been playing football. 3 She has been teaching. 4 He has been writing letters. 5 She has been swimming.

## page 68

11 had worked 2 had not rained. 3 had happened? 4 had seen 5 had not got 6 had they been? 7 had paid 8 had not done

21 understood; had got 2 didn't play; had hurt 3 had looked; started 4 had never travelled; went 5 arrived; had already closed 6 didn't have; had paid

## page 69

31 got; had eaten 2 met; had been
3 started; remembered; had not closed 4 found; had not opened 5 had already told; bought

41 When George had eaten all the chocolate biscuits, he started eating the lemon ones.
2 When I had turned off the lights in the office, I locked the door and left.
3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper when she had read it.
4 Mark had a long hot shower when he had done his exercises.
5 When Barry had phoned his mother with the good news, he went to bed.

## page 70

11 Have all those people gone home?
2 Peter hasn't told us everything.
3 Has the postman been?
4 Has Pat spoken to Robert?
5 Tim and Angela haven't bought a house.
6 Has Emma's boyfriend forgotten her birthday?
7 Has Monica been working in London all this week?
8 I haven't phoned Joseph.
9 Have Robert and Sally moved to Ireland?
10 We haven't been working all day.

21 yes 2 We don't know 3 yes 4 we don't know
5 We don't know 6 yes 7 no 8 yes
9 WE DON't KNOW 10 yes

31 Why has everybody already gone home?
2 How long has Anna been learning Chinese?
3 Why did George close the door?
4 Where have Sue and Jeanne gone on holiday?
5 When did the President visit Russia?
6 How long has Jan's father been travelling in Wales?
7 What has happened?
8 How long has Joe been working in Spain?
9 Where did Mary study medicine?
10 Who has taken my/your bicycle?

## page 71

41 saw; knew; had met 2 did not have; had bought 3 had already started; arrived.
4 broke; had forgotten 5 met
6 forgot; had said. 7 had gone 8 had finished; went 9 found; had bought 10 closed; had left

51 had 2 spent 3 lost 4 did not pass 5 happened 6 has been 7 has changed 8 have bought 9 has opened 10 have passed

61 swept 2 made 3 polished 4 washed 5 ironed 6 washed up 7 put 8 tidied 9 did 10 Have you swept 11 Have you made 12 Have you polished 13 Have you washed 14 ironed 15 Have you washed up 16 put 17 Have you tidied 18 haven't done

## page 72

1 broken, brought, come, drunk, eaten, forgotten, given, left, made, stood, stayed, stopped, taken, thought, tried

21 began 2 broken 3 come 4 knew
5 drunk 6 ate 7 fell 8 forgotten
9 given 10 taken

31 We've known; for 2 l've been working 3 has gone; did she leave? 4 has already lost; lost 5 Have you ever driven 6 has never had 7 Have you seen 8 started; eight weeks ago 9 l've been; for 10 have you known

41 did (Mike) lose 2 has been eating
3 has just had 4 has been snowing
5 studied 6 have just passed
7 have you known 8 Have (you ever) written
9 lost 10 have not started

## page 74

11 to be 2 be 3 pass 4 to get 5 be 6 to speak

21 likes 2 may 3 must 4 works 5 should 6 seems 7 might 8 wants

31 Can he ski? 2 Can he play poker?
3 She mustn't sing. 4 He may not go this week.
5 She can't visit us on Sunday.

## page 75

11 must write 2 must hurry 3 must stop 4 must pay 5 must study 6 must speak 7 must go

21 ... I must phone her tonight.
2 ... I must go back and get it.
3 ... My mother made it. You must have a piece.
4 ... You must see it. It's a cinema classic.
$5 \ldots$... must get up early.
6 ... You must give me your phone number.
7 ... We must go for a walk this weekend.
31 Must I pay any money? 2 Must I come to this room? 3 Must I write in ink? 4 Must I sit in my usual place? 5 Must I answer every question?
6 Must I work without a dictionary?
7 Must I stay if I finish early?

## page 76

11 has to wear 2 have to read 3 has to like 4 have to have 5 has to be 6 have to do 7 has to have 8 has to know 9 have to know 10 has to practise

21 ... 'Do we have to finish it today?' 2 ...'Do I/ we have to stay until the end?' 3 ...'Do they have to speak Spanish?' 4 ... 'Do I have to tell you now?' 5 ... 'So do I have to babysit?' 6 ... 'Do I have to pay it all now?' 7 ... 'Does he have to travel a lot?'

## page 77

11 You mustn't wash 2 You mustn't play
3 You mustn't let 4 You mustn't smoke
5 You mustn't play 6 You mustn't make

21 You don't have to make breakfast for me; l'll just have coffee. 2 You don't have to make lunch for me; l'll have lunch in the canteen. 3 You don't have to drive me to the station; I can walk. 4 You don't have to give me your newspaper; I'll buy The Times at the station. 5 You don't have to post those letters; Cathy's going to the post office. 6 You don't have to speak French; everybody here understands English.

31 mustn't 2 don't have to 3 mustn't
4 don't have to 5 don't have to 6 mustn't 7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to 10 mustn't 11 mustn't 12 don't have to

## page 78

11 He didn't have to learn Russian. 2 He had to learn maths. 3 He didn't have to learn music. 4 He had to play football. 5 He didn't have to write poems. 6 He had to write stories.

21 Did Adam have to pay for his lessons? 2 Did Tina have to take an exam last year? 3 Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train? 4 Did you have to show your passport at the airport? 5 Did the children have to walk home?
6 Did Peter have to cook supper?

31 'll have to get 2 won't have to go 3 Will (you) have to learn 4 'Il have to play 5 'Il have to ask 6 won't have to work 7 Will (she) have to get 8 'Il have to tell

## page 79

11 should keep 2 should learn 3 shouldn't believe 4 should eat 5 shouldn't smoke 6 should tell 7 shouldn't play 8 shouldn't read 9 shouldn't drive 10 should(n't) (always) say

21 'What time should I arrive?' 2 Who should I phone 3 'What should I wear?' 4 'Where should I sit?' 5 Where should I put 6 What time should I wake

31 must 2 should/must 3 should 4 must 5 must 6 must 7 should

41 might find 2 might send 3 might fall
4 might make 5 might buy
51 might not finish 2 might miss
3 might give 4 might not believe
5 might not pass 6 might not know
7 might be 8 might have to 9 might not have 10 might not

## page 84

11 Can I have a glass of water (, please)?
2 Can I use your pencil (, please)?
3 Can I have some more coffee (, please)?
4 Can I put my coat here (, please)?
5 Can I have some bread (, please)?
6 Can I look at those photos (, please)?
21 Could I use your calculator, please?
2 Could I leave early today, please?
3 Could I take your photo, please?
4 Could I borrow your newspaper, please?
5 Could I turn on the TV, please?
6 Could I open a window, please?
31 The children can play in the garden.
2 Tell the boys that they can eat the cake in the kitchen.
3 If you're cold, you can turn on the heating.
4 If you're bored, you can watch television.
5 Only teachers can park in this car park.

## page 85

41 You can't smoke here. 2 You can't take photos here. 3 You can't cycle here.
4 You can't use mobile phones here.
51 Can I make a cup of tea for you / make you a cup of tea? 2 Can 1 help you? 3 Can I drive you to the station? 4 Can I get some aspirins for you / get you some aspirins?

61 may not talk 2 may not leave 3 may use 4 may take 5 may leave 6 may use 7 may do

## page 86

11 pass 2 clean 3 tell 4 drive 5 hold

6 babysit 7 lend 8 put 9 speak/drive 10 wait

31 may not 2 can't 3 may not 4 can't 5 can't 6 may not 7 may not 8 may not 9 can't 10 may not

21 Can you open the door?
2 Could you give me an envelope?
3 Can you pass me the sugar?
4 Could you watch my children for a minute?
5 Could you tell me the time?
6 Could you possibly change some dollars for me?
7 Can you wait outside?
8 Could you possibly translate this letter for me?
9 Can you come back tomorrow?
10 Could you say it in English?
3 'Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?'

## page 87

11 What shall I buy for Sandra's birthday?
2 When shall I phone you? 3 Shall l pay now?
4 Shall I clean the bathroom? 5 How many tickets shall I buy? 6 Where shall I leave the car? 7 What time shall I come this evening?
8 Shall Ishut the windows? 9 When shall I go shopping? 10 Shall I get your coat?

21 Shall we go out this evening? 2 Shall we have a game of cards? 3 How shall we travel to London? 4 What shall we do at the weekend? 5 Where shall we go on holiday? 6 Shall we look for a hotel? 7 What time shall we meet Peter? 8 How much bread shall we buy? 9 Shall we have a party? 10 When shall we have the next meeting?

31 Shall I post your letters? 2 Shall I do your shopping? 3 Shall Imake your bed? 4 Shall I read to you? 5 Shall I drive you to the station? 6 Shall I make you a cup of tea? 7 Shall I clean your car? 8 Shall I phone your secretary? 9 Shall I cut your hair? 10 Shall Ibring you an aspirin?

## page 88

11 I'd like a black T-shirt, please. 2 Would you like an aspirin? 3 Would you like the newspaper? 4 l'd like an ice cream, please.
5 Would you like some more toast?
6 l'd like a receipt, please.

31 Would 2 Yes, please. 3 like 4 Would 5 'd like 6 Yes, I do. 7 would like 8 don't 9 wouldn't 10 'd like.

11 Most people used to travel on foot or on horses.
2 Most people didn't use to go to school.
3 Most people didn't use to learn to read.
4 Most people used to cook on wood fires.
5 Most people didn't use to live very long.
6 Most people used to work very long hours.

21 Emily used to study German. Now she studies French. 2 Paul used to live in London. Now he lives in Glasgow. 3 Grace used to read a lot. Now she watches TV. 4 Dan used to be a driver. Now he's a hairdresser. 5 Alice used to drink coffee. Now she drinks tea. 6 Peter used to have lots of girlfriends. Now he's married.

31 Did you use to have dark hair? 2 Did you use to play football? 3 Where did you use to work?
4 Did you use to enjoy your work?
5 Did you use to go to a lot of parties?

## page 90

11 Can he swim?
2 Must she go immediately?
3 but he may not go this week.
4 She doesn't have to work on Thursday evening.
5 Can he play hockey?
6 Should she see the secretary today?
7 She couldn't read when she was three.
8 Would he like it now?
9 but we might not take the children.
10 I must not go to sleep.
21 I will be able to speak French 2 Everybody had to fill in a big form 3 Everybody will have to fill in a big form 4 Will you be able to play the guitar 5 Did you have to wear a tie 6 John couldn't read very well 7 We won't be able to buy a car 8 I had to see the doctor 9 Everybody will be able to say what they think 10 couldn't sing; won't be able to sing

31 ... You should make her a cup of tea.
2 ... You should take more exercise.
3 ... You should tell her you love her.
4 ... You should give her a saucer of milk.
5 ... You should change your shampoo.
6 ... You shouldn't go to bed so late.
7 ... You shouldn't tell her.
8 ... You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets.
9 ... You should practise your service.
10 ... You should buy a new one.
11 ... You should buy some new clothes.
12 ... You should study grammar.

## page 91

4 (possible answers)
1 Could I have a cup of coffee? 2 May I take a photograph of you? 3 Could you close the door, please, John? 4 Could you possibly help me?
5 Can you give me that newspaper, please?
6 Could you clean my bicycle, please? 7 Could I possibly borrow some money from you? 8 Can 1 use your phone? 9 Could you hold this, please? 10 Could you wash all my clothes before tomorrow, please?
(Other answers are possible.)
51 With a scanner you can make copies.
2 With a freezer you can keep food very cold.
3 With a washing machine you can wash clothes.
4 With a fridge you can keep food cool.
5 With a mobile phone you can make phone calls.
6 With a dishwasher you can wash plates, cups etc.
7 With a camera you can take photos.
61 She might be a pilot. 2 He might be a businessman. 3 She might be an opera singer. 4 He might be a politician. 5 She might be a lawyer. 6 He might be a chef. 7 She might be a gardener.

## page 92

$11 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \checkmark 5 \Omega 6 \times 7 \Omega 8 \downarrow$ $9 \times 10 \times$

21 must 2 shouldn't 3 must not 4 should 5 don't have to 6 have to 7 don't have to 8 may not 9 can't 10 should

31 You must phone Martin tonight. 2 Ann might be here this evening. 3 You don't have to wait. 4 People shouldn't watch TV all the time. 5 Shall lopen a window? 6 People should cooperate. 7 John used to smoke. 8 It may rain. 9 Alan can speak Spanish. 10 Can you help me?

41 can; can't 2 must 3 must
4 may; can; can't

## page 94

$1 \quad 1 \mathrm{~B} 2 \mathrm{E} 3 \mathrm{H} 4 \mathrm{C} 5 \mathrm{~F} 6 \mathrm{G} 7 \mathrm{D}$

21 is spoken 2 studied 3 spent 4 was broken 5 are made 6 was written 7 will be opened 8 was driving; was stopped 9 was built 10 had

## page 95

11 is 2 is 3 am 4 Are 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 Are

21 is written 2 are watched 3 are sold 4 is known 5 is pronounced 6 is spoken 7 is played 8 are cleaned
$3 \quad 1$ is not spelt; is it spelt? 2 is not seen; is it seen? 3 is not pronounced; is it pronounced? 4 are not found; are they found? 5 is not paid; is she paid?

## page 96

11 will be opened 2 will be spoken 3 will be finished 4 will be cleaned 5 will be sent

21 won't be taken; will they be taken 2 won't be built; will it be built? 3 won't be spoken; will be spoken?
page 97
11 was 2 were 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was

21 were taken 2 were left 3 was cleaned 4 were met 5 wastold 6 was sent

31 was not educated; was he educated?
2 were not posted; were they posted?
3 was not cooked; was it cooked?
4 was not made; was it made?
5 was not paid; was it paid?

3 (possible answers)
Arriving passengers are being met. Boarding passes are being printed. Cars are being parked. Departures are being announced. Passports are being checked. Reservations are being made. Tickets are being sold.

## page 98

11 it's being cleaned. 2 she's being interviewed 3 My watch is being repaired. 4 I'm being sent 5 my hair is being cut. 6 we are being followed 7 The engine is being repaired. 8 It's being rebuilt. 9 he is being watched 10 it is being painted.

21 Bills are being paid. 2 Coffee is being made. 3 Drinks are being served. 4 Food is being prepared. 5 Baggage is being brought down. 6 Money is being changed. 7 New guests are being welcomed. 8 Reservations are being taken. 9 Phones are being answered. 10 Rooms are being cleaned.

## page 99

11 has been arrested 2 has been bought
3 has been killed 4 have been found
5 has been chosen 6 has been closed.
7 has been stolen. 8 have been asked
9 have been lost. 10 has been invited

21 It's never been ridden. 2 It's never been worn. 3 It's never been opened.
4 It's never been used. 5 It's never been played.

## page 100

$1 \quad 1$ is made 2 were killed 3 will be done 4 is spoken 5 was made 6 were examined 7 is cleaned 8 will be informed 9 will be opened 10 are found

2 (possible answers)
Baggage is not being brought down. Bills are not being paid. Coffee is not being made. Drinks are not being served. Food is not being prepared. Money is not being changed. New guests are not being welcomed. Reservations are not being taken. Rooms are not being cleaned. Telephones are not being answered.

## page 101

41 are being followed. 2 has been stolen.
3 is being repaired. 4 have been moved.
5 have been sent 6 are (you) being interviewed? 7 have/has been arrested 8 have/has not been arrested; are being watched. 9 is being rebuilt. 10 has been asked

51 are covered 2 are spent 3 walk
4 do not eat 5 are left 6 sleep 7 are made 8 is not known 9 live 10 are cut down

## page 102

11 posted 2 weren't paid 3 speaks
4 isn't pronounced 5 will be built 6 is being cleaned 7 have been invited 8 is made 9 is spoken 10 broke
$21 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \curvearrowright 5 \curvearrowright 6 \times$
$7 \times 8$ ノ $9 \times 10$

31 has been moved. 2 will be opened
3 has been taken. 4 is being washed.
5 will be told 6 has been stolen.
7 was made 8 is spoken 9 are cleaned
10 have been asked 11 was killed.
12 will be done 13 will (the match) be played
14 have been stolen 15 were sent
16 is made 17 was hit; was broken
18 is being translated 19 has been found
20 will be finished

## page 104

11 Are you tired?
2 Is he at home?
3 Must you go now?
4 Can they speak Spanish?
5 Will Derek be here tomorrow?
6 Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
7 Has she forgotten her keys?
8 is your sister playing tennis?
9 Would you like some coffee?
10 Has your secretary gone home?

21 Do you drink coffee at bedtime?
2 Do you like classical music?
3 Do you know my friend Andrew?
4 Did you go skiing last winter?
5 Do you work in London?
6 Do you live in a flat or a house?
7 Do you watch a lot of TV?
8 Did you remember to buy bread?
9 Did you see Barbara last weekend?
10 Do you play tennis?

## page 105

31 Does she speak Arabic?
2 Does she know Mr Peters?
3 Does she work at home?
4 Did she live in Birmingham?
5 Did she go home last week?
6 Does she play the piano?
7 Does she ride horses?
8 Does she like working with children?
9 Did she travel a lot last year?
10 Does she drive to work?

41 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 A 8 C

51 Did the police catch the drug dealers?
2 Have Lucy and Felicia come back from holiday?
3 When do English children start school?
4 What is that man doing in the garden? or What is that man in the garden doing?
5 Are the buses running next week?
6 Has the film started?
7 Has John's letter arrived yet?
8 Is Alicia working today?
9 Does Paul know your girlfriend?
10 Why is Kate crying?

## page 106

11 'Why are you here?' 2 'Where have you been today?' 3 'When are you going to Glasgow?' 4 'How do you like Scotland?' 5 'How did you come here?' 6 'Why did you come by car?' 7 'Where do you live?' 8 'When are you leaving?' 9 'When will we see you again?'

21 How far is 2 How tall is 3 How fast was
4 How often do you 5 How big is
6 How long did you 7 How well do you

31 C What colour 2 D What sort/kind of 3 B What size 4 F What colour 5 H What sort/kind of 6 E What time 7 G What size

41 'What's your new girlfriend like?'
2 'What are you new neighbours like?'
3 'What's your new car like?'
4 'What's your new house like?'
5 'What's your new job like?'
6 'What's your new school like?'

## page 108

11 plays 2 made 3 did she marry? 4 does this word mean? 5 did you say? 6 told

21 How many people came to her party?
2 Which train did Peter catch?
3 Which bus goes to the station?
4 How many languages does Douglas speak?
5 What sort of music does Alice like?
6 What sort of music keeps the baby quiet?
31 Alice. 2 Who loves Ann? Pete. 3 Who does Ann love? Joe. 4 Who loves Alice? Fred. 5 Who does Joe love? Mary. 6 Who does Pete love? Ann. 7 Who loves Pete? Nobody/No one.

## page 109

51 (a) What did Melissa buy? (b) Who bought a coat?
2 (a) What did the bus hit? (b) What hit that tree?
3 (a) Who lost the office keys? (b) What did Rose lose?
4 (a) What does Paul teach? (b) Who teaches Arabic?
5 (a) Who hates computers? (b) What does Mike hate?

61 Who first reached the North Pole? 2 Who wrote War and Peace? 3 Who built the Great Wall of China? 4 Who painted Sunflowers?

## page 110

11 Is your sister Caroline talking to the police?
2 Do all the people here understand Spanish?
3 Did most of the football team play well?
4 Is the man at the table in the corner asleep?

21 How much does a ticket for Saturday's concert cost? 2 What time does the film about skiing in New Zealand start? 3 What does the second word in the first sentence mean? 4 Why does the man in the flat downstairs want to change his job?

31 Why are all those people laughing? 2 What is that big black dog eating? 3 Is everybody in your family going to Scotland for Christmas?
4 What game are those children playing?
5 Where are Lola and her friends studying?
6 Are those people over there speaking French?

## page 111

11 to 2 from 3 about 4 about 5 in 6 from 7 with 8 for 9 to 10 with 11 to 12 on

21 'What are you thinking about?' 2 'Who does Alice work for?' 3 'Who/What were you talking about?' 4 'What are you interested in?' 5 'What are you looking at?' 6 'Who did you stay with?' 7 'Who do you work with?' 8 'What did you spend the money on?' 9 'What was the film about?' 10 'Where can I get tickets from?'

31 What 2 Who 3 What 4 Who 5 Who 6 What 7 to 8 for 9 Where 10 What 11 to 12 for

## page 112

11 Milk's not red. / Milk isn't red. 2 The children aren't at home. 3 Max hasn't been to Egypt. 4 You mustn't give this letter / it to her mother. 5 I won't be in the office tomorrow. 6 I couldn't swim when I was two years old. 7 We weren't in Birmingham yesterday. 8 I'm not English.

## page 113

41 Shakespeare didn't live in New York.
2 Phone books don't tell you about words.
3 The earth doesn't go round the moon.
4 Most Algerians don't speak Russian.
5 Cookers don't keep food cold.
6 The Second World War didn't end in 1955.
7 John doesn't know my sister.

61 don't 2 wasn't 3 doesn't 4 haven't
5 aren't 6 won't 7 didn't/couldn't
8 didn't/couldn't 9 hasn't 10 'm not

## page 114

11 not 2 not 3 no 4 not 5 no 6 not
7 not 8 Not 9 no 10 not

21 There are no newspapers. 2 There's no time.
3 There were no letters. 4 I saw no light.
5 He gave no answer.

## page 115

11 Nobody lives in that house. 2 l'll never understand my dog. 3 The children told me nothing. 4 I have no money. 5 I could hardly see the road.

21 I saw nobody. 2 We had no trouble.
3 My parents never go out. 4 I looked for the dog, but it was nowhere in the house.
5 I ate nothing yesterday. 6 It hardly rained for three months. 7 Nobody spoke.

31 My grandmother never drives fast.
2 Andrew doesn't play the guitar.
3 When she talked, I understood nothing.
4 I don't like Ann's new shoes.
5 Nothing happened this morning.
6 There's nowhere to sit down in the station.
7 I hardly watch TV.
8 Nobody wants to play tennis.

## page 116

11 Who cooked dinner? 2 What did Julia cook?
3 What hit Joe? 4 Who did the ball hit?
5 What does Sarah play? 6 Who plays the guitar? 7 How many languages does Beth speak? 8 Who speaks eight languages? 9 Who ate Mum's breakfast? 10 What did Dad eat?
21 Who did you go with? 2 Who are you writing to? 3 Who did you buy it for? 4 Who is the letter from? 5 What were you talking about? 6 What did you carry it in? 7 How much did you sell your car for? 8 What did she hit him with? 9 Who did you send the flowers to? 10 Where does she come from?

31 Why are all those people looking at me?
2 Did Anna and Oscar have lunch together yesterday? 3 Does that man in the dark coat work for the government? $4 \mathrm{Is} /$ Are the football team playing in Scotland next Saturday?
5 What are those children doing in the garden?
6 What does the first word in this sentence mean?
7 Are Tom and his sister staying at your house this week? 8 When are Emma's teacher and her class going to Paris? 9 What did that strange woman say to you? 10 When did/will Mary and Phil get married?

## page 117

41 My father never eats meat. 2 Peter doesn't like jazz. 3 There's nothing to do in this town. 41 understood nothing. 5 Sally doesn't play the piano. 61 hardly go to the cinema. 7 Nothing happened. 8 Nobody wants to talk to you. 9 l've got no money. 10 I haven't got enough money.

61 Adult grizzly bears can't climb trees. 3 Tigers don't live in Africa. 4 The first people didn't hunt dinosaurs. 5 Spiders aren't insects. 6 Cats can't see when there is no light.

## page 118

1 live 2 Are all your friends coming...
3 Correct. 4 Do you play 5 are you
6 Correct. 7 Correct. 8 can 19 toldyou
10 phone 11 don't speak 12 anywhere 13 not 14 Correct. 15 What are you looking at? 16 Correct. 17 anything 18 not 19 helped 20 not

21 Who 2 Why 3 Where 4 How old 5 What colour 6 How tall 7 What sort/kind of 8 How fast 9 What size 10 What ... like
$31 \mathrm{Kelly} /$ She isn't at work. 2 I haven't forgotten your face. 3 Peter/He doesn't drive taxis. 4 We didn't go to Portugal. 5 You mustn't use that one. 6 Henry/He doesn't eat meat.
7 These people / They don't play soccer.
8 Luke/He didn't break his leg. 9 I won't be at home in the afternoon. 10 Elisabeth/She doesn't read books.

41 Have she and her sisters been to America?
2 Do she and her sisters like dancing?
3 Can she and her sisters swim?
4 Will she and her sisters be here tomorrow?
5 Did she and her sisters go to the party yesterday?
6 Have she and her sisters ever studied history?
7 Can she and her sisters drive?
8 Did she and her sisters phone last night?
9 Were she and her sisters talking to Philip when you saw them?
10 Will she and her sisters get married soon?

## page 120

$1 \quad 1$ - 2 to $3-4-5$-; to 6 -; to
7 to 8 to

21 to learn 2 help 3 see 4 buy 5 to hear 6 to go 7 send 8 stop

31 not to have 2 not to break 3 not to go to sleep 4 not to make 5 not to have 6 not to talk 7 not to wake 8 not to tell 9 not to see 10 not to play

## page 121

11 to drive 2 to catch 3 to ask for 4 to wait for 5 to meet 6 to buy 7 to finish 8 to learn 9 to hear 10 to relax.

21 to clean 2 to buy 3 to get
4 to open 5 to tell 6 to earn 7 to go
8 to wish 9 to make 10 to get up

31 E to cut 2 F to see 3 B to buy 4 C to open 5 D to dry

## page 122

11 refuse to 2 start to 3 promise to 4 expect to 5 try to 6 decide to 7 want to 8 learn to 9 plan to 10 need to 11 forget to 12 seem to 13 begin to 14 continue to 15 prefer to

## page 123

21 needs to 2 agreed to 3 decided to 4 tried to 5 learnt to 6 promised to 7 forgot to 8 refused to 9 want to 10 started to 11 prefers to 12 continued to 13 hopes to 14 seemed to 15 began to

11 Sarah would like John to cook (tonight).
2 The policeman wants the man to move his car.
3 Helen's mother wants her to wash her face.
4 Bill would like Andy to help him.
5 Roger would like Karen to lend him some money.
6 Jessie wants Peter to be quiet for a minute.
7 David would like Alice to have dinner with him.
8 Mike would like the government to put more money into schools.
9 Lucy wants Bill to stop playing that terrible music.
10 Mary would like Gordon to make the bed for once.

21 Her boss wants her to work harder.
2 Her little brother wants her to buy him a bicycle.
3 Her dog wants her to take him for a walk.
4 Her boyfriend wants her to go to America with him.
5 Her friend Martha wants her to lend her a blue dress.
6 Her guitar teacher wants her to buy a better guitar.
7 Her mother wants her to spend every weekend at home.
8 Her sister wants her to go to Russia with her.
9 The people downstairs want her to stop playing loud music at night.
10 Her father wants her to study economics.

## page 125

31 Ididn't tell Alan to go home. 2 I asked Fred to be quiet. 3 Do you expect her to phone? 4 I helped Joe to carry the books. 5 The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence. 6 Ann helped me to finish the work. 7 I asked the shop assistant to help me. 8 I need you to stay with me. 9 l expect her to pass her exam. 101 need some people to help with the party.

41 His father wanted him to get rich.
2 His sister Isabel wanted him to be good at sport.
3 His brother Andy wanted him to go to university.
4 His sister Nicole didn't want him to go to university. 5 His brother Henry wanted him to be a racing driver. 6 His grandmother wanted him to be a doctor. 7 His friend Anthony wanted him to have an easy life. 8 His maths teacher wanted him to study maths. 9 His literature teacher wanted him to study literature. 10 His music teacher didn't want him to study music.

11 It wasn't necessary to phone John.
2 It's impossible to understand that woman.
3 It's nice to stay in bed late on Sundays.
4 It's sometimes difficult to say ' No '.
5 It was easy to make our children happy.
6 It's sometimes dangerous to tell the truth.
7 It's expensive to eat out in restaurants.
8 It's almost impossible to learn a foreign language perfectly.
9 It's nice to travel.
10 It was good to visit my parents.
21 It was nice to have 2 It was interesting to see 3 it was a bit hard to understand 4 It was very easy to make 5 It was expensive to eat 6 it was dangerous to swim 7 it was impossible to be

## page 127

4 (our answers)
1 It's important to practise grammar.
2 It's important not to translate everything.
3 It's important to read a lot.
4 It's important to read things that interest you.
5 It's not important to have perfect pronunciation.
6 It's important to have good enough pronunciation.
7 It's important not to make too many mistakes.
8 It's not necessary to speak without mistakes.
9 It's important to practise listening to English.
10 It's important to know 3,000-5,000 words.
11 It's not necessary to know 50,000 words.
12 It's important to have a good English-English dictionary.
13 It's important to have a good bilingual dictionary.

## page 128

11 to meet 2 to see 3 sorry 4 afraid 5 to have 6 to find 7 surprised 8 pleased 9 to leave 10 happy

21 Eleanor's silly to listen to Mark. 2 Elizabeth was wrong to take the train without a ticket. 3 I was stupid to sit on my glasses. 4 I was wrong to wash a white shirt with a red one. 5 You're silly to believe Luke. 6 You're right to eat a good breakfast. 7 You were crazy to lend money to Chris. 8 I was stupid to think the new Prime Minister was a good man. 9 Rebecca was wrong to tell Peter she loved him. 10 I was right to stay in bed until lunchtime.

## page 129

11 is old enough to work 2 isn't old enough to leave 3 isn't old enough to leave 4 is old enough to leave 5 isn't old enough to 6 is old enough to change 7 is old enough to drive

21 He's not tall enough to play basketball.
2 She's not old enough to vote. 3 I'm not strong enough to open this bottle. 4 My French is good enough to read a newspaper. 5 He isn't old enough to go out by himself. 6 He's intelligent enough to do well at university.

31 Helen's too ill to work. 2 My grandfather's too old to travel. 3 I'm too bored to listen any longer. 4 Cara's too hot to play tennis. 5 I'm too hungry to work. 6 I'm too tired to drive. 7 I was too afraid to move. 8 Molly was too ill last week to go to school. OR ... too ill to go to school last week. 9 Our dog's too fat to run. 10 My mother's too deaf to understand what people say.

## page 130

11 homework to do. 2 letters to post? 3 film to watch 4 dress to wear 5 shopping to do 6 friend to see

21 anything to wear. 2 somewhere to work. 3 nothing to do 4 nobody/no one to teach. 5 something to finish. 6 nowhere to go. 7 somebody/someone to love. 8 anywhere to stay 9 somebody/someone/anybody/anyone to help 10 something to carry.

## page 131

11 Skiing; reading. 2 Flying; going by train. 3 Eating; washing. 4 Speaking; writing or Writing; speaking. 5 Understanding; listening. 6 Shopping; shaving. 7 Working; resting. 8 Smoking; driving.

42 NO CAMPING 3 NO SMOKING 4 NO CYCLING 5 NO FISHING

21 hearing 2 smoking 3 going 4 watching 5 washing 6 closing 7 working 8 getting 9 skiing 10 asking.

## page 133

31 Bob is quite good at running, but not very good at cycling. 2 Sue is not very good at drawing, but very good at running. 3 Mark is quite good at swimming, and very good at running. 4 Bob is bad at swimming, but quite good at singing. 5 Jane is very good at running, and quite good at cycling. 6 Mark is not very good at singing, but quite good at drawing. 7 Jane is not very good at drawing, but quite good at singing. 8 Sue is quite good at singing, and very good at swimming.

51 Ellie stayed awake by drinking lots of coffee.
2 Paul drank three glasses of water without stopping. 3 Charles woke us up by turning the TV on. 4 You can find out the meaning of a word by using a dictionary. 5 Mike paid for his new house without borrowing any money. 6 Helen lost her driving licence by driving too fast, too often. 7 Carl did all his homework without asking for any help. 8 Teresa cooks all her food without using any salt.

## page 134

11 taking 2 eating 3 shopping 4 driving 5 stopping 6 working

21 They've just finished playing tennis. 2 All that week, it kept raining. 3 It's just stopped snowing. 4 He's given up smoking. 5 He can't help thinking of/about Annie. 6 They're going shopping. 7 She's practising writing.

## page 135

31 washing 2 watching 3 working
4 playing 5 wearing 6 studying
7 watching 8 shopping 9 cooking; eating

## page 132

11 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 516 J 7 G
8 H 9 F

11 I was surprised to find a cat in my bed. 2 She was wrong to leave her job. 3 I've got no money to buy a car. 4 I was crazy to give Peter money. 5 We were glad to say goodbye to Aunt Emma. 6 I was sorry not to have time to phone you. 7 I was too tired to work. 8 Here are some letters to post. 9 I've got no time to wash the dishes. 10 I need something to drink.

21 D to learn 2 E to watch 3 F to stop
4 B to make 5 C to keep 6 H to pay 7 G to cut 8 J to impress 9 K to catch 10 I to look for

## page 137

41 sorry to say 2 unhappy to think 3 happy not to have 4 pleased to find 5 surprised to find 6 happy to be 7 pleased to see

51 They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane. 5 They want me to buy a motorbike.

## page 138

11 to work 2 to see 3 smoking. 4 driving 5 to buy 6 to talk 7 sending 8 talking. 9 to come 10 speaking.

21 Correct. 2 not to have 3 to learn
4 Correct. 5 bytaking 6 smoking
7 Correct. 8 to go 9 Correct. 10 Correct.
11 you to pay 12 Correct. 13 to get
14 eating 15 changing 16 Correct.
17 to see 18 Correct. 19 not to forget
20 Correct.
31 Anna wants Beth to look after the children.
2 Joe wants Jack to lend him money.
3 Peter's mother wants him to clean his room.
4 Sam wants Joe to go shopping.
5 Tom would like Sarah to pass the newspaper.
6 Mike's parents would like him to study medicine.
7 The boss would like Emma to answer the phone.
8 Mary doesn't want Jack to look at her like that.
9 Harry doesn't want Jim to say anything to the police.
10 Maria's mother doesn't want her to fall in love with a pop singer.

11 get (some) money 2 got into 3 got (a long) letter 4 Get out 5 get wet. 6 get cold. 7 get off 8 get (really) hungry 9 get(ting) tired 10 gets dark

21 got burnt. 2 getting divorced. 3 got broken 4 get undressed 5 gets lost. 6 get stolen. 7 get dressed 8 get changed. 9 get invited 10 got married

## page 141

11 A laugh 2 C wait 3 B ask 4 E belony 5 J listen 6 H Look 7 G think 8 F talks 91 happened

21 believe in; belong to; happen to; laugh at; listen to; look at; talk about; think about; wait for
$3 \quad 1$ for 2 at 3 to 4 after 5 for 6 for 7 about 8 to 9 for 10 about 11 into 12 on 13 to 14 in 15 on $16-17$ in 18 out of 19 at 20 off

## page 142

11 wake/get 2 go 3 round. 4 on. 5 back 6 up! 7 lie 8 Go

21 up 2 down 3 back

## page 143

31 on 2 on 3 down 4 off 5 down 6 back 7 up 8 look 9 pick 10 give 11 let 12 fill 13 take 14 Break

4 1 Could you turn the TV down? Could you turn it down? 2 You can throw the potatoes away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take your glasses off? Why don't you take them off?
4 Please put that knife down. Please put it down.
5 Shall I fill your glass up? Shall I fill it up?
6 I'll switch the heating on. I'll switch it on.

11 Ilent my bicycle to Joe yesterday.
2 I often read Lucy stories.
3 Carol teaches maths to small children.
4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
5 Amanda often gives flowers to her mother.
6 Could you buy me a newspaper?
7 I found my parents a hotel room.
8 Pass Mr Andrews this paper.
9 Luke has written Joy a letter.
10 I want to get Peter a good watch.
21 Sally gave Fred a book. 2 Fred gave Annie flowers. 3 Annie gave Luke a picture. 4 Luke gave Mary a sweater. 5 Mary gave Joe a camera.

31 find 2 Give; give 3 buy

## page 145

11 has his tyres checked 2 has his oil changed 3 has his car repaired 4 has his shoes cleaned 5 has his gardening done 6 has his letters typed

21 She should have it repaired. 2 He should have them cleaned. 3 They should have it repaired. 4 He should have it cut. 5 They should have it serviced. 6 She should have them checked. 7 He should have it repaired. 8 He should have it checked.

## page 146

11 B 2 D 3 C

21 Turn 2 go 3 Turn 4 take 5 turn
31 Hurry up! 2 Be careful. 3 Help!
4 Have a good holiday. 5 Sleep well.
6 Don't forget 7 Wait for me! 8 Have some more 9 Follow me 10 Don't worry. 11 Come in; sit down; make yourself at home.

## page 147

11 Let's not go for a walk. 2 Let's play tennis.
3 Let's play cards. 4 Let's go swimming.
5 Let's not go swimming. 6 Let's go skiing.
7 Let's watch TV. 8 Let's go to France/Paris.

21 Athens. 2 to Copenhagen. 3 go to Vienna.
4 'Let's go to Prague.' 5 'Let's go to Warsaw.'
6 'Let's go to Moscow.' 7 'Let's go to Marrakesh.'
8 'Let's go to Istanbul.' 9 'Let's go to Bangkok.'
10 'Let's go to Beijing.' 11 'Let's go to Mexico
City.' 12 'Let's go to Rio.'

## page 148

11 up 2 round 3 fill 4 turn 5 on 6 Put 7 up 8 back. 9 Go 10 wake/get

21 Could you wash the cups up? Could you wash them up? 2 You can throw those papers away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take off your coat? Why don't you take it off? 4 You need to fill this form in. You need to fill it in. 5 Please bring back my bicycle. Please bring it back. 6 Let me fillyour glass up. Let me fill it up. 7 Please put that gun down. Please put it down. 8 I'll switch on the TV. I'll switch it on.
9 Can you cut the onions up? Can you cut them up? 10 Pick up your coat. Pick it up.

31 Alice sent $\in 500$ to her sister. 2 Sarah bought the children ice creams. 3 Let's send a postcard to Granny. 4 Ruth showed the others the photo. 5 I gave the secretary some flowers. 6 Can you find me John's address? 7 I found Aunt Patsy a hotel. 8 Take Mrs Lewis these papers. 9 l've given all the information to George. 10 I want to buy my sister a nice present.

## page 149

41 Come 2 worry. 3 Have 4 out! 5 Make 6 Help 7 Sleep 8 Follow 9 Have 10 forget

51 Pick 2 Hold 3 Put 4 Let 5 fetch 6 continue 7 throw 8 Get 9 Open 10 Get 11 Kneel 12 blow 13 Drink 14 remove 15 Telephone 16 Find

## page 150

11 A,B,D $2 E 3 A, D 4 A, C 5 C 6 A$
7 B,C 8 C, D 9 A,C 10 A,B,C,D

21 to 2 at 3 for 4 about 5 for 6 for 7 after 8 - 9 for 10 on 11 to 12 in 13 to 14 at 15 to 16 - 17 to 18 -; on 19 about 20 from

11 a 2 an 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a

21 an old friend 2 a big apple 3 an unhappy child 4 an early train 5 a rich uncle 6 an easy job 7 a hard exercise 8 a European language 9 a small book

41 an envelope 2 A calculator 3 a torch. 4 a hammer. 5 A knife 6 An alarm clock

## page 153

11 children PC; flower SC; love U; meat U; mountains PC; music U; nose SC; oil U; photos PC; piano SC; river SC; snow U; songs PC; table SC; windows PC
$21-2$ an $3-i-4-5-6$ a $7-$ 8 an 9 a 10 -;

31 cotton or wool 2 metal, plastic and glass (and perhaps leather) 3 brick, wood, metal and glass (and perhaps stone) 4 cotton or silk or wool 5 wood or metal or glass or plastic (or perhaps stone)

41 a 2 one 3 a 4 one 5 a 6 one

## page 154

11 the 2 the 3 an 4 a; a 5 the 6 a; the 7 the 8 the 9 The 10 a 11 the 12 the; the

21 Fa 2 D the 3 B the 4 C the 5 A a

## page 155

31 a 2 a 3 An 4 The 5 the 6 The 7 the 8 a 9 the 10 the 11 the

41 This is a mouse. It's the smallest animal in the group. 2 This is a monkey. It's the most intelligent animal in the group. 3 This is an eagle. It's the fastest bird in the group. 4 This is a parrot. It's the only blue and yellow bird in the group. 5 This is a pigeon. It's the smallest bird in the group. 6 This is a spider. It's the only creature with eight legs in the group. 7 This is an ant. It's the only creature with six legs in the group. 8 This is a snake. It's the only creature with no legs in the group. 9 This is a frog. It's the only green creature in the group.

11 He's a cook. 2 He's a builder. 3 She's a driver. 4 He's a teacher. 5 She's a photographer. 6 She's a dentist. 7 He 's a hairdresser. 8 She's a musician. 9 He's a shop assistant.

31 A bag is a container. 2 A hammer is a tool.
3 A piano is an instrument. 4 A bus is a vehicle.
5 A screwdriver is a tool. 6 A guitar is an instrument. 7 A box is a container.
8 A hotel is a building.

## page 157

11 a long neck. 2 big ears. 3 a loud voice.
4 a big beard. 5 dark hair.

2 A 1 a 2 - 3 a 4 -
B 1 a 2 a $3-4-5-6 a 7 a$

## page 158

21 Books 2 the books 3 English people
4 The flowers 5 Life 6 the words
7 The food 8 Water 9 the windows
31 drivers 2 money 3 understand; understand 4 think 5 think 6 things; things

## page 160

11 Spanish; Peru. 2 Uncle Eric; Lake Superior.
3 Oxford Street; London. 4 Napoleon 5 Kilimanjaro; Africa. 6 France; Switzerland OR Switzerland; France.

21 Himalayas 2 Denmark 3 Japanese 4 People's Republic of China 5 Trafalgar Square 6 Mediterranean 7 Ireland 8 United Kingdom 9 USA

## page 161

31 the 2 the 3 the $4-5$ the 6 the 7 - 8 -

41 - 2 - 3 the 4 the 5 - 6 the 7 8 the 9 the $10-11$ - 12 the $13-$ 14 - 15 the 16 - 17 - 18 the 19 the 20 the

11 lunch;Tuesday. 2 Easter. 3 next 4 winter. 5 Saturdays. 6 September 7 August $23^{\text {rd }}$. 8 1616. 9 Christmas. 10 last

21 bed 2 university 3 church 4 hospital 5 work; car 6 prison 7 foot 8 home 9 holiday. 10 school.

## page 163

31 G a radio 2 C a garden 3 F a blanket 4 D a hundred 5 E a million 6 A an American passport 7 J a tourist guide 8 H a stupid idea 91 a job

41 Patrick and I work in the same office.
2 We're going to the theatre tonight.
3 My room is at the top of the house.
4 Would you like to live in the country?
5 We usually go to the mountains at Christmas.
6 Joe always sits at the back of the class.
7 Suzie's office is on the right.
8 I would like to live near the sea.
9 Why are you driving in the middle of the road?
10 Please sign your name at the bottom of this paper.

## page 164

11 a 2 the; the 3 an 4 the 5 - 6 7 The 8 - 9 - 10 a 11 - 12 the 13 -;- 14 - 15 the 16 the 17 - 18 19 - 20 -;
$21 \times 2 \times 3 \times 4 \checkmark 5 \times 6 \times 7 \downarrow 8 \times$ $9 \downarrow 10 x$

3 COUNTABLE: diamond; holiday; price; photo; shop UNCOUNTABLE: Coffee; hair; snow; information; music

## page 165

$41-2-3-4$ a 5 a 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 a 10 - 11 a 12 a 13 the 14 the 15 the 16 a 17 The 18 the 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the 24 The 25 the

11 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 a 8 an 9 a 10 an

21 - 2 a $3-i-4-5-i-6$ a 7 8 a 9 a 10 -;

31 - 2 - 3 - 4 the 5 - 6 the; the 7 - 8 an 9 the 10 the 11 - 12 13 the 14 a; the $15-16-17$ a 18 -; - 19 -; 20 a

41 to Professor Anderson 2 Correct.
3 the Czech Republic 4 Correct. 5 Correct.
6 Correct. 7 I'll see you next Tuesday.
8 a passport 9 a doctor 10 Correct.

## page 168

1 these 2 This 3 These 4 These 5 this

21 those 2 those 3 that 4 Those 5 that
3 (possible answers)
This plate is blue. That plate is white. These glasses are green. Those glasses are red. These spoons are black. That spoon is silver. This saucer is blue. Those saucers are white. This bowl is green. That bowl is red.
(Other answers are possible.)

## page 169

41 I'm enjoying 2 will be 3 Those 4 was 5 that 6 this 7 this 8 was 9 that 10 this

51 that 2 that 3 This 4 those 5 this 6 these 7 This 8 That 9 this 10 those 11 this 12 that 13 these 14 those 15 that 16 these 17 this 18 those 19 this 20 those

## page 170

11 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 some 7 any 8 any 9 any

21 any more to drink. 2 any foreign languages. 3 any games 4 any sleep 5 any English newspapers

31 Could I have some coffee? 2 Would you like some bread? 3 Would you like some rice? 4 Could I have some tomatoes? 5 Would you like some more potatoes? 6 Could I have some more milk?

## page 171

41 E 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 F

51 buy any. 2 some tomorrow. 3 some (in front of) you. 4 want any. 5 any good 6 put some

61 wasn't 2 didn't do 3 didn't have 4 didn't ask 5 didn't find

## page 172

11 Nothing. 2 anywhere. 3 someone 4 anything 5 everywhere. 6 No one/Nobody 7 Nowhere 8 something. 9 Everyone/ Everybody 10 anybody 11 Everything 12 somewhere

21 anybody/anyone 2 nowhere
3 anything. 4 Nobody/No one 5 nothing.
6 everything
31 knows 2 happens 3 is 4 is 5 Has
6 agrees
$41 \times 2 \downarrow 3 \curvearrowright 4 \times 5 \times 6 \times 7 \downarrow 8 \times$ $9 \times 10 \times$

## page 173

11 much 2 much 3 many 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 many 8 many 9 much 10 many 11 many 12 much 13 many 14 much 15 much

21 How many symphonies did Beethoven write?
2 How many cents are there in a dollar?
3 How many kilometres are there in a mile?
4 How many states are there in the USA?
5 How much blood is there in a person's body?
6 How much air do we breathe every minute?
7 How many points do you get for a try in rugby union?
8 How much food does an elephant eat every day?

## page 174

11 have 2 are 3 has 4 a lot 5 work
6 Alot 7 need 8 is

21 plenty of food 2 plenty of time
3 plenty of patience 4 plenty of warm clothes
5 plenty of eggs 6 plenty of water
7 plenty of ideas

## page 175

11 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little
5 a few 6 a little 7 a few 8 a little
9 a little 10 a few

21 a little 2 little 3 few 4 a few 5 a few
6 few 7 few 8 A little

31 There was only a little room on the bus. or There wasn't much room on the bus.
2 Only a few people learn foreign languages perfectly. or Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly.
3 She only has a few friends. Or She doesn't have many friends.
4 We only get a little rain here in summer. or We don't get much rain here in summer.
5 This car only uses a little petrol. or This car doesn't use much petrol.
6 There are only a few flowers in the garden. or There aren't many flowers in the garden.
7 Our town only gets a few tourists. or Our town doesn't get many tourists.
8 We only have a little time to catch the train. of We don't have much time to catch the train.

## page 176

11 not enough food 2 not enough strings
3 not enough seats 4 not enough water
21 enough time 2 enough girls. 3 enough chairs. 4 enough work. 5 enough money 6 enough salt

31 not loud enough 2 not comfortable enough
3 not bright enough 4 not easy enough
5 not clear enough 6 not fresh enough
7 not deep enough

41 warm enough 2 early enough 3 enough beds 4 often enough 5 quiet enough 6 enough children 7 enough milk 8 enough help 9 sweet enough 10 young enough

## page 177

11 too old 2 too much trouble 3 too many problems 4 too much money 5 too ill 6 too much work 7 too hot 8 too many students 9 too many cars 10 too difficult

21 too low 2 too short 3 too light 4 too soft 5 not wide enough 6 not cheap enough 7 not wet enough 8 not thin enough

3 (possible answers)
1 too many (pairs of) socks 2 enough (pairs of) boots 3 too many pocket torches 4 not enough (tubes of) suncream 5 too many waterproof jackets 6 too many pairs of sunglasses 7 too much bread 8 too much cheese 9 not enough water 10 not enough oranges 11 not enough chocolate 12 enough soap 13 too many toothbrushes (Other answers are possible.)

## page 178

11 The films all start at 7 o'clock. 2 All our secretaries speak Arabic. 3 All the children went home. 4 These coats all cost the same. 5 Languages all have grammar. 6 All the people voted for the Radical Conservatives. 7 My friends all live in London. 8 All these houses need repairs. 9 Those shops all belong to the same family. 10 All children need love.

21 The offices all close at weekends. 2 The lessons will all start on Tuesday. 3 Those children can all swim. 4 Our windows are all dirty. 5 Sorry, the tickets have all gone.
6 We all went to New York for Christmas.
7 The shops will all be open tomorrow.
8 We all stopped for lunch at 12.30 .
9 These watches are all too expensive.
10 The lights have all gone out.

11 Every animal breathes air. 2 She's read every book in the library. 3 I paid every bill. 4 Every computer is working today. 5 Every language has verbs. 6 Every London train stops at Reading. 7 l've written to every customer. 8 Every glass is dirty. 9 Every child can be difficult. 10 Every road was closed.

21 No. 2 Yes.... to every letter. 3 No. 4 No. 5 No. 6 Yes. Every house ...

## page 180

11 Both 2 both 3 either; both 4 Both; neither
5 either 6 both 7 Either 8 either; both
9 Either 10 Both; neither 11 both 12 either
21 both sides 2 Both (her) parents
3 both directions. 4 Both teams
5 both knees 6 both ( my ) earrings
7 both ends 8 both (of his) socks.
9 eyes 10 both sexes.

## page 181

11 not much of the milk 2 any of my friends 3 enough of that meat 4 some of the big plates 5 a few of her ideas 6 most of these mistakes 7 too many of the students 8 more of those potatoes 9 not much of my money 10 not enough of his work

21 - 2 of 3 of 4 of 5 - $6-7$ 8 of 9 of $10-11$-; 12 of

31 Most 2 most of the 3 Most of the 4 Most 5 Most 6 most of the 7 Most 8 most 9 most of the 10 most

## page 182

11 this 2 that 3 those 4 This 5 these 6 anything 7 any 8 some 9 Nothing. 10 without

21 every 2 each/either 3 everything. 4 all 5 every 6 neither 7 either 8 both 9 everybody 10 all

31 a little 2 few 3 a few 4 a few 5 little 6 lots of 7 many 8 think 9 too 10 big enough

41 Most of 2 Most 3 A few of 4 any 5 some of 6 most of; all of 7 enough 8 too many 9 A lot. 10 many of

## page 183

$51 f 2 b 3$ j 4 c 5 i 6 d 7 g 8 h 9 e 10 a

6 half of us; most of the rest; few; a lot; most of us; half; some of us; how many; a lot; all of us

## page 184

11 He spoke fast, but I understood everything. 2 I'm hungry, but there isn't anything / there's nothing to eat.
3 She has a lot of / plenty of money.
4 A lot of us were at the party last night.
5 Most people think I'm right.
6 He was carrying a heavy bag in each hand.
7 Everything is very difficult.
8 I like every kind / all kinds of music.
9 I think you're driving too fast.
10 If everybody is ready, we can go.
21 this 2 That 3 those 4 that 5 This 6 somebody 7 Ineed 8 some 9 anything 10 anywhere

31 all 2 is 3 Both 4 each 5 every 6 a little 7 little 8 a little 9 a few
10 A little. 11 lots of 12 many
13 too many 14 much 15 is 16 each
17 everything 18 every 19 neither
20 something

## page 186

11 her 2 us 3 him 4 they 5 her
6 them 7 her; she
21 He 2 them 3 him 4 They 5 him 6 She

31 They 2 it 3 it 4 them 5 it 6 it 7 them. 8 they

## page 187

51 He has moved to London. 2 They are on that chair. 3 I like them. 4 She is going to study medicine. 5 No, it is difficult. 6 I put it in the garage. 7 I/We play tennis. 8 It is beautiful.

61 It's warm. 2 It's windy. 3 It's snowing.
4 It's hot. 5 It's raining. 6 It's sunny.
7 It's cloudy. 8 It's cold.

## page 188

11 her 2 his 3 Whose 4 its 5 my 6 their 7 his 8 her 9 your 10 his 11 its 12 her

## page 189

21 James sold his bike to Carlos.
2 Carlos sold his dog to Sara.
3 Sara sold her house to Pat and Sam.
4 Pat and Sam sold their motorbike to Harry.
5 Harry sold his piano to Alice.
6 Alice sold her coat to Michael.
7 Michael sold his camera to Helen.
8 Helen sold her guitar to Marilyn.
9 Marilyn sold her hair dryer to Tom.
10 Tom sold his dictionary to Amy.

31 their son Joe 2 their daughter Emma
their camper van. 4 her brother Frank
her sister Lucy 6 his sister Louise
his brother Simon 8 their friend Pete

## page 190

11 theirs. 2 looks better than yours.
3 Yours looks terrible. 4 That dog looks like ours. 5 That car's not hers. 6 This coat isn't mine. 7 My cooking is better than his. 8 is this bike yours?

21 The towel is not theirs. 2 The razor is his.
3 The red toothbrush is his. 4 The green toothbrush is hers. 5 The toothpaste is theirs.
6 The make-up is hers. 7 The soap is hers.
8 The green washcloth is hers. 9 The hair dryer is hers. 10 The dressing-gown is his. 11 The shampoo is theirs.

11 him 2 herself 3 themselves 4 yourselves 5 him

21 myself 2 'Himself.' 3 yourself. 4 ourselves 5 herself 6 yourselves 7 themselves.

31 yourself 2 themselves. 3 myself. 4 ourselves 5 herself.

41 each other 2 themselves. 3 each other 4 yourselves 5 each other

## page 192

1 Column 2: us, nor our Column 3: her, not hers Column 4: mine, not mines Column 5: themselves, NOT theirsetves

21 his wife 2 mine 3 ours 4 its 5 'I like it.' 6 It's five miles 7 It's Tuesday. 8 'It's over there.' 9 They were 10 it was wonderful 11 them 12 'It was me.' 13 That's her 14 It is cold 15 I have 16 her leg 17 It is 18 Is that my coat? 19 Whose 20 ' 1 's me.'

31 her. 2 herself. 3 each other.

## page 193

41 myself. 2 each other 3 himself 4 me; myself. 5 each other 6 themselves 7 you; yourself. 8 yourselves. 9 each other. 10 yourselves

51 myself 2 yourself 3 himself 4 myself 5 ourselves 6 yourself

61 his 2 eachother 3 they 4 her 5 she 6 they 7 They 8 it's 9 Hers 10 their 11 his 12 she's 13 him 14 her 15 herself. 16 them 17 they're 18 each other 19 I 20 they

1

| I | me | my | mine | myself |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| you | you | your | yours | yourself |
| he | him | his | his | himself |
| she | her | her | hers | herself |
| it | it | its | - | itself |
| we | us | our | ours | ourselves |
| you | you | your | yours | yourselves |
| they | them | their | theirs | themselves |

21 like it 2 It's 20 miles 3 It's Friday. 4 his sister 5 theirs 6 their children 7 Whose 8 each other 9 enjoyed myself 10 teaching myself 11 Where's my bike? 12 It is 13 his arm 14 Ihave 15 made myself comfortable

31 him; me. 2 her; herself. 3 each other 4 ourselves. 5 myself. 6 each other. 7 yourself; you 8 me; yourself. 9 me. 10 her 11 me; me; myself 12 her 13 his 14 myself; they 15 her

## page 196

$11+-s$ : cats, chairs, gardens, hotels, planes, ships, tables, times, trees

+ -Es: boxes, brushes, churches, classes, dresses, gases, glasses, watches, wishes

21 +-s: guys, holidays, keys, ways

+ -Es: copies, countries. families, parties

31 children 2 students 3 want 4 cities
5 wives 6 do 7 teeth 8 watches 9 babies 10 matches 11 guys 12 work 13 people

## page 197

11 class $\downarrow$ club $\downarrow$ Communist Party $\downarrow$ company $\sqrt{ }$ crowd $\downarrow$ idea $X$ lunch $x$ question $X$ room $X$ school $\downarrow$ train $X$

21 D say 2 A want 3 B play 4 C haven't 5 G have 6 F are

31 dark glasses. 2 shorts. 3 scissors 4 black trousers 5 silk pyjamas. 6 tights

## page 198

1 love, meat, music, oil, salt, snow, sugar, wool

2 some bread; a cheque; some baggage; a fridge; some furniture; a handbag; a holiday; some knowledge; some luck; a newspaper; a problem; a station; some travel; some work

31 baggage 2 travel. 3 spaghetti 4 news 5 advice 6 furniture 7 work 8 hair

41 a job 2 a journey 3 a piece of advice
4 a piece of information 5 a piece of news

## page 199

51 a glass 2 glass 3 chocolate 4 a chocolate 5 paper 6 a paper 7 an iron 8 iron 9 a chicken 10 chicken

61 bottle 2 jug 3 box 4 cup 5 mug 6 jar 7 can 8 bag 9 glass 10 packet

## page 200

11 this one. 2 a new one. 3 another one.
4 last one 5 small one. 6 blue ones.

## page 201

11 Alice and John's house. 2 artists' ideas 3 my dog's ears 4 those dogs'ears 5 those men's faces 6 his girlfriend's piano 7 their grandchild's birthday 8 their grandchildren's school 9 ladies' hats 10 my aunt and uncle's shop 11 Patrick's books 12 a photographer's job 13 our postman's cat 14 postmen's uniforms 15 Joyce's pen 16 the thief's bag 17 the thieves' car 18 that woman's brother 19 most women's desks 20 your mum and dad's bedroom

21 That big building is a girls' school. 2 Is this your mother's office? 3 May I speak to the boss's secretary? 4 What's Jane and Peter's address? 5 This is a picture of my grandparents' wedding. 6 Do you know John's new girlfriend? 7 She writes for a women's magazine.
8 Is that Robert's car? 9 Let me have Ruth and Jack's phone number. 10 What's your wife's job?

31 My sister's secretary's office.
2 Jane's children's bicycles.
3 Rob's family's holiday flat.
4 Olivia's boyfriend's cat.
5 The Prime Minister's wife's problem.
6 Luke's uncle's farm.
7 Mr Patterson's doctor's car.
8 The President's niece's business.
9 Charlotte's boss's wife.
10 The Director's husband's friend's mother's cousin.

## page 202

11 Ann's house 2 the doctors' house Oliver and Carla's book 4 the teacher's car 5 the girls' money 6 Susan's money

21 The builder's car is parked in front of Anna's house. 2 Do you know the tall woman's address? 3 The children's bedtime is eight o'clock. 4 Alice and Pat's brothers are all in the army.

31 What's your brother's name? What's the name of that book? 2 Is there anything in the children's pockets? Is there anything in the pockets of that coat? 3 You can see the church from Emma's window. You can see the church from the window of the living room. 4 Why are John's arms so dirty? Why are the arms of your chair so dirty?

## page 203

41 a year's course 2 a week's holiday 3 a day's journey 4 an hour's drive 5 a minute's wait

51 The handbag is probably Aunt Matilda's.
2 The gun is probably Texas Joe's.
3 The crown is probably Queen Lobelia's.
4 The big shoes are probably Oleg's.
5 The document case is probably Mr Brown's.

## page 204

11 business address, email address, home address
2 aspirin bottle, milk bottle, perfume bottle
3 jazz singer, opera singer, pop singer
4 garden wall, prison wall (or kitchen wall)
5 army uniform, police uniform, prison uniform
6 garden chair, kitchen chair

21 Foffice building 2 D dog food 3 A computer engineer 4 Blanguage school 5 E baby clothes 6 G knife drawer

31 a metal box 2 chocolate cakes 3 a plastic fork 4 vegetable soup 5 a leather jacket 6 cotton shirts 7 a paper plate 8 tomato salad 9 a stone wall

## page 205

41 an office manager 2 a coffee maker 3 a coffee drinker 4 an animal lover 5 floor cleaner 6 a tennis player 7 a letter opener 8 a cigar smoker 9 a mountain climber

51 telephone book 2 teacher's book 3 Elizabeth's journey 4 train journey 5 aunt's home 6 holiday home 7 brother's interview 8 job interview

## page 206

11 some 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 some 8 a 9 a 10 some

2 (possible answers) trousers, jeans, tights, shorts, pants, pyjamas, glasses, scissors
$31 \downarrow 2 \downarrow 3 \checkmark 4 \times 5 \times 6 \downarrow 7 \downarrow$ $8 \downarrow 9 \times 10 \downarrow$

41 That's Peter's house 2 children's 3 boys' 4 father's 5 boss's secretary or secretary's boss 6 Jane and Peter's 7 parents' 8 teacher's 9 John's 10 men's

51 a shoe shop 2 orange juice 3 a leather jacket 4 a train driver 5 a coffee table 6 a window cleaner 7 news readers 8 a computer magazine 9 a street market 10 a gold watch

## page 207

61 bus driver 2 a mountain climber 3 a tennis player 4 a maths teacher 5 a dog trainer 6 a glass blower 7 a road cleaner 8 a butterfly collector 9 a computer programmer 10 a bird watcher

71 clothes shops 2 family business 3 Joe's wife 4 sons' 5 daughter's 6 plastic tables and chairs 7 have 8 Joe's 9 bus drivers 10 chocolate cake

## page 208

1 foxes, journeys, matches, books, tables, feet, people, knives, mice, dogs, days, families, women, leaves, men, children, cars, wives, babies
$21 \times 2 \times 3$ ideas 4 ducks $5 \times$
6 journeys $7 \times 8$ governments
9 classes $10 x$

31 tennis player 2 are 3 an hour's sleep
4 women's 5 countries 6 A large one 7 information 8 are 9 flower shop 10 phone book

41 milk chocolate 2 lives 3 book shops 4 were the people or was the person 5 sister's son 6 the blue ones 7 I'd like one 8 a football player 9 journeys 10 street market 11 my brother's 12 an animal doctor 13 Anna's mother 14 silver earrings 15 orange juice 16 cities 17 door of the house 18 There's Peter's house. 19 Do you have Emma's address? 20 a big job

## page 210

11 a beautiful little girl 2 in a red coat 3 was walking through a dark forest 4 with a big bag 5 of wonderful red apples 6 to see her old grandmother 7 Under a tall green tree 8 she saw a big bad wolf 9 with long white teeth

21 'Good morning, little girl', said 2 the big bad wolf. 3 'Where are you going 4 with that heavy bag 5 on this fine day?' 6 'I'm going to see my old grandmother,' 7 said the little girl. 8 'She lives in a small house 9 near the new supermarket.'

31 friendly 2 little 3 stupid. 4 big

## page 211

41 beautiful and intelligent 2 cold, hungry and tired

51 'That car looks expensive.' 2 'Jane seems happy.' 3 'I feel ill and tired.' 4 It gets dark very early here in winter. 5 My parents are getting old.

61 'The train is late.' 2 'He looks Australian.'
3 'Your hair looks beautiful.' 4 My memory is getting very bad.' 5 I want to become rich and famous.

## page 212

11 slow 2 interestingly 3 beautifully 4 easy 5 perfect 6 badly 7 happy 8 angry 9 strong 10 quietly

21 finally 2 sincerely 3 loudly 4 thirstily 5 probably 6 usually 7 nicely 8 wonderfully 9 coldly 10 unhappily 11 comfortably

## page 213

11 I read the letter carefully/slowly/yesterday.
2 I bought a computer yesterday.
3 Write your name carefully/clearly.
4 You must see the doctor tomorrow.
5 He speaks four languages correctly/perfectly.
6 You didn't write the address clearly/correctly.
7 I don't like skiing much/slowly.
8 Please speak clearly and slowly.

31 extremely/terribly 2 completely
3 beautifully/very well 4 extremely/terribly
5 beautifully/very well 6 nearly
7 badly/terribly 8 extremely/terribly

## page 214

11 Jake always eats fish. He even eats fish for breakfast. 2 Ann often plays tennis, but she only plays in the evenings. 3 Edward usually puts tomato sauce on everything. He probably puts it on ice cream. 4 I sometimes forget names. I never forget faces. 5 Jane hardly ever gets angry, and she never shouts at people. 6 I always get to the station on time, and the train is always late. 7 I will definitely phone you tomorrow, and I will probably write next week. 8 I usually drink tea. I sometimes drink coffee. 9 Your sister is certainly a good singer. She is also a very interesting person. 10 My mother is still asleep. I think she is probably ill.

21 Do you often play cards? 2 Have you ever been to Tibet? 3 Are you always happy? 4 Does the boss ever take a holiday? 5 Do you usually eat in restaurants? 6 Is Barbara still ill?

## page 215

3 (possible answers)
Eva never plays football. Tom plays football three times a week. Eva plays tennis once a week. Tom hardly ever plays tennis. Eva often goes skiing. Tom never goes skiing. Eva goes to the theatre every week. Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year. Eva goes to the cinema three or four times a year. Tom goes to the cinema twice a month. Eva never goes to concerts. Tom goes to concerts every week.
(Other answers are possible.)

4 go climbing 1 go swimming 8 go sailing 4 go wind-surfing 12 go skiing 10 go skating 11 go fishing 3 go shopping 7 go to the opera 9 go to the theatre 2 go to concerts 5
page 216
11 boring 2 bored 3 interested 4 interesting
21 annoying 2 frightened; frightening 3 exciting; excited 4 surprising; surprised

## page 217

11 well. 2 early 3 hard 4 weekly 5 hardly

21 Daily 2 lately 3 fast 4 hardly 5 early 6 well 7 late 8 weekly 9 hard 10 lately
$31 \times 2 \downarrow 3 \times 4 \times 5 \downarrow$

## page 218

11 He was driving a fast red car. 2 She speaks perfect Chinese. 3 She speaks Chinese perfectly. 4 l lost my keys yesterday.
5 l've got a very important meeting tomorrow.
6 Anna read Peter's letter slowly. 7 Tim plays the piano brilliantly. 8 Lucy is terribly unhappy. 9 They make very good ice cream here.
10 She's been happily unmarried for 15 years.

21 terrible 2 slowly 3 hard 4 friendly
5 badly 6 unhappy 7 extremely; late 8 carefully 9 late 10 completely
11 beautiful 12 hard 13 unclearly
14 perfect 15 well
4 careful; extremely

## page 219

51 interesting films 2 a good cheap restaurant 3 and good-looking 4 interested
5 I very much like or I like ... very much.
6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Emma!' 7 terribly 8 my glasses yesterday. 9 happily
10 have often thought 11 difficult
12 in a friendly way/voice 13 Arabic very well.
14 beautiful 15 fast 16 carefully 17 perfect
18 is always 19 usually speak 20 hard
61 fast 2 daily 3 hard 4 late 5 hardly 6 friendly 7 silly 8 lonely.

71 a light/coffee 2 water 3 holidays
4 hair, skin 5 a light 6 a bed, water 7 hair, skin 8 milk 9 apples 10 children

## page 220

11 really, completely, possibly, happily, nicely, easily, beautifully, probably, usually, incredibly, unhappily, rightly, sincerely, hungrily, carefully, perfectly, warmly, angrily, comprehensibly, slowly

21 I saw a good film yesterday. 2 Andy can definitely help you. 3 You speak Russian very well. 4 She never smiles. 5 Alice had some really interesting ideas. 6 They sell very good clothes here. 7 I have never been to Norway. 8 Karl plays the violin very badly. 91 have already paid. 10 He was wearing a new blue suit. 11 We often see Annie and Seb. 12 Emma read the report slowly. 13 Judy and Simon are always late. 14 You are probably right. 15 I hardly ever go to the cinema.
$31 \times 2 \times 3 \downarrow 4 \checkmark 5 \times 6 \checkmark 7 \times 8 \downarrow$ $9 \times 10 \times 11 \curvearrowright 12 \downarrow 13 \times 14 \times 15 \times$

41 and stupid-looking 2 are usually 3 bored 4 will never 5 always listen 6 'The poor girl/ woman!'or 'Poor Jenny!' 7 have often been 8 terribly 9 slowly 10 is already 11 You never tell me 12 beautiful 13 has probably 14 fast 15 slowly

## page 222

11 greener, greenest 2 safer, safest 3 richer, richest 4 smaller, smallest 5 stranger, strangest 6 finer, finest 7 higher, highest 8 wider, widest 9 nearer, nearest 10 whiter, whitest

21 bigger, biggest 2 hotter, hottest
3 newer, newest 4 wetter, wettest
5 slimmer, slimmest
31 lazier, laziest 2 hungrier, hungriest
3 sleepier, sleepiest 4 angrier, angriest
5 dirtier, dirtiest
41 more careful, most careful 2 more beautiful, most beautiful 3 more intelligent, most intelligent 4 more dangerous, most dangerous 5 more important, most important 6 more boring, most boring 7 more interested, most interested

51 farther/further 2 better 3 worse.

## page 223

11 the nicest 2 the best 3 more expensive 4 more dangerous 5 the most dangerous 6 bigger 7 the fastest 8 most

21 shorter 2 the most intelligent 3 quieter 4 the coldest 5 louder 6 the biggest 7 more intelligent 8 the most boring

## page 224

11 Dogs are friendlier than cats. 2 Dogs are more intelligent than cats. 3 Train travel is cheaper than air travel. 4 Air travel is faster than train travel. 5 The Sahara is hotter than the Himalayas. 6 The Himalayas are colder than the Sahara. 7 English is easier than Chinese.
8 Chinese is more difficult than
9 English. 9 Canada is bigger than Ireland. 10 Ireland is smaller than Canada.

21 The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America. 2 Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales. 3 Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps. 4 Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats. 5 The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts. 6 Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

## page 225

31 is more careful than him. / is more careful than he is. 2 hungrier than me. / hungrier than 1 am. 3 shorter than you. / shorter than you are. 4 are more excited than us. / are more excited than we are. 5 is more beautiful than her. / is more beautiful than she is.

41 Mark is a bit / a little taller than Simon.
2 Simon is a bit / a little older than
Mark. 3 Mark is a bit / a little younger than Simon. 4 Mark is a lot / much richer than Simon. 5 Mark's car is a lot / much faster than Simon's car. 6 Simon's car is a lot / much slower than Mark's car. 7 Mark's car is a bit / a little more comfortable than Simon's car. 8 Simon's car is a lot / much quieter than Mark's car. 9 Mark's car is a lot / much noisier than Simon's car.

## page 226

> 1 FN 2 Eq 3 Ar 4 Cm 5 BP 6 JS 7 GU 8 It 9 HV

21 In the 1970s, the Beatles were the richest musicians in the world. 2 Eric says that Eleanor is the best singer in the group. 3 When I was a child, my father was the tallest man in our town. 4 In this country, February is the coldest month of the year. 5 Who is the oldest of your three aunts? 6 Helen is very intelligent, but she is the quietest person in my class. 7 Which is the best of these three bikes? 8 Which is the biggest city in Argentina?

11 Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.
2 Liam works more carefully than John.
3 Simon goes swimming more often than Karen.
4 My car runs more quietly than my sister's car.
5 Annie talks more slowly than Rob.
6 Olivia thinks more clearly than most people.
7 Jack dresses more expensively than me.
8 I live more cheaply than my friends.
21 earlier. 2 later. 3 more. 4 nearer
less. 6 faster. 7 higher. 8 longer.

## page 228

1 Picture $A$ is Jenny. Picture $B$ is Cassie. 1 Cassie is not as slim as Jenny. 2 Cassie is not as tall as Jenny. 3 Jenny's skirt is not as long as Cassie's. 4 Cassie's bag is not as big as Jenny's. 5 Jenny's coat is not as heavy as Cassie's.
6 Cassie's glass is not as big as Jenny's.
21 The other doctor isn't as nice as you. The other doctor isn't as nice as you are. 2 His boss isn't as interesting as him. His boss isn't as interesting as he is. 3 My mother isn't as slim as me. My mother isn't as slim as I am. 4 The Browns aren't as careful as us. The Browns aren't as careful as we are.

## page 229

41 Eric has twice as many cousins as Tony.
2 Ben eats three times as many sandwiches as Jo. 3 Helen has nearly as many computer games as Adrian. 4 Chris drinks twice as much coffee as Liz. 5 Mike has just as many books as David. 6 Rebecca doesn't have nearly as much free time as Fred.

## page 230

11 as; as 2 most; in 3 than 4 the; in 5 better; best 6 more 7 as; as 8 than 9 more; am. 10 than; less

21 in the world 2 than 3 most 4 more slowly 5 most 6 than me 7 as cold as ice 8 than his wife 9 higher 10 worst 11 most intelligent 12 happier 13 in 14 of 15 the best
$31 B$ is faster than C. $2 A$ is not as fast as $B$. $3 C$ is not as fast as $B .4 B$ is the fastest. $5 C$ is more expensive than $A$. $6 A$ is not as expensive as $B . \quad 7 B$ is the most expensive. $8 B$ is not as big as $C .9 \mathrm{C}$ is bigger than $A$. 10 C is the biggest.

## page 231

41 more than a year and less than a century
2 more than a week and less than a year
3 more than a day and less than a month
4 more than a minute and less than a day
5 more than an hour and less than a week
6 more than a month and less than a decade

51 John 2 TOm 3 Hannah

6 than

## page 232

11 more interesting, most interesting 2 thinner, thinnest 3 cheaper, cheapest 4 easier, easiest 5 worse, worst 6 more beautiful, most beautiful 7 lazier, laziest 8 farther/further, farthest/furthest 9 better, best 10 older, oldest 11 fatter, fattest 12 happier, happiest 13 later, latest 14 hotter, hottest 15 slower, slowest 16 bigger, biggest 17 more expensive, most expensive 18 dirtier, dirtiest 19 more important, most important 20 stronger, strongest

21 as; as 2 than 3 that 4 than 5 than 6 as 7 that 8 than 9 as 10 than

31 than; more 2 am. 3 earlier; earliest 4 more 5 the; in 6 As; as 7 most; in 8 as; as 9 than 10 worse; worst.

41 in 2 worst 3 most 4 than 5 more quickly 6 as hard as stones 7 bigger 8 most beautiful 9 of 10 the worst

## page 234

11 so 2 although 3 but 4 and 5 while 6 because 7 until 8 while 9 or 10 as soon as

21 We'll be glad when this job is finished. 2 I'll be very angry if you do that again. 3 l'd like to talk to you before you go home. 4 Sue watched TV until John came home. 5 We'll see you again after we come back from holiday. 6 I like her, although she's a difficult person. 7 Henry didn't like working in a bank, so he changed his job. 8 They think they can do what they like because they're rich. 9 I want to stop working before I'm 50. 10 You look beautiful when you're smiling.

## page 235

11 I put on two sweaters because it was very cold. Because it was very cold, I put on two sweaters.
2 I'm going to work in Australia when I leave school. When I leave school, I'm going to work in Australia.
3 I go and see Felix if I want to talk to somebody. If I want to talk to somebody, I go and see Felix.
4 Ann made coffee while Bill fried some eggs. While Bill fried some eggs, Ann made coffee.
5 I was interested in the conversation, although I didn't understand everything. Although I didn't understand everything, I was interested in the conversation.
6 We went to a restaurant because there was no food in the house. Because there was no food in the house, we went to a restaurant.
7 We'll have a big party when John comes home. When John comes home, we'll have a big party.
8 I stayed with friends while my parents were travelling. While my parents were travelling, I stayed with friends.
9 I go for long walks at the weekend if the weather's fine. If the weather's fine, I go for long walks at the weekend.
10 Come and see us as soon as you arrive in Scotland. As soon as you arrive in Scotland, come and see us.

## page 236

11 hear 2 make 3 leaves 4 write 5 get 6 am 7 stops. 8 go 9 arrive 10 finishes.

21 finds or gets 2 travels 3 will help
4 starts 5 will tell 6 look after 7 will look
8 stops 9 come 10 will get

11 Because the rooms were dirty, I changed my hotel. I changed my hotel because the rooms were dirty. The rooms were dirty, so I changed my hotel.
2 Because the taxi was late, we missed the train. We missed the train because the taxi was late. The taxi was late, so we missed the train.
3 Because I didn't like the film, I walked out of the cinema. I walked out of the cinema because I didn't like the film. I didn't like the film, so I walked out of the cinema.

21 Although I felt ill, I went on working. I went on working, although I felt ill. I felt ill, but I went on working.
2 Although she was very kind, I didn't like her. I didn't like her, although she was very kind. She was very kind, but I didn't like her.
3 Although he's a big man, he doesn't eat much. He doesn't eat much, although he's a big man. He's a big man, but he doesn't eat much.

## page 238

11 My company has offices in London, Tokyo, New York and Cairo. 2 I've invited Paul, Alexandra, Eric, Luke and Janet. 3 l'll be here on Tuesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday. 4 She's got five cats, two dogs, a horse and a rabbit. 5 He plays golf, rugby, hockey and badminton. 6 She addressed, stamped and posted the letter.

21 She has painted the kitchen, (the) living room and (the) dining room. 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt, blue jeans and white trainers. 3 Can you give me a knife, fork and spoon, please? 4 Many people speak English in India, Singapore and South Africa. 5 l've written and posted six letters this morning.

## page 239

11 Ithink that she's either Scottish or Irish.
2 l'd like to work with either animals or children.
3 He did well in both mathematics and history.
4 This car is neither fast nor comfortable.
5 She neither looked at me nor said anything.
6 l've got problems both at home and in my job.
7 You can either stay here or go home.
8 I like both (the) theatre and (the) cinema.
9 She speaks neither English nor French.
10 I don't understand either politics or economics.

11 will have; go 2 will wait; arrives 3 come; will be 4 will be; goes 5 get; will cook 6 will send; receive 7 will be; are 8 go; will take 9 stops; will go 10 will have; gets up.

21 Because the teacher was ill, the children had a holiday. The children had a holiday because the teacher was ill.
2 When I was in China, I made a lot of friends. I made a lot of friends when I was in China.
3 Until they built the new road, it was difficult to get to our village. It was difficult to get to our village until they built the new road.
4 Although Jessica wrote three letters, Dylan never answered. Dylan never answered, although Jessica wrote three letters.
5 As soon as the work was finished, I phoned him. I phoned him as soon as the work was finished.

31 I both swim and play tennis.
2 He either lives or works in Birmingham.
3 My father speaks neither Greek nor French.
4 She likes neither pop music nor jazz.
5 She can have either orange juice or water.
6 I can neither sing nor dance.
7 He's either Scottish or Irish.
8 He's studying both physics and biology.
9 This sofa is neither nice-looking nor comfortable.
10 Anna neither looked at Henry nor spoke to him.

## page 241

41 so 2 when 3 and 4 although 5 because 6 and 7 because 8 and 9 until 10 although 11 before

51 Karl plays neither the trombone nor the saxophone. 2 Melanie plays both the cello and the drums. 3 Neither Steve nor Karen play(s) the violin. 4 Both Joanna and Charles play the guitar. 5 Karen plays both the piano and the trumpet. 6 Sophie plays neither the guitar nor the trumpet. 7 Both Charles and Steve play the saxophone. 8 Neither Sophie nor Steve play(s) the trumpet.

## page 242

11 I'm going to do some gardening until it gets dark. 2 I couldn't read because it was too dark. 3 The food wasn't very good, but he ate everything. 4 The lesson finished early, so we went for a walk. 5 After I got his letter, I went round to see him. 6 As soon as Jane gets up, she makes coffee. 7 You can't have any more coffee, because there isn't any. 8 I didn't go to work, because the buses weren't running.
9 The buses weren't running, so I didn't go to work. 10 The phone always rings while I'm having a bath. 11 I can't tell you the decision until I know myself. 12 He didn't work very hard, but he passed all his exams. 13 When the holiday was over, I had to start working very hard. 14 As soon as Andrew saw Zoe, he fell madly in love with her.
15 After I left school, I worked as a taxi driver.

21 He plays neither the piano nor the guitar.
2 Although the train was late, I got there in time. OR The train was late, but I got there in time. 3 small, cold and dirty 4 l/he/she/we/they went out 5 gets 6 Because it was cold, I put on a coat. or It was cold, so I put on a coat. 7 or walk home 8 a knife and fork 9 Although I would like to help you, I don't have time. or I would like to help you, but I don't have time. 10 both classical music and jazz.
11 Ifind 12 I'mold

## page 244

11 If I can't sleep, I get up and read. I get up and read if I can't sleep. 2 If you take books from my room, please tell me. Please tell me if you take books from my room. 3 If you're hungry, why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup if you're hungry? 4 If she's been travelling all day, she must be tired. She must be tired if she's been travelling all day. 5 If we catch the first train, we can be in London by 9.00. We can be in London by 9.00 if we catch the first train.

21 You can't park here unless you live in this street.
2 Unless you're over 15 , you can't see this film.
3 I don't drive fast unless I'm really late.
4 Unless I'm going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. 5 We usually go for a walk after supper unless there's a good film on TV. 6 I see my mother at weekends unless I'm travelling. 7 Unless it's raining, I play tennis most evenings. 8 I can't help you unless you tell me the truth.

## page 245

$1 \quad 1$ get 2 will bring 3 will give 4 phones 5 have 6 stop 7 will be 8 won't laugh 9 will cook 10 stops

21 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 am not; will see 5 will study; has 6 will drive; can 7 marries; will not have 8 will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) lend

31 If I lose my job, I won't find another job.
2 If I don't find another job, I'll lose my flat.
3 If I lose my flat, I'll move back to my parents' house.
4 If I move back to my parents' house, I'll get very bored.
5 If I get very bored, I'll go swimming every day.
6 If I go swimming every day, l'll look very good.
7 If I look very good, I'll meet interesting people.
8 If I meet interesting people, I'll go to lots of parties.
9 If I go to lots of parties, I'll have a wonderful time.

## page 246

11 could; would eat 2 were; would know 3 knew; would tell 4 asked; would (you) do 5 could; would (you) do 6 would buy; had 7 asked; would(you) say 8 would finish; did not talk 9 would study; had 10 were; would watch

21 If Jane and Peter were here, we would play cards.
2 If we had enough money, we would buy a new car. 3 If Fred answered letters, I would write to him. 4 If I could find my camera, I would take your photo. 5 If I could understand the words, I would enjoy opera. 6 If Carola didn't talk about herself all the time, I would like her. 7 If I had a dog, I would go for walks.

11 If I were you, I'd take a holiday. 2 If I were you, I'd join a club. 3 If I were you, I'd fly. 4 If I were you, I'd call the police at once. 5 If I were you, I wouldn't sell it.

21 If I were you, I'd start a business. 2 If I were you, I'd put the money in the bank. 3 If I were you, I'd buy a sports car. 4 If I were you, I'd have a big party. 5 If I were you, l'd travel round the world. 6 If I were you, I'd stop work.
7 If I were you, l'd give the money away.

## page 248

11 lived 2 could 3 go 4 started 5 gave 6 need 7 gave 8 thought 9 was 10 go

21 have; 'll 2 had; 'd 3 get; will 4 got; would
5 did; would 6 do; will 7 go; won't
8 went; wouldn't 9 does; won't 10 did; would

## page 249

11 had been 2 had worked 3 had taken
4 had not played 5 would have studied
6 Would (you) have crashed
7 would not have slept
8 had come; would have had
9 had not broken down; would have been
10 would (you) have studied; had liked
11 would not have got; had not wanted
12 would (you) have helped; had asked
21 If I had caught the 8.15 train, I would have sat by a beautiful foreign woman.
2 If I had sat by a beautiful foreign woman, I would have fallen in love and married her.
3 If I had fallen in love and married her, I would have gone to live in her country.
4 If I had gone to live in her country, I would have worked in her father's diamond business.
5 If I had worked in her father's diamond business, I would have become very rich.
6 If I had become very rich, I would have gone into politics.
7 If I had gone into politics, I would have died in a revolution.

1 (possible answers)
1 G 2 H 3 J 4 B 5 K 6 D 7 F 8 C 9 E 10 I
(Other answers are possible.)

21 bought; would 2 go; 'll 3 lived; would
4 went; wouldn't 5 start; won't 6 win; will
7 married; would 8 take; 'll 9 rains; won't
10 did; wouldn't

31 will 2 looks; it's 3 will; will; will take
4 will 5 won't 6 will

## page 251

41 had not drunk; would have slept
2 had had; would have gone
3 would have gone; had not met
4 had not been; would have gone
5 would have caught; had run
6 had stopped; would have lived
7 would not have asked; had needed
8 would have been; had stayed
9 would have worn; had known
10 had had; would have gone

5 ... the cat wouldn't have eaten her supper. If the cat hadn't eaten her supper, she wouldn't have gone to the shop to buy food. If she hadn't gone to the shop to buy food, she wouldn't have seen an advertisement for a secretary. If she hadn't seen an advertisement for a secretary, she wouldn't have got a new job and met my father.

61 If she goes to Egypt, she will have to learn Arabic. 2 If she goes to Brazil, she will have to learn Portuguese. 3 If she goes to Holland, she will have to learn Dutch. 4 If she goes to Kenya, she will have to learn Swahili. 5 If she goes to Greece, she will have to learn Greek. 6 If she goes to Austria, she will have to learn German.

## page 252

11 cleaned 2 knows 3 will come
4 would understand 5 leave 6 would not sell
7 did not live 8 will translate 9 ask 10 gets

21 if I pass 2 Correct. 3 ate 4 will see
5 Correct. 6 Correct. 7 he works
8 Correct. 9 if we are 10 Correct.

31 had not asked; would not have known
2 had been; would have gone
3 would not have said; had known
4 would have been; had said
5 had not got; would not have met
6 would have died; had not taken
7 had not been; would have gone
8 had done; would have studied
9 would have gone; had had
10 had not helped; would have been

## page 254

11 who 2 which 3 which 4 which 5 who 6 which 7 which 8 who 9 who 10 which 11 which 12 who

21 took 2 live 3 she is 4 lost 5 bought 6 is parked 7 it cuts 8 writes 9 make 10 I lent you

## page 255

31 The man and woman who live in flat 1 play loud music all night. 2 The woman who lives in flat 2 broke her leg skiing. 3 The three men who live in flat 3 play golf all day. 4 The students who live in flat 4 haven't got much money. 5 The doctor who lives in flat 5 has three children. 6 The man who lives in flat 6 drives a Rolls-Royce. 7 The two women who live in flat 7 are hiding from the police.

41 The bus which goes to Oxford isn't running today. 2 Yesterday I met a man who works with your brother. 3 The child who didn't come to the party was ill. 4 Can you pick up the papers which are lying on the floor? 5 The eggs which I bought yesterday were bad. 6 Here's the book which you asked me to buy for you. 7 I don't like the man who is going out with my sister.

## page 256

11 John's got a motorbike that can do 200 km an hour. 2 Is that the computer that doesn't work? 3 Those are the trousers that I use for gardening. 4 A man that lives in New York wants to marry my sister. 5 The doctors that looked at my leg all said different things. 6 The flowers that you gave to Aunt Sarah are beautiful. 7 The children that play football with Paul have gone on holiday.

21 an insect that doesn't make honey and can bite you 2 a bird that can't fly 3 a bird that eats small animals and birds 4 an animal that flies at night and hears very well 5 a machine that can fly straight up 6 a plane that doesn't have an engine 7 a thing that can fly to the moon

## page 257



21 the languages she spoke 2 the sweater 1 wore 3 a manlhelped 4 the weather we have had 5 the car you bought

31 I'm working for a man l've known for twenty years. 2 They played a lot of music I didn't like. 3 The campsite we found was very dirty. 4 I'm going on holiday with some people I know. 5 That book you gave to me is very good. 6 The ring she lost belonged to her grandmother.
7 I'm driving a car I bought 15 years ago.
8 The papers you wanted are on the table.

## page 258

11 the girl that I was talking about 2 the people that I work for 3 the house that I live in 4 the music that you are listening to 5 the bus that I go to work on

21 the girl I was talking about 2 the people I work for 3 the house I live in 4 the music you are listening to 5 the bus I go to work on

31 Eric is the man she works for. 2 Monica is the woman she plays tennis with. 3 Karen is the woman she reads to. 4 Emily and Jack are the people she babysits for. 5 Tom is the man she is in love with.

41 The man she works for gave her chocolates.
2 The woman she plays tennis with gave her a clock. 3 The woman she reads to gave her theatre tickets. 4 The people she babysits for gave her a picture. 5 The man she is in love with gave her flowers and earrings.

## page 259

11 What he did made everybody angry. 2 Take what you want. 3 Soap - that's what I forgot to pack. 4 She gave me a watch. It was just what I wanted. 5 That child does what he likes. 6 What I read in the paper makes me unhappy. 7 Don't tell me what I know already. 8 What I like best in life is doing nothing.

31 that 2 What 3 what 4 that 5 what 6 What 7 that 8 that 9 what 10 that

51 the book I was looking at 2 the people I work for 3 the hotel we stayed in 4 the place I drove to 5 those people we were talking to 6 the train we travelled on 7 some people I work with 8 the place I was telling you about 9 the pen I write with 10 the small village my mother lives in

61 Naomi got what Jessica wanted. 2 Sally got what Thalia wanted. 3 Jane got what Anna wanted. 4 Jessica got what Jane wanted. 5 Thalia got what Sally wanted.

## page 262

$11 A, B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 A-6 A, B \quad A$ $8 A, B \quad 9 A, B \quad 10 A, B 11 A \quad 12 A$ 13 A, B 14 B 15 A

22 which had 6 The woman who came 8 the man who 10 which I couldn't understand. 12 People who/that live 15 people that you can't relax with.
(The other sentences are all correct)

31 that 2 that 3 What 4 that 5 what 6 that 7 what 8 what 9 What 10 that

## page 264

11 he 2 she 3 her. 4 they; their 5 he 6 me. 7 they 8 he; his 9 she; her 10 their

21 told 2 said 3 said 4 say 5 told 6 tell 7 told 8 said

## page 265

31 She said (that) her sister needed a car.
2 He said (that) he had to phone Andrew.
3 She said (that) nobody wanted to help her.
4 She said (that) the radio didn't work.
5 He said (that) he would be in Paris in July.
6 He said (that) he liked the red sweater.
7 He said (that) he couldn't swim.
8 She said (that) her parents were travelling.
9 She said (that) the lessons were very good.
10 They said (that) they hadn't heard from Joseph.

4 The rooms they put us in; the beds they gave us; the extra blankets we asked for; The 'full English breakfast' they served; the 'French champagne' we ordered; that brochure you showed me; The 'view of the sea' they talked about; the gym they advertised; the bill we got

4 He thought (that) cats had nine lives. He thought (that) his father knew everything. He thought (that) spaghetti grew on trees. He thought (that) the teacher lived in the school. He thought (that) he would be rich one day. He thought (that) his mother had always been old.

## page 266

11 She asked him where he lived. 2 She asked him where he worked. 3 She asked him where he was going. 4 She asked him where he had been. 5 She asked him what the number of his car was. 6 She asked him why he was driving on the right.

21 She asked him whether it was his car.
2 She asked him if/whether he had a driving licence. 3 She asked him if/whether he had it with him. 4 She asked him if/whether he always drove with the door open. 5 She asked him if/ whether he was listening to her.

31 They asked him if/whether he was married.
2 They asked him if/whether he had children.
3 They asked him where he had worked before.
4 They asked him why he wanted to change his job. 5 They asked him if/whether he could speak any foreign languages. 6 They asked him what exams he had passed.

## page 267

11 they live in Greece. 2 she went to Belfast yesterday. 3 he's been ill. 4 it's going to rain. 5 she'll ask her sister. 6 they're going to be rich. 7 if/whether lunch is ready. 8 where I put my keys. 9 I'm getting a cold. 10 this is the right answer.

21 Can you tell me where I can buy tickets?
2 Do you know how much it costs?
3 Can you tell me if/whether John has phoned?
4 Can you tell me if/whether I must pay now?
5 Can you tell me if/whether Maria likes steak?
6 Do you know where I parked the car?

## page 268

11 now - then 2 this - that 3 tomorrow - the next day 4 yesterday - the day before
5 today - that day 6 tonight - that night
7 last week - the week before 8 next week the next week

21 that place. 2 the week before. 3 the day before. 4 that day. 5 that night. 6 the next day.

31 He said he loved that place. 2 He said he'd seen a great film the day before. 3 He said he was going to another party that night. 4 He asked if I wanted to play tennis the next day. 5 He said his girlfriend would be there the next week.

## page 269

11 Dave asked Sandra to give him her phone number. 2 The boss told James to work late. 3 Judy asked Kim not to tell Karen about Ryan. 4 Mr Sanders asked Fred not to smoke in his car. 5 The general told Colonel Walker to take 100 men and cross the river. 6 Ann told Polly not to study so hard.

21 His girlfriend told him to write to her every day.
2 His mother told him to keep his room clean. 3 His father told him to work hard. 4 His sister told him not to go to too many parties. 5 His brother told him to get a lot of exercise. 6 His mother told him to change his shirt every day. 7 His father told him not to go to bed late.
8 His brother told him to be careful with money. 9 His sister told him not to play cards for money. 10 His grandmother told him to eat properly.

## page 270

11 He asked her if/whether he could have ice cream for breakfast. 2 He asked her why the stars only came out at night. 3 He asked her why Daddy / his father had to work. 4 He asked her where God was. 5 He asked her whether he would be taller than her one day. 6 He asked her if she believed in Father Christmas. 7 He asked her if/whether Scotland was in London. 8 He asked her when he would be rich. 9 He asked her why French people didn't speak English. 10 He asked her how big the universe was.

2 I She told him to wash his hands before breakfast. 2 She told him not to eat with his mouth open. 3 She told him to eat everything on his plate. 4 She told him not to talk with his mouth full. 5 She told him to make his bed. 6 She told him to clean his room. 7 She told him to polish his shoes. 8 She told him to put on a clean shirt. 9 She told him not to shout at his sister. 10 She told him not to be late for school.

31 John doesn't know how to phone New York.
2 John doesn't know where to pay.
3 John doesn't know when to start work.
4 John doesn't know how to switch the computer on.
5 John doesn't know where to put his coat.
6 John doesn't know how much to pay.
7 John doesn't know what to study.

## page 271

41 had been 2 told 3 was having 4 was doing 5 had had 6 the (week) before 7 would 8 said 9 had 10 had lost 11 to buy 12 if/whether 13 was 14 was 15 would 16 wasliving 17 hadspent 18 to send 19 to give 20 told 21 hadn't heard 22 where 23 wasliving. 24 if/ whether 25 wanted

## page 272

| 1 | 1 | said | 2 told | 3 told | 4 said | 5 said |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 6 | told | 7 told | 8 told | 9 said | 10 told |  |

$21 \times 2 \times 3 ノ 4 \times 5 \int 6 \times 7 \downarrow$ $8 \downarrow 9 \times 10 \times$

33 where the post office was. 4 when Jane is arriving? 7 tell me 8 was going 9 if/ whether I was 10 what he wanted. 11 what this word means. 12 wanted. 15 why she said (All the other sentences are correct.)

## page 274

11 on 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 at; on 6 on 7 on 8 at;on 9 at 10 on 11 at 12 on

21 at 2 in 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 in 7 at; in 8 in 9 in 10 at; in; on 11 in 12 in 13 at 14 in 15 in

## page 275

31 I'll see you next Wednesday. 2 It rained nonstop last week. 3 Business was bad last month. 4 Shall we go out this evening? 5 We're going to America next month. 6 Ann had a car crash last Wednesday. 7 I'm going to change my job next year. 8 My holiday is in August every year. or ... every August. 9 I've spent too much money already this month. 10 The new school will be open next March. or ... in March next year.

41 In five days. 2 In a week. 3 In two weeks.
4 In a month. 5 In a year. 6 In a hundred years.

51 the twenty-first of March / March the twentyfirst, nineteen ninety-nine 2 the fourteenth of February / February the fourteenth, nineteen sixty 3 the twenty-eighth of July / July the twentyeighth, eighteen forty-six 4 the sixth of May/ May the sixth, two thousand and three 5 the ninth of May / May the ninth, nineteen eighty-four 6 the seventeenth of December / December the seventeenth, two thousand and twelve

## page 276

11 until lunchtime. 2 until Saturday. 3 until the age of 14. 4 until the end. 5 until July.

21 He washed the car from 8.00 to/till/until 9.00.
2 He talked to the woman next door from 9.00 to/till/until 9.15.
3 He played tennis from 10.00 to/till/until 11.00 .
4 He talked to friends from 11.00 to/till/until 11.30.

5 He went for a walk from 11.30 to/till/until 12.45.
$4 \quad 1$ by 2 until 3 by 4 by 5 by 6 until

## page 277

11 for 2 during 3 during 4 for; during 5 during 6 for 7 during 8 for

21 while they were playing 2 during the lesson 3 during the war 4 while she was teaching 5 while he was speaking 6 while they were talking 7 during her illness 8 while it was snowing

3 (possible answers)
1 for an hour or so 2 for ever 3 for a moment
4 for a couple of hours 5 for a minute or two
6 for a few minutes 7 for an hour or so
8 for life (Other answers are possible.)

## page 278

$1 \quad 1$ in 2 on 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 in 9 on 10 on

21 in my diary. 2 in the office 3 on her first finger 4 in the cupboard. 5 on the roof of the car. 6 in your car 7 On his T-shirt 8 on the wall 9 in a little village 10 on a piece of paper; in my pocket

## page 279

11 at the cinema 2 at the station. 3 at the party 4 at a Chinese restaurant 5 at a theatre 6 at work. 7 at breakfast 8 at Birmingham. 9 at the hotel bar 10 at the crossroads.

21 at the bottom 2 at the end 3 at the top 4 at the top 5 at the beginning

## page 281

1 above 2 by 3 above 4 by 5 behind 6 under 7 against

21 under 2 between; opposite 3 against
4 behind 5 near 6 in front of 7 near
31 opposite 2 between 3 behind 4 near 5 in front of 6 under 7 against 8 between 9 by

## page 282

11 up the steps 2 through the gate 3 over the fence 4 past the café 5 round the corner 6 out of the shop 7 across the river 8 along the yellow line 9 under the bridge 10 into the water 11 off the bike 12 down the mountain

## page 283

21 along the road 2 up the mountain 3 down the stairs 4 over the wall 5 into the bank 6 round the corner 7 through the door 8 off the table 9 out of the church 10 under the bridge 11 past the bank 12 across the river

31 out of; along 2 down; over 3 along; through; into 4 up; into; off 5 past; under; round 6 off; into 7 out of; across; out of 8 up; down

41 to 2 in 3 to 4 from; to 5 in 6 to 7 at 8 at 9 in 10 to
$1 \quad 1$ on 2 on 3 at 4 for 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 in 9 in 10 on 11 by 12 until 13 during 14 while 15 at

21 last Saturday 2 next year 3 in September every year OR every September 4 this month 5 last week 6 tomorrow evening 7 next Saturday 8 last month 9 next month 10 next August OR in August next year

31 along the road 2 down the mountain 3 into the church 4 off the table 5 out of the church 6 up the mountain 7 over the wall 8 past the church 9 round the corner 10 through the door

41 between 2 above 3 in front of 4 opposite 5 against 6 through 7 along; by 8 out of; across 9 off; into 10 past; under; round

## page 285

51 out of the church 2 on the bus 3 up the stairs 4 under the bridge 5 into the river 6 behind the door 7 at the bottom of the stairs 8 down the mountain 9 in front of the police station 10 at the end

61 the twenty-third of April or April the twentythird 2 the first of September or September the first 3 the fifth of August, two thousand and ten or August the fifth ... 4 the second of March, nineteen eighty or March the second ... 5 the tenth of January, two thousand and two or January the tenth ... 6 the third of April, two thousand and eight or April the third ...
7 the fourth of October or October the fourth 8 the twenty-first of March, nineteen thirty-six or March the twenty-first ... 9 the twenty-second of October, two thousand and six or October the twenty-second ... 10 the first of January, two thousand and one or January the first ...

7 (possible answers) 1 for a moment. 2 for life. 3 for a long time. 4 for a few minutes. 5 for a long time. 6 for a couple of hours 7 for years and years. 8 for a moment 9 for a few minutes. 10 for an hour or so. (Other answers are possible.)

81 on 2 on 3 opposite 4 off 5 by 6 along 7 at 8 under 9 up 10 round 11 down 12 across 13 through 14 out of 15 in front of 16 in 17 by

## page 286

11 on 2 over 3 on 4 at 5 off 6 by 7 in 8 for 9 through 10 while

21 on 2 from; until 3 for 4 during 5 in 6 at/in front of/opposite 7 on 8 on 9 on 10 at 11 by/before 12 between 13 at 14 in 15 along/by/near

31 for three hours 2 by Saturday 3 out of the room 4 opposite our house 5 across this river 6 on the ceiling 7 across the town 8 next Monday 9 at Christmas 10 off the bus

## page 288

11 , won't you? 2 ,has he? 3 -? 4 , isn't it? 5 , can he? 6 , isn't it? 7 , was it? 8 -? 9 , aren't I?

21 isn't it? 2 aren't we? 3 isn't she? 4 won't you 5 can't he? 6 doesn't she? 7 doesn't it?
$3 \quad 1$ is he? 2 can you? 3 do they? 4 does she? 5 do they? 6 has he/she?

## page 289

41 wasn't there? 2 aren't there? 3 isn't there? 4 has there? 5 were there?

51 do you? 2 isn't she? 3 isn't it? 4 can you? 5 wouldn't you? 6 do they? 7 hasn't she? 8 aren't l ? 9 isn't there? 10 don't you?

61 They've lived in France, haven't they? 2 They all went home early, didn't they? 3 It rained all last week, didn't it? 4 Her brother writes for the newspapers, doesn't he? 5 I need a visa, don't I? 6 You'd like a holiday, wouldn't you? 7 The train was late, wasn't it? 8 Sarah forgot your birthday, didn't she? 9 There was a letter for me, wasn't there? 10 I'm in time for lunch, aren't I?

## page 290

11 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.' 2 'No, he hasn't.' 3 'Yes, they do.' 4 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.' 5 No, he doesn't.' 6 'Yes, I/we do.' 7 'No, thanks, she wouldn't.' 8 'No, it wasn't.' 9 'No, I'm afraid I'm not.'

31 'No, I'm not.' 2 'Yes, it is.' 3 'Yes, she does,' 4 'No, it doesn't.' 5 'Yes, he did.' 6 'Yes, he did.'

## page 291

11 Have you? 2 Did he? 3 is there?
4 Can't you? 5 Doesn't it? 6 Is she?
7 Do they? 8 Don't they?
21 C Don't you? 2 B Are they? 3 F is it?
4 D Has he? 5 E Can't you?
3 (possible answers)
1 'Congratulations!' 2 'Say 'hello' to her for me.'
3 'Good luck!' 4 'That's interesting.'
5 'What a pity!' 6 'What a nuisance!'
7 'I am sorry.' 8 'That's a surprise.'
9 'That's terrible.' (Other answers are possible.)

## page 292

11 Are you? 2 Joe didn't phone yesterday.
3 I'm feeling ill. 4 John needs help.
5 You don't remember David, 6 Have you?
7 can't they?

21 don't you? 2 Yes, 1 do. 3 didn't he? 4 he didn't. 5 Is he? 6 does he? 7 Yes, it is. 8 Aren't you? 9 don't you? 10 Yes, I do 11 haven't you? 12 Yes, I have. 13 Are you? 14 Yes, I would. 15 can I? 16 Yes, you can. 17 Are you?

## page 293

11 ... but I do. 2 ... I have. 3 ... I don't think she will. 4 ... I hope he has. $5 \ldots$ Of course I will. 6 ... 1 can tomorrow.

21 'They hope to.' 2 she didn't want to. 3 l'd like to. 4 I used to. 5 'Sorry, 1 forgot to.' 6 'It's starting to.'

31 I couldn't understand what he wanted from me. 2 She doesn't know what she's doing. 3 The bus is late again. 4 Do you speak French? 5 I haven't seen them. 6 I don't think so.

## page 294

$1 \quad 1$ 'So is Alice.' 2 'So does my father.'
3 'So can I.' 4 'So does Carla.' 5 'So has Edward.'

21 neither/nor was the meat. 2 'Neither/Nor has Gemma.' 3 'Neither/Nor does this one.'
4 'Neither/Nor can I.' 5 neither/nor will his friends.

31 'My car does.' 2 her sister hasn't. 3 our dog can't. 4 'The train doesn't.' 5 the back door was. 6 'Her second one did.'

## page 295

41 Eric plays tennis, and so does Dan. 2 Julie isn't tall, but Denise is. 3 Denise doesn't laugh a lot, and neither/nor does Paul. 4 Dan can ski, but Rachel can't. 5 Julie has been to America, and so has Denise. 6 Eric isn't tall, and neither/ nor is Paul. 7 Julie doesn't play tennis, but Dan does. 8 Paul doesn't like dancing, but Rachel does.

## page 296

11 she wasn't. 2 he does. 3 she wouldn't. 4 it doesn't. 5 I can. 6 I haven't. 7 he doesn't. 8 she did. 9 they won't. $10 I$ do.

2 (possible answers)
1 'Say 'hello' to him for me.' 2 'Congratulations!' 3 'I don't believe it!' 4 'Good luck!' 5 'That's interesting.' 6 'That's terrible.' 7 'What a nuisance!' 8 'I am sorry.' 9 'That's a surprise.' 10 'What a pity.'

31 nor/neither do cats. 2 nor/neither has the 3.15. 3 'Nor/Neither was I.' 4 nor/neither did Sally. 5 so does his brother. 6 so are the potatoes. 7 nor/neither does her brother. 8 so were we. 9 'Nor/Neither do her parents.' 10 'So will I.'

## page 297

41 ... but I do. 2 ... 'I have.' 3 ... but I don't think he will. 4 ... 'I'm trying to.' 5 ... 'Of course I won't.' 6 ... but I can't. 7 ... but I don't want to. 8 ... but I haven't. 9 ... 'No, I didn't.' 10 ... but I hope to.

51 I don't know why. 2 Have you seen my mother today? 3 I don't think so. 4 Sorry, you can't come in here. 5 Do you want some help? 6 Do you know what I think? 7 I can't understand a word. 8 The house is cold. 9 It's raining again. 10 I've lost my keys.

61 They're paper clips, aren't they? 2 It's a diary, isn't it? 3 It's a hole-punch, isn't it? 4 It's an address book, isn't it? 5 They're rulers, aren't they? 6 They're calculators, aren't they?

## page 298

$11 \downarrow 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \downarrow 6 \times 7 \downarrow$ $8 \downarrow 9 \times 10 \times$

21 can't you? 2 won't she? 3 have you? 4 doesn't he? 5 was there? 6 didn't she? 7 does he? 8 isn't it? 9 is it? 10 will you?
11 haven't they? 12 have they? 13 aren't I?
14 don't they? 15 did it?

31 They haven't gone home, have they?
2 We need tickets, don't we?
3 You'd like some more coffee, wouldn't you?
4 Mike was away yesterday, wasn't he?
5 Angela didn't tell you her news, did she?
6 Sophie can't play the piano, can she?
7 There will be room for everybody, won't there?
8 Your father doesn't eat meat, does he?
9 These books don't belong to the library, do they?
10 You're tired, aren't you?
41 it wasn't. 2 he wouldn't. 3 it doesn't.
4 it did. 5 it won't.

51 Have they? 2 Won't you? 3 Do you?
4 Has it? 5 Didn't ??

## index

$a$, an: see articles
a bit with comparatives 225
a few
and a few of 181
and few, a little and little 175
a little
and a little of 181
with comparatives 225
a lot
a lot (of) 174, 181
with comparatives 225
able: be able to 81
above 280-281
across 282-283
active and passive 94
active and passive verb forms 300
adjectives 209-211; 216-220
after be, become, etc 211
and adverbs: the difference 212
comparatives and superlatives 221-226
ending in -ly 217
followed by infinitives 128
with enough/too + infinitive 129
words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217
adverb particles (away, back etc) 142-143
adverbs 212-215; 217
and adjectives: the difference 212
comparatives and superlatives 227
of manner 212
other adverbs 213
position 214-215
words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217
advice: uncountable 198
afraid
afraid of 305
with be 3
after
and afterwards 307
with present tense for future meaning 41, 236
against 280-281
ages with be 3
ago, for and since 307
agree

+ infinitive 122-123
agree with 305
all
all, every and each 179
all, everybody and everything 178
and all of 181
position with noun or verb 178
along 282-283
already
already, yet and still 308
position 64, 214-215
with present perfect 64
also: position 214-215
although 234
and but 237
always: position 214-215
and 234, 238
with adjectives 211
angry about/with 305
annoyed and annoying 216
another 307
any
and any of 181
and some 170-171
anybody 172
anyone 172
anything 172
anything to ... 130
anywhere 172
aren't I? 288, 301
arrive at/in 141, 283, 305
articles 151-166
$a$ and an 152
a/an and one 153
a/an for jobs, roles etc 156
a/an in descriptions 157
expressions without articles (e.g.
in bed, have breakfast, next
Monday) 162-163
names 160-161
not used with my etc 163,189
pronunciation 152
special cases 162-163
the and a/an 154-155
the not used in generalisations 158-159
with countable and uncountable nouns 153
as
and like 307
as, than and that 308
jobs and roles 307
not used without article 163
as ... as 228-229
as lam or as me 228
as soon as 234
with present tense for future
meaning 41, 236
ask
ask for 141, 305
ask somebody to do something 125
at (preposition of place) 279
and in 279
at a party 306
at the bottom/top/side 306
at the cinema/theatre 306
at, to and in 283
at (preposition of time) 274-275
at the beginning 306
at/in the end 306
back: at the back 163
bad at (...ing) 133, 305
baggage: uncountable 198
be 1-5
auxiliary: see progressive, passive
be able to 81
be born 97
be careful 146
be in/out/away/back etc 142
contractions 2, 3
there is 6-7
with hungry, thirsty, ages etc 3
because 234
and so 237
and why 308
become + adjective 211
bed: expressions without article 162
been and gone 61
before with present tense for
future meaning 41, 236
begin + infinitive 122-123
believe
believe in 141, 305
not normally used in progressive 30-31
belong to 141, 305
better, best 222
between 280-281
born: be born 97, 307
borrow: structures 144
both 180
and both of 181
both ... and 239
both, either and neither 180
bottom: at the bottom 163
bread: uncountable 198
bring
bring back 143
bring somebody something 144
but 234
and although 237
buy somebody something 144 by
and until 276
by ...ing 133
by bicycle/bus/car etc 162
by Dickens, Mozart etc 306
by myself/yourself etc 191
in passives 94
preposition of place 280-281


## can

ability 80-81
can't and may not 83
permission 84-85
requests 86
can't help ...ing 134
capital letters 300
causative have 145
certainly: position 214-215
church: expressions without article 162
cinema: at/to the cinema 163
club: singular or plural verb 197
cold with be 3
collective nouns 197
college: expressions without article 162
colour with be 3
come
come back 142
come in 146
company: singular or plural verb 197
comparative and superlative adjectives 221-226
forms 222
superlatives with in or of 226
superlatives with the 155,223
the difference between comparatives and superlatives 223
using comparatives 224-225
using superlatives 226
comparative and superlative adverbs 227
conditionals: see if
congratulations 291
conjunctions 233-242
and 238
because and so, although and but 237
both ... and, (n)either ... (n)or 239
introduction to conjunctions 234
position of conjunctions 235
tenses with time conjunctions 236
continue + infinitive 122-123
contractions 301
cook somebody something 144
could: see can
countable and uncountable nouns 153
country: the country 163
daily: adjective and adverb 217
decide + infinitive 122-123
definitely: position 214-215
demonstratives (this, that etc) 168-169
depend on 305
describe: structures 144
determiners 167-184
with of 181
different from/to 305
difficulty in ...ing 305
discuss something with somebody 305
dislike ...ing 135
divide into 305
do
and make 307
auxiliary: see questions, negatives, question tags, short answers, reply questions
do ...ing 307
don't forget 146
don't worry 146
down 282-283
dream about/of 305
dressed in 305
dropping words in speech 293
during, for and while 277
each
and each of 181
each, every and all 179
each other and reflexives 191
early: adjective and adverb 217
either
and either of 181
either, neither and both 180
either ... or 239
I'm not either 295
else 307
England: singular or plural verb 197
enjoy
enjoy ...ing 134
enjoy myself/yourself etc 191
enough 176, 177
and enough of 181
with adjective and infinitive 129
even: position 214-215
ever 307
position 214-215
tenses 62
every
and every one of 181
every, each and all 179
expressions without
prepositions 274
everybody 172
and all 178
everyone 172
everything 172
and all 178
everywhere 172
example of 305
excited and exciting 216
expect

+ infinitive 122-123
expect somebody to do something 125
explain: structures 144, 305, 307
family: singular or plural verb 197
farther, farthest 222
fast: adjective and adverb 217
feel + adjective 211
fetch somebody something 144
few
and few of 181
few, a few, little and a little 175
fill in (a form) 143
fill up 143
find somebody something 144
finish...ing 134
follow me 146
for
and since 65
for, since and ago 307
for, during and while 277
for example 306
forget
+ infinitive 122-108
+ infinitive or ...ing 308
friendly: adjective, not adverb 217
frightened and frightening 216
from ... to
movement 283
time 276
front: at the front 163
furniture: uncountable 198
further, furthest 222
future 35-44
future passive 96
going to 36-37
of be 5
of have 9
present progressive 38
simple present 41
will 39-40
gerunds: see -ing forms
get: structures 140
+ adjective 211
get into, out of, on, off 141, 305
get out 142
get somebody something 144
get to a place 305
get up 142
have got 11
give
give back 143
give somebody something 144
give up ...ing 134, 143
glasses 197
$g 0$
go ...ing 134
go away/back/in/out/on 142
going to 36-37
gonna 301
gone and been 61
good at (...ing) 133, 305
good luck 291
got: have got 11
gotta (= 'got to') 301
grammar and vocabulary
adjectives that go with particular nouns 219
adverbs of degree; subjects of study 216
animal behaviour 117
animals, birds and other creatures 155
cities and countries 147
clothes 33
common adjectives 176, 177
common adjectives with somebody etc 183
common expressions with reflexive pronouns 191
common imperative expressions 146
containers 199
dates 275
discovery, invention, creation 55
duration 285
eight useful things 91
games 19
giving directions 43
go with spare-time activities 215
housework 71
interests 159
jewellery 261
jobs 91
kinds of things 156
learning and using a language 127
materials 153, 165
musical instruments 241
names of languages 251
one-word noun + noun
structures 205
public notices 131
relations 13
seven useful things 152
showing our feelings 291
some useful questions 107
the bathroom 190
things from the office 297
things that come in twos 180
things that fly 256
things that people can do 290
time 231
towns 174
travelling by air 100
useful time-expressions with for 277
vehicles 137
weather 187
group nouns 197
hair. uncountable 198
happen to 141, 305
hard: adjective and adverb 217
hardly
used without not 115
hardly ever: position 214-215
hate
+ -ing form 135
+ infinitive 135
not normally used in progressive 30-31
have 8-11
auxiliary: see perfect
don't have to and mustn't 77
have a good journey/holiday 146
have breakfast, a shower, a good flight etc 10
have got 11
have some (more) ... 146
have something done 145
have to 76-78
he 186-187
hear
and listen to 307
somebody do/doing something 308
help
help yourself 190
help! 146
help somebody to do something 125
her
object pronoun 186-187
possessive; her and his 188-189
hers 190
herself 191
him 186-187
himself 191
his 188-189, 190
and her 188
holiday: on holiday 162
home 307
without article 162
hope 307
+ infinitive 122-123
not normally used in progressive 30-31
hospital: expressions without article 162
how
How do you spell/pronounce ...? 107
How long does it take to ...? 107
How long have you been here? and How long are you here for? 107
how many as subject 108-109
how many/much 173
how old/tall/far etc 106
how to ... 269
hundred: a hundred 163
hungry with be 3
hurry up 142, 146
| 186-187
I am sorry 291
I don't believe it 291
I don't mind 31
I hope solnot 31
I see (='I understand') 30
idea: the idea of ...ing 305
if 243-252
and when 307
if / go or if I went 248
if I were you 247
in indirect questions 266
position of if-clauses 244
unless 244
unreal past 249
with past tense and would meaning'not real' or 'not probable' 246
with present tense for future
meaning 41, 245, 248
imperatives 146
in (preposition of time) 274-275
in/at the end 306
in/on time 306
in (preposition of place) 278-279
in a picture 306
in a raincoat/dress/hat 306
in a ... voice 306
in and at 279
in and on 278
in front of 280-281
in or of after superlatives 226
in pen/pencil 306
in the middle 306
in the rain/snow 306
in the sky 306
in, at and to 283
indirect speech 263-272
here and now words 268
if and whether 266
indirect questions 266
infinitives 269
present reporting verbs 267
pronouns 264-265
say and tell 264
tenses 264-265
infinitives 119-130
after adjectives 128
after nouns (e.g. letters to write) 130
after verbs 122-123
in indirect speech 269
infinitive of purpose 121
it with infinitive subjects 126127
verb + object + infinitive 124125
with adjective and enough/too 129
with and without to 120
information: uncountable 198
-ing forms (gerunds) 131-135
after prepositions 132-133
after to 133
as subjects 131
verb + -ing form 134-135
-ing forms (present participles)
in progressive (continuous)
verb forms: see present
progressive, past
progressive etc
interested
and interesting 216
interested in 305
with be 3
into 282-283
irregular comparatives 222
irregular plurals 196
irregular verbs 299
it 186-187
used for countries, animals, times, dates, distance, weather 186-187
it depends 31
it doesn't matter 30
its 188-189
and it's 189, 301
itself 191
jeans 197
just 307
position 214-215
with present perfect 64
keep on ...ing 134
kind to 305
know: not normally used in progressive 30-31
knowledge: uncountable 198
last: expressions without prepositions 274
last year etc: no article 162
late: adjective and adverb 217
laugh at 141, 305
learn + infinitive 122-123
leaving out words
in speech 293
relative who, which, that 257
left: on the left 163
lend somebody something 144
less than 225
let and make 307
let in 143
let's 147
lie down 142
like (verb)
$+\ldots$ ing 135
+ infinitive 135
not normally used in progressive 30-31
like and as 307
listen to 141, 305
and hear 307


## little

and little of 181
little, a little, few and a few 175
lonely: adjective, not adverb 217

## look

+ adjective 211
look after/at/for 141, 305
look out! 142, 146
look round 142
look up (something in a dictionary etc) 143
look, see and watch 308
lots (of) 174, 181
love
+ ...ing 135
+ infinitive 135
not normally used in progressive 30-31
lovely: adjective, not adverb 217
luck: uncountable 198
luggage: uncountable 198
made of 153
make
and do 307
and let 307
make somebody something 144
make yourself at home 146
make yourself comfortable 191


## many

and many of 181
and much 173
too many 177
married to 305
may
and might 82-83
may not and can't 83
permission 85
me 186-187
me too 295
mean: not normally used in progressive 30-31
might and may 82-83
million: a million 163
mind ...ing 134
mine 190
modal verbs 73-92, and see entries for individual verbs
monthly: adjective and adverb 217
more
and more of 181
in comparatives 222-225
more than 225
most
and most of 181
in superlatives 222-223, 226
mountains: the mountains 163

## much

and many 173
and much of 181
too much 177
with comparatives 225
must 75, 77
and should 79
mustn't and don't have to 77
my 188-189
myself 191
names with or without the

$$
160-161
$$

near 280-281
need

+ infinitive 122-123
need somebody to do something 125
not normally used in progressive 30-31
negatives 112-115; see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses


## neither

and neither of 181
neither ... nor 239
neither can l etc 294
neither, either and both 180

## never

position 214-215
tenses 62
used without not 115
news: uncountable 198
next
expressions without prepositions 274
next Friday etc: no article 162
nice to 305
no (= 'not any')
and none (of) 181
and not 114
no ...ing 131
used without not 115
no one 172
nobody 172
used without not 115
none (of) 181
non-progressive verbs 30-31
nor can letc 294
not
and no 114
I hope not 31
not much/many and little/few 175
nothing 172
nothing to ... 130
used without not 115
nouns 195-208

+ infinitive (e.g. letters to write) 130
countable and uncountable nouns 198-199
group nouns 197
noun + noun 204-205
one(s) 200
possessives with 's and s' 201203, 205
singular and plural 196
nowhere 172
used without not 115
of
or in after superlatives 226
with determiners 181
off 282-283
offer somebody something 144
often: position 214-215
on (preposition of place) 278
and in 278
on foot 162
on holiday 162
on page 22, 306
on the phone 306
on the radio 306
on TV 306
on (preposition of time) 274-275
on/in time 306
one and a/an 153
one(s) 200
only
only a little/few 175
position 214-215
the only 155
opposite 280-281
orchestra: singular or plural verb 197
ought to 79
our 188-189
ours 190
ourselves 191
out of 282-283
over 282-283
pair 197
passives 93-102
future 96
introduction to passives 94
passive and active verb forms 300
present perfect 99
present progressive 98
simple past 97
simple present 95
past 282-283
past continuous: see past progressive
past participles (worked, broken, seen etc)
in perfect tenses 58, 68
in passives 94
past perfect 68-69
past progressive 51-53
past simple: see simple past
past tenses 45-56
of be 4
of have 9
past progressive 51-53
past progressive and simple past 52-53
simple past 46-50
with if 246-248
pay and pay for 141, 305
people 196
most people or most of the people 181
perfect tenses 57-72
present perfect 58-65
present perfect progressive 66-67
past perfect 68-69
personal pronouns 186-187
phrasal verbs 142-143
pick up 143
place names with or without the 160-161
plan + infinitive 122-123
pleased with 305
plenty (of) 174, 181
plural nouns 196
police: plural verb 197
polite to 306
possessive determiners and pronouns 188-190
mine, yours etc 190
my,your etc 188-189
possessive nouns with 's and s' 201-203, 205
practise...ing 134
prefer
+ infinitive 122-123
not normally used in progressive 30-31
prepositions 273-286
+-ing form 132-133
after particular verbs 141
at (place) 279
at, in and on (time) 274-275
by and until 276
common expressions with prepositions 306
for, during and while 277
from ...to (time) 276
in and on (place) 278
in questions 111
in relative clauses 258
movement 282-283
other prepositions of place 280 281
present participles (-ing forms) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc
present perfect 58-67
forms 58-59
passive 99
present perfect and present 61, 67
present perfect and simple past compared 60-61
present perfect progressive 66-67
time words 62-63
with already, yet and just 64
with since and for 65
present progressive 23-29
and simple present 28-29
for future 38
passive 98
present simple: see simple present
present tenses 15-34
simple present 16-22
present progressive (continuous) 23-27
the two present tenses compared 28-29
non-progressive verbs 30-31
present and present perfect 61, 67
prison: expressions without article 162
probably: position 214-215
promise
+ infinitive 122-123
promise somebody something 144
punctuation 301-302
put down 143
put on (clothes) 143
pyjamas 197
question tags 288-289, 292
question words 2, 106-107
as subjects 108-109
questions 102-111
indirect questions 266
prepositions in questions 111
question words 2, 106-107
question-words as subjects 108-109
questions with long subjects 110
yes/no questions 104-105
see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses
radio: on the radio 163
read somebody something 144
reason for 306
reflexives (myself etc) 191
and each other 191
refuse + infinitive 122-123
relative pronouns (who, whom, which, that, what) and relative clauses 253-262
leaving out relative pronouns 257
prepositions in relative clauses 258
that 256, 259
what 259
who and which 254-255
whom 255
remember
+ infinitive or ...ing 308
not normally used in progressive 30-31
reply questions 291, 292
reported speech: see indirect speech
right with be 3
right: on the right 163
round 282-283
's and s' possessives 201-203, 205
same 308
say 'hello' to him/her for me 291
say
and tell 264
structures 144
school: expressions without article 162
scissors 197
sea: the sea 163
see
see, look and watch 308
somebody do/doing something 308
seem
+ adjective 211
+ infinitive 122-123
not normally used in progressive 30-31
send somebody something 144
shall 39
shall I/we ...? 87
she 186-187
short answers 290, 292
should 79
and must 79
show somebody something 144
side: at the side 163
silly: adjective, not adverb 217
simple past 46-50
and past progressive 52-53
passive 97
simple present 16-22, 28-31
and present progressive 28-29
for future 41
passive 95
since and for 65
since, for and ago 307
singular and plural nouns 196
sit down 142, 146
sleep well 146
smile at 306
so 234
and because 237
and such 308
I hope/think so 31
so am letc 294
some
and any 170-171
and some of 181
somebody 172
someone 172
something 172
something to ... 130
sometimes: position 214-215
somewhere 172
spaghetti: uncountable 198
spelling
adverbs in -ly 212
capital letters 300
comparatives and superlatives 222
-ing forms 23
noun plurals 196
regular past participles 58
's and s' in possessives 201
simple past endings 46
simple present endings 16
spend (time) ...ing 134
spoken grammar 287-298
leaving out words 293
question tags 288-289, 292
reply questions 291, 292
short answers 290, 292
so am I, nor can he etc 294-295
stand up 142
start + infinitive 122-123
still
position 214-215
still, yet and already 308
stop ...ing 134
such and so 308
suggest: structures 144
superlative: see comparative
surprised and surprising 216
switch/turn on/off (lights,
electrical appliances) 143


## take

take away 143
take care of yourself 191
take off (clothes) 143
take somebody something 144
talk about 141, 306
teach somebody something 144
team: singular or plural verb 197
tell
and say 264
tell somebody something 144
tenses: see present, past etc
in indirect speech 264-265
with time conjunctions 236
than after comparatives 224
than, as and that 308
than lam or than me 225
thank somebody for something 306
that (relative pronoun) 256, 259
that, as and than 308
that, this etc 168-169
that's a surprise/interesting/
terrible 291
the: see articles
with superlatives 223
the country/mountains/sea 163
the same 163
theatre: at/to the theatre 163
their 188-189
theirs 190
them 186-187
themselves 191
there is 6-7
in question tags 289
these 168-9
they 186-187
think
(don't) think so 31
not always used in progressive 30-31
structures 308
think about 141
think about/of 306
thirsty with be 3
this 168-9
expressions without
prepositions 274
this Monday etc: no article 162
those 168-169
thousand: a thousand 163
through 282-283
throw away 143
till: see until
to (preposition)
to, at and in 283
to ...ing 133
to with infinitive: see infinitives
too

+ adjective + infinitive 129
and very 308
too, too much/many and not enough 177
too (= 'also'): I am too, me too 295
top: at the top 163
translate into/from 306
travel: uncountable 198
trousers 197
try + infinitive 122-123
+ infinitive or ...ing 308
turn round 142
turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) 143
TV: on TV 163
typical of 306
uncountable: see countable under 280-283
understand: not normally used in progressive 30-31
university: expressions without article 162
unless 244
until/till 234, 276
+ present with future meaning 41, 236
and by 276
up 282-283
us 186-187
used to 89
usually: position 214-215
verbs with adverb particles (phrasal verbs) 142-143
verbs with infinitives 122-123
love, like, hate 135
with object + infinitive 124-125
verbs with prepositions 141
verbs with two objects 144
very and too 308
very much: position 213
wait: structures 141, 308
wait for me 146
wake up 142
wanna (= 'want to') 301
want
+ infinitive 122-123
not normally used in progressive 30-31
want somebody to do something 124
wash up (cups, plates etc) 143
watch, look and see 308
we 186-187
weekly: adjective and adverb 217
well: position 213
were: if I were you 247
what (question word)
and which 308
as subject 108-109
what ... with article 163
what ... like? 107
what a nuisance/pity 291
what time/colour/size/sort of ...? etc 3, 106
what to ... 269
what (relative pronoun) 259
when
+ present with future meaning 41, 236
and if 307
when to ... 269

Where are you from / do you come from? 107
whether 266
which (question word)
and what 308
which ...? as subject 108-109
which (relative pronoun) 254-255
while 234

+ present with future meaning 41, 236
while, for and during 277
who (question word) as subject 108-109
who (relative pronoun) 254-255
whom 308
relative pronoun 255
whose and who's 301
why and because 308
will 39-40
with + article 163
without
+ article 163
without ...ing 133
won't 39
word order 304
work
expressions without article 162
uncountable 198
worse, worst 222
would with if 246-249
would like + infinitive 88
would like somebody to do something 124
write somebody something 144
write to 306
wrong
be wrong 3
wrong with 306


## yet

with present perfect 64
yet, still and already 308
you 186-187
your 188-189
yours 190
yourself, yourselves 191

## Oxford English Grammar Course

Learn and practise the grammar you need to speak and write in English.


- Short grammar explanations are easy to remember. Colour makes the grammar clear.
- Clear simple examples show how the grammar works.


## AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

## All yes/no questions begin with a verb.

To make questions: put an auxiliary verb before the subject.
(Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)
STATEMENT + : The taxi is coming.
Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay.
QUESTION ?: Is the taxi coming? Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late? Can you pay?

- Texts, articles, quotations and poems use

- Hundreds of exercises practise the grammar.

- Internet exercises and grammar-and-vocabulary work
- Tests in the book and online
making digital sense
Pronunciation for grammar CD-ROM practises rhythm, stress and intonation. Listen, think, repeat and record.
Online exercises take you from practising grammar to using grammar.



[^0]:    - Atso called 'present simple'

[^1]:    $\rightarrow$ For questions without do, like Who lives here?, see pages 108-109

[^2]:    For more practice on this point, see pages 236 and 245

[^3]:    Shakespeare never travelled / has never travelled in Africa.
    When I was at school I studied / have studied Latin.
    Rob lost / has lost his job, and he can't find another one.
    We met / have met some very interesting people on our last holiday.
    Look - I bought /'ve bought some new shoes.
    My grandmother left / has left school at 14.
    'Does your father know you're back in England?' 'Yes, I told /'ve told him.
    I made /'ve made mushroom soup. Would you like some?
    'What's Rosie's phone number?' 'Sorry, I forgot /'ve forgotten.'
    Who built / has built Edinburgh Castle?

[^4]:    $\rightarrow$ For the present perfect with just, yet and already, see page 64

[^5]:    - Also called 'present perfect continuous'

[^6]:    1 I can
    2 I can
    3 I can
    4 I can't
    5 I can't
    6 I can't

[^7]:    $\rightarrow$ For more practice with present questions, past questions etc, see Sections 2-5.
    $\Rightarrow$ For question tags like It's late, isn't it?, see pages 288-289.

[^8]:    $\rightarrow$ For infinitives in indirect speech (after tell, ask etc), see pages 125 and 269.
    For sentences like I don't mant to, see page 293.

[^9]:    This knife is black. Those lenives are silver

[^10]:    - In oxford there are a lot of museums; there is not much industry:

    1 In
    2
    3
    4

[^11]:    - This water / not be very / This waterisn't very hot.
    1 'The train / be / ......' ............................................................................................ it's on time.'
    2 'He / look / ......' ............................................................................. 'No, he's American.'
    3 'Your hair / look / ......' ............................................................................... 'Oh, thanks.'
    4 My memory / getting very /
    5 I want / become ...... / and famous

[^12]:    NOTE: and, but, or and so always come between the two parts of the sentence.

[^13]:    If the automobile had followed the same development cycle as the computer, a RollsRoyce would today cost $\$ 100$, get a million miles per gallon, and explode once a year, killing everyone inside.
    (Robert X. Cringely, InfoWorld magazine)

[^14]:    - 'The Swiss have declared war on America.' '.Have they? ! don't believe it.'

    1 'I've just passed my exams.'
    2 'I'm seeing Katie next week.'
    3 'My job interview is tomorrow.'
    4 'Some trees can live for thousands of years.'
    5 'Lewis didn't get into university.'
    6 'My computer has crashed again.'
    7 'I don't feel well.'
    8 'Andy and Paula are getting married.'
    9 'I haven't got enough money to buy food.'

[^15]:    We can also use too or not either to say that $\mathbf{A}$ is/does the same as $B$.
    'I'm hungry.' 'I am too.' Lucy hasn't written, and Carol hasn't either.
    In informal conversation we often say Me too instead of So do I, I do too etc.
    'I've got a headache.' 'Me too.' (NOT 'telse.)

